



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Chronicles

Version 64

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 64

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 37

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 36

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 2.1.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 0.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 29

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 16

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	12
2 Chronicles	12
Introduction to 2 Chronicles	13
2 Chronicles 1	15
2 Chronicles 2	36
2 Chronicles 3	58
2 Chronicles 4	76
2 Chronicles 5	99
2 Chronicles 6	114
2 Chronicles 7	171
2 Chronicles 8	197
2 Chronicles 9	216
2 Chronicles 10	254
2 Chronicles 11	280
2 Chronicles 12	304
2 Chronicles 13	323
2 Chronicles 14	349
2 Chronicles 15	365
2 Chronicles 16	385
2 Chronicles 17	403
2 Chronicles 18	423
2 Chronicles 19	458
2 Chronicles 20	478
2 Chronicles 21	516
2 Chronicles 22	537
2 Chronicles 23	553
2 Chronicles 24	587
2 Chronicles 25	617
2 Chronicles 26	649
2 Chronicles 27	676
2 Chronicles 28	689
2 Chronicles 29	717
2 Chronicles 30	760
2 Chronicles 31	794
2 Chronicles 32	816
2 Chronicles 33	850
2 Chronicles 34	878
2 Chronicles 35	923
2 Chronicles 36	951
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	983
Abstract Nouns	984
Active or Passive	986
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	989
Background Information	992
Biblical Distance	995
Biblical Money	998
Biblical Volume	1000
Biblical Weight	1004

Connecting Words and Phrases	1006
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	1010
Double Negatives	1013
Doublet	1016
Ellipsis	1018
Euphemism	1021
Exclamations	1023
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1025
First, Second or Third Person	1027
Generic Noun Phrases	1029
Go and Come	1031
Hebrew Months	1033
Hendiadys	1036
How to Translate Names	1039
Hyperbole	1043
Hypothetical Situations	1047
Idiom	1050
Irony	1052
Merism	1055
Metaphor	1057
Metonymy	1063
Nominal Adjectives	1065
Numbers	1067
Order of Events	1070
Ordinal Numbers	1072
Parables	1075
Parallelism	1077
Personification	1080
Reflexive Pronouns	1082
Rhetorical Question	1085
Simile	1088
Symbolic Action	1091
Synecdoche	1093
Translate Unknowns	1095
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1098
Aaron	1099
Abijah	1100
abomination, abominable	1101
Abraham, Abram	1102
Absalom	1103
Adam	1104
Adonijah	1105
adversary, enemy	1106
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1107
Ahab	1108
Ahaz	1109
Ahaziah	1110
Ahijah	1111
alarm, alarmed	1112
alien, foreigner, sojourn	1113
altar	1114
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder,	1115

Amaziah	1116
Ammon, Ammonite	1117
Amorite	1118
Amoz	1119
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1120
anoint, anointed, anointing	1122
appoint, appointed	1123
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of	1124
Asa	1125
Asaph	1126
Ashdod, Azotus	1127
Asher	1128
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1129
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1131
Athaliah	1132
atonement, atone, atoned	1133
Baasha	1134
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1135
beast	1136
Beersheba	1137
Benaiah	1138
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1139
Beth Shemesh	1140
Bethel	1141
bless, blessed, blessing	1142
blood	1144
Boaz	1146
bow and arrow, a bow	1147
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1148
bread	1149
bronze	1150
brother	1151
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1152
burnt offering, offering by fire	1153
bury, buried, burial	1154
call, call out	1155
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1157
cedar, cedarwood	1158
Chaldea, Chaldean	1159
chariot, charioteers	1160
cherub	1161
chief, leader	1162
children, child, offspring	1163
clean, wash	1165
column, pillar	1167
command, commandment	1168
confess, confession	1169
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1170
consume, devour	1171
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage,	1172
court, courtyard	1174
covenant	1175

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1177
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1178
cry, cry out, outcry	1179
curtain	1180
cut off, cut down	1181
Cyrus	1182
David	1183
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	1185
declare, proclaim, announce	1186
decree, decreed	1187
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted	1188
delight	1189
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	1190
desert, wilderness	1191
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1192
devour	1193
die, dead, deadly, death	1194
dominion	1196
earth, land	1197
Egypt, Egyptian	1198
elder, older, old	1199
Eliakim	1200
Elijah	1201
En Gedi	1202
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1203
Euphrates River, the River	1204
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1205
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1207
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1208
face, facial	1209
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1211
famine	1213
fast, fasting	1214
fear, afraid, frighten	1215
feast, feasting	1216
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1217
firstfruits	1218
flesh	1219
flock, herd	1220
forsake, forsaken, leave	1221
found, founder, foundation	1222
freewill offering	1223
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1224
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1225
Gerar	1226
glory, glorious, glorify	1227
God	1229
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1231
gold, golden	1233
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1234
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha	1236
grace, gracious	1237

grain offering	1238
grain, grainfields	1239
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1240
guilt, guilty	1241
Hananiah	1242
hand	1243
harp, harpist	1245
head	1246
heart	1247
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1248
Hebrew	1250
high priest, chief priests	1251
Hilkiah	1253
Hittite	1254
Hivite	1255
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1256
honey, honeycomb	1258
horse, warhorse, horseback	1259
horseman	1260
house of God, Yahweh's house	1261
house, household	1262
household	1264
inherit, inheritance, heir	1265
Isaiah	1267
Israel, Israelites	1268
Issachar	1270
Jebus, Jebusite	1271
Jehoiada	1272
Jehoiakim	1273
Jehoshaphat	1274
Jehu	1275
Jeremiah	1276
Jericho	1277
Jeroboam	1278
Jerusalem	1279
Jesse	1281
Joel	1282
Joppa	1283
Jordan River, Jordan	1284
Josiah	1285
Jotham	1286
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1287
Judah	1289
Judea, Judah	1290
judge, judgment	1291
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1293
king, kingship	1295
kingdom	1297
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1299
lamb, Lamb of God	1301
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	1303
Lebanon	1305

Levi, Levite	1306
life, live, living, alive	1307
lord, Lord, master, sir	1309
love, beloved	1311
Maacah	1313
mercy, merciful	1314
messenger	1316
Micah	1317
Michael	1318
might, mighty, mighty works	1319
miracle, wonder, sign	1320
Mizpah	1322
Moab, Moabite	1323
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	1324
Moses	1325
mourn, mourner, weeping	1326
name	1327
Naphtali	1328
Nathan	1329
nation	1330
Nebuchadnezzar	1332
new moon	1333
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1334
Obadiah	1335
oil	1336
Omri	1337
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1338
oversee, overseer, keeper	1339
Passover	1340
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1342
people of God	1343
people, people group	1344
Perizzite	1346
Persia, Persians	1347
Philistines	1348
plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed	1349
pomegranate	1350
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1351
pray, prayer	1352
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1354
priest, priesthood	1356
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	1358
profane, profaned	1359
promise, promised	1360
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1361
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1363
prostrate, bow down, worship	1364
proud, pride, prideful	1365
pure, purify, purification	1367
purple	1368
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	1369
Ramah	1371

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1372
Rehoboam	1373
reign, rule	1374
remnant	1375
rest, rested, restless	1376
restore, restoration	1377
return, turn back	1378
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	1379
Sabbath	1381
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1383
Samaria, Samaritan	1385
Samuel	1386
sanctuary	1387
save, saved, safe, salvation	1388
scribe	1390
seed, semen	1391
seek, search, look for	1392
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1393
set apart	1396
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1397
shield	1399
sign, proof, reminder	1400
silver	1402
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1403
slaughter, slaughtered	1405
Solomon	1406
son	1407
spear, spearmen	1409
spirit, wind, breath	1410
statute	1412
storehouse	1413
strength, strengthen, strong	1414
sword, swordsmen	1416
tabernacle	1417
Tarshish	1418
teach, teaching, untaught	1419
temple, house, house of God	1420
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1422
threshold, doorway	1424
throne, enthroned	1425
to minister, ministry	1426
transgress, transgression	1427
trespass	1428
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1429
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	1430
trumpet, trumpeters	1431
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1432
Tyre, Tyrians	1433
understand, understanding, thinking	1434
voice	1435
walk, walked	1436
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1437

wheat	1438
will of God	1439
wine, wineskin, new wine	1440
wise men, advisor	1441
wise, wisdom	1442
work, works, deeds	1443
wrath, fury	1444
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	1445
Yahweh	1446
Zadok	1448
Zechariah (OT)	1449
Zedekiah	1450
Zion, Mount Zion	1451
Contributors	1452
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1452
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1458
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1459
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1460
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1460
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	1461



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Chronicles

Introduction to 2 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Chronicles

Solomon rules the kingdom (1:1–9:28)

- Solomon put on the throne of David, his father (1:1-17)
- Solomon builds the temple of Yahweh (2:1–5:1)
- Solomon dedicates the temple (5:2–7:22)
- The life of Solomon (8:1–9:28)

Judah declines and goes into exile (10:1–36:23)

- From Rehoboam to Zedekiah (10:1–36:21)
- The edict of Cyrus, permitting Israel to return to Canaan (36:22–23)

What are 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The Book of 1 Chronicles retells the line of descendants from Adam to Saul. It then gives the history of Israel during the time of David. The Book of 2 Chronicles gives the history of Israel beginning with Solomon. It ends when the Babylonian army attacks Judah and takes some of the people to Babylon. The writers of Chronicles probably wrote these books for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to teach the people to avoid disobeying God as their ancestors did.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title “2 Chronicles” or “Second Chronicles.” You may also call this book “The Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel, Book 2” or “The Second Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel.”

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles are unknown. They mention that they used other books when writing Chronicles. The names of these other books are “The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Gad the Seer,” “The History of Nathan the Prophet,” “The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo,” “The Story of the Prophet Iddo” and “The books of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Why are there multiple books that give the history of the kings of Israel?

The books of Chronicles and the books of Kings tell much of the same history, but they are not exactly the same. The writers of Chronicles wrote mostly about the kings of Judah who were faithful to Yahweh and his covenant. The writers wanted the Jews to think carefully about David and Solomon. They also wanted the Jews to think about how Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah caused their ancestors to repent and to worship Yahweh. The writers wanted to encourage the Jews and their leaders to obey the law and to honor God’s covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why did God punish the people of Israel?

God punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped false gods. God punished them with disease, disasters, and defeat in battle. However, God forgave them and caused them to prosper again if they repented and obeyed him. The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles continually reminded the readers that God punished his people because they disobeyed. They wanted the readers to understand that they must obey God.

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh led and protected the nation of Israel. The people of Israel should have trusted him instead of relying on other nations to protect them.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah.

What does it mean to “seek God?”

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles often wrote about “seeking God.” To “seek God” means to make an effort to please and honor God. It can also mean to ask God for help. It does not imply that God is hidden. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

The writers used the phrase “to this day” to refer to the time when they were writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

2 Chronicles 1

2 Chronicles 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about King Solomon's reign (2 Chronicles 1-9).

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom

Solomon asks God for wisdom to rule God's people. God is pleased with this request because it is used to serve others. Therefore, God also gives Solomon tremendous wealth and a long life. (See: [wise, wisdom](#) and [people of God](#))

2 Chronicles 1:1

was strengthened in his rule

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gained complete control over his kingdom” or “ruled powerfully over his kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

God was with him

Here “was with him” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “God supported him” or “God helped him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [David](#)
- [his kingdom](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹ And [Solomon the son of David](#) strengthened himself over [his kingdom](#), and [Yahweh his God](#) was with him and made him exceedingly great.

UST

¹ King Solomon, David's son, was able to gain complete control over his kingdom, because Yahweh his God was with him and enabled him to become a very strong king.

2 Chronicles 1:2

General Information:

It may be helpful to reorder the events in these verses as in the UST.
(See: [Order of Events](#))

spoke to all Israel, to the commanders ... heads of the fathers' house

Here "all of Israel" means those people mentioned afterwards. They represent all of Israel. Alternate translation: "spoke to the commanders ... heads of the father's house"

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

to every prince in all Israel, the heads of the fathers' houses

Here "the heads of the fathers' houses" further describe the princes. Alternate translation: "to every prince in all Israel, that is, the heads of the fathers' houses"

to every prince

Here "prince" means leaders in general. They are not necessarily the sons of the king. Alternate translation: "to every leader"

the heads of the fathers' houses

Here "heads" is a metaphor for the most important part. And "houses" represents families. Alternate translation: "the leaders of the families in Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Israel
- Israel
- to the chiefs of
- the heads of
- the fathers

ULT

² And Solomon said to all Israel, to the chiefs of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every prince of all Israel, the heads of the fathers.

UST

²⁻⁵ When David had been king, he arranged for a new sacred tent to be made in Jerusalem. Then David and the Israelite leaders brought God's sacred chest from the city of Kiriath Jearim to the new sacred tent. But when Solomon became the king, the first sacred tent was still in the city of Gibeon. There was a bronze altar there that Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, had made was also still at Gibeon, in front of the first sacred tent. Solomon called together the army commanders who directed thousands of soldiers, and the commanders who directed hundreds of soldiers, with the judges and all the other leaders in Israel. He told them to go with him to Gibeon. So they all went to the place on the hill where idols were worshiped at Gibeon. That was the same place where God had met with his people in the tent which Moses had made. There Solomon and all the others with him prayed to Yahweh.

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- chief, leader
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

2 Chronicles 1:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the assembly
- meeting of
- God
- Moses
- the servant of
- Yahweh
- in the wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Solomon
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- desert, wilderness
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³ And Solomon went and all the assembly with him to the high place that was at Gibeon, for there was the tent of meeting of God, which Moses the servant of Yahweh, had made in the wilderness.

UST

2 Chronicles 1:4

Kiriath Jearim

A little town about 9 miles west of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

pitched a tent

Alternate translation: "set up a tent"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of
- God
- David
- David
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- God
- David
- David
- Jerusalem

ULT

⁴ However, the Box of God David had brought up from Kiriath Jearim to where David prepared for it, for he pitched a tent for it in Jerusalem.

UST

2 Chronicles 1:5

the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the bronze altar that Bezalel son of Uri son Hur made" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the...altar](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the tabernacle of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

⁵ [And the bronze altar](#) which Bezalel, [the son of Uri](#), [the son of Hur](#), made was there before [the tabernacle of Yahweh](#); and [Solomon](#) and the assembly sought him. ^[1]

UST

²⁻⁵ When David had been king, he arranged for a new sacred tent to be made in Jerusalem. Then David and the Israelite leaders brought God's sacred chest from the city of Kiriath Jearim to the new sacred tent. But when Solomon became the king, the first sacred tent was still in the city of Gibeon. There was a bronze altar there that Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, had made was also still at Gibeon, in front of the first sacred tent. Solomon called together the army commanders who directed thousands of soldiers, and the commanders who directed hundreds of soldiers, with the judges and all the other leaders in Israel. He told them to go with him to Gibeon. So they all went to the place on the hill where idols were worshiped at Gibeon. That was the same place where God had met with his people in the tent which Moses had made. There Solomon and all the others with him prayed to Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 1:6

went up there

Alternate translation: "went up to the high place at Gibeon"

one thousand

"1,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [the...altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Solomon](#) went up there to the [bronze altar](#) before [Yahweh](#), which was at the tent of [meeting](#), and he brought up on it 1,000 [burnt offerings](#).

UST

⁶ Then Solomon went up to the bronze altar in front of the sacred tent, and he offered one thousand animals to be killed and completely burned on the altar.

2 Chronicles 1:7

Ask! What should I give you?

If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Ask for whatever you want from me."

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Solomon

ULT

⁷ In that night, God appeared to Solomon, and he said to him, "Ask what I should give to you."

UST

⁷ That night God appeared to Solomon in a dream and said to him, "Request whatever you want me to give to you."

2 Chronicles 1:8

You have shown great covenant faithfulness to David

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “You have greatly and faithfully loved David” or “You have been very faithful to David” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [to God](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#)
- [and have made me king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

⁸ And [Solomon](#) said [to God](#), “You yourself did with [David my father](#) great [covenant faithfulness](#) and have made [me king](#) in his place.

UST

⁸ Solomon replied to God, “You were very kind to David my father, and now you have appointed me to be the next king.

2 Chronicles 1:9

Now

Here the word "Now" is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your promise to David my father be carried out

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "please do what you promised to David my father that you would do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a people as numerous as the dust of the earth

This simile emphasizes the great number of Israelites. Alternate translation: "countless people" or "very many people" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- David
- my father
- may...be confirmed
- a people
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group

ULT

⁹ Now, [Yahweh God](#), may your word with [David my father be confirmed](#), for you yourself have made me king over [a people](#) numerous as the dust of [the earth](#).

UST

⁹ So Yahweh my God, you have caused me to become the king to rule people who are as many as the dust of the earth. So do what you promised to my father David.

2 Chronicles 1:10

give me wisdom and knowledge

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “wisdom” and “knowledge.” Alternate translation: “cause me to be wise and to know many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

who can judge your people, who are so many in number?

Here “judge” means to govern or rule. Solomon uses a question to state that it is impossible to rule over so many people without God’s help. Alternate translation: “no one can judge all of your countless people without your help.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will go out](#)
- [people](#)
- [people of yours](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now wisdom and knowledge give to me, [and I will go out](#) before this [people](#), and I will come in, for who can judge this great [people of yours](#)?”

UST

¹⁰ Please enable me to be wise and to know what I should do, in order that I may rule these people well, because there is no one who can rule all this great nation of yours without your help.”

2 Chronicles 1:11

Because this was in your heart

Here “heart” represents desire. Alternate translation: “Because this was your desire” or “Because this is what you wanted” (See: [Metonymy](#))

nor for the life of those who hate you

Alternate translation: “nor to be able to defeat those who hate you” or “nor to be able to kill your enemies”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [the life of](#)
- [my people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

11 And [God](#) said [to Solomon](#), “Because this was in [your heart](#), and you have not asked for wealth, riches, or glory, or [the life of](#) those who hate you, and also many days you did not ask, but you have asked for yourself wisdom and knowledge with which you will judge [my people](#), which I made you king over them,

UST

11 God replied to Solomon, “You have not requested a huge amount of money or to be honored or that your enemies be killed. And you have not requested that you be enabled to live for a long time. Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise and to know what you should do in order that you may govern well my people whom I have appointed you to rule.

2 Chronicles 1:12

I will now give you wisdom and knowledge

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “wisdom” and “knowledge.” Alternate translation: “I will now cause you to be wise and to know many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹² wisdom and knowledge are given to you, and wealth, and riches, and glory I will give to you which were not thus [to the kings](#) who were before you, and after you will not be thus.”

UST

¹² So I will enable you to be wise and to know what you should do to rule my people well. But I will also enable you to have a huge amount of money and for people everywhere to honor you, more any king before you, and more than any king who will come after you.”

2 Chronicles 1:13

So Solomon came to Jerusalem

Here "Solomon" represents all the people with him. Also "came" can be stated as "went." Alternate translation: "So Solomon and the people with him went to Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Go and Come](#))

from before the tent of meeting

Alternate translation: "from the tent of meeting"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [and he was king](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹³ And [Solomon](#) came from the high place that was at Gibeon [to Jerusalem](#), from before the tent of [meeting](#); and he [was king](#) over [Israel](#).

UST

¹³ Then Solomon and the people who were with him all left the sacred tent at Gibeon, and they returned to Jerusalem. There he ruled the Israelite people.

2 Chronicles 1:14

1,400 chariots

“one thousand four hundred chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

twelve thousand horsemen

“12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

in the chariot cities

This is a reference to cities which stored his chariots.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [and horsemen](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [horseman](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And [Solomon](#) gathered chariots [and horsemen](#), and there was to him 1,400 chariots and 12,000 horsemen, and he placed them in the chariot cities, and with [the king in Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹⁴ Solomon acquired 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses. He put some of the chariots and horses in Jerusalem, and put some of them in various other cities.

2 Chronicles 1:15

The king made silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as the stones

The narrator uses exaggeration to emphasize the great amount of silver that was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "The king had so much silver in Jerusalem, it was like there was as much silver as there was stones on the ground" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the sycamore trees

This is a tree that grows fruit that looks like figs. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- silver
- gold
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- gold, golden
- king, kingship
- silver

ULT

¹⁵ And the king made silver and gold in Jerusalem as the stones, and cedars he made as the sycamore trees that were in the lowlands in abundance.

UST

¹⁵ During the years that Solomon was king, silver and gold were as common in Jerusalem as stones, and lumber from cedar trees were as plentiful as lumber from ordinary sycamore trees in the foothills.

2 Chronicles 1:16

As for the importation of horses from Egypt and Kue for Solomon

“Importation” is the act of bringing something into one country from another country. This can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “As for the horses Solomon imported from Egypt and Kue” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Kue

This is the name of a region. Some think that Kue was the same as Cilicia, in Asia Minor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

at a price

Alternate translation: “at a set price” or “for money”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the horses](#)
- [were to Solomon](#)
- [was from Egypt](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And the source of [the horses](#) which [were to Solomon was from Egypt](#) and from Kue; the traders of [the king](#), they would take at a price from Kue.

UST

¹⁶ Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from the region of Kue.

2 Chronicles 1:17

six hundred shekels of silver...150 shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 6.6 kilograms of silver ... about 1.7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

six hundred

"600" (See: [Numbers](#))

exported

to send something out of one country into another

Translation Words - ULT

- [and brought out](#)
- [from Egypt](#)
- [a chariot](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and a horse](#)
- [the Hittites](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [by their hands](#)
- [they brought out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [hand](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

17 And they brought up [and brought out from Egypt a chariot](#) for 600 [silver](#), and [a horse](#) for 150. And thus, according to all the kings of [the Hittites](#) and [the kings of Aram](#), [by their hands, they brought out](#).

1:5 ^[1], where refers to David.

UST

17 In Egypt his men paid seven kilograms of silver for each chariot and one and seven-tenths kilograms of silver for each horse. They also sold many of them to the kings of the Heth and Aram people groups.

2 Chronicles 2

2 Chronicles 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Solomon's reign continues in this chapter. This chapter also begins a section on building the temple. (2 Chronicles 2-4 and [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

House of God

The temple is repeatedly referred to as the "house of God" because Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

2 Chronicles 2:1

Now

This marks a new part of the story.

commanded the building of a house for Yahweh's name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “commanded his people to build a house where Yahweh may live” or “commanded his people to build a house where they could worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of a palace for his kingdom

Alternate translation: “of a royal palace for his kingdom” or “of a palace for himself”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [a house](#)
- [and a house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for his kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹ And [Solomon](#) said to build [a house](#) for the name of [Yahweh](#) and a house for his [kingdom](#).

UST

¹ Solomon decided that a temple should be built where Yahweh would be worshiped, and also that he would build a palace for himself.

2 Chronicles 2:2

seventy thousand men ... eighty thousand men

“70,000 men...80,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

to carry loads

It is understood that these are loads of materials for building Yahweh’s house. Alternate translation: “to carry loads of materials” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

3,600

“three thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)

ULT

² And [Solomon](#) counted 70,000 men as burden bearers, and 80,000 men as stonemasons in the hills, and directors over them 3,600.

UST

² He commanded seventy thousand men to carry the building supplies and eighty thousand men to cut stones from quarries in the hills. He also chose 3,600 men to supervise them.

2 Chronicles 2:3

Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the king of
- Tyre
- David
- my father
- cedars
- a house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- cedar, cedarwood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

³ And Solomon sent to Hiram, the king of Tyre, saying, "Just as you did with David my father and sent to him cedars to build for himself a house to dwell in it.

UST

³ Solomon sent this message to King Hiram of the city of Tyre: "Many years ago when my father David was building his palace, you sent him cedar logs. Will you send me cedar logs, too?"

2 Chronicles 2:4

I am about to build a house for the name of Yahweh my God

Here “name” represents the person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “I am about to build a house where Yahweh my God may live” or “I am about to build a house where people may worship Yahweh my God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I am about to build

Solomon would command his people to build the house. Alternate translation: “I am about to command my people to build” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar.

new moons

This was the time of a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.

This is forever, for Israel

Here “This” refers back to all the ways the people will worship Yahweh at his temple. Alternate translation: “These are the things Yahweh has commanded Israel to do forever”

Translation Words - ULT

- [a house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [my God](#)
- [our God](#)
- [to consecrate](#)
- [and burnt offerings](#)
- [on the Sabbaths](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)

ULT

⁴ Behold, I am building [a house](#) for the name of [Yahweh my God](#), [to consecrate](#) to him, to sacrifice before him spiced incense and the regular display, [and burnt offerings](#) in the morning and in the evening, [on the Sabbaths](#) and on the new moons, and the appointed times of [Yahweh our God](#). Forever, this is over [Israel](#).

UST

⁴ We are about to build a temple to set it apart for Yahweh, to burn for him incense made from fragrant spices, to always display before him the bread, and to burn animal offerings every morning and evening and day of rest, as well as at every new moon and on the other special festivals to honor Yahweh our God. We want to do these things forever, as Yahweh has commanded.

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- house, household

2 Chronicles 2:5

God is greater

This is a reference to God being more important and more powerful than other gods, not to being larger than other gods.

Translation Words - ULT

- And the house
- is our God
- gods

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- household

ULT

⁵ And the house that I am building will be great, for great is our God more than all gods.

UST

⁵ We want this temple to be a great temple, because our God is greater than all other gods.

2 Chronicles 2:6

who is able to build God a house, since the entire universe and even heaven itself cannot contain him? Who am I to build him a house, except to burn sacrifices before him?

Solomon uses a question to emphasize that no one is able or worthy to build a house for God. Alternate translation: “no one is able to build a house for God because not even the universe or heaven is big enough to contain him. I am not worthy to build a house for him, except as a place to offer sacrifices to him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [strength](#)
- [a house](#)
- [a house](#) (2)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#) (2)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

⁶ But who can keep [strength](#) to build for him [a house](#), since [the heavens](#) and the heavens of [the heavens](#) do not contain him? And who am I that I would build for him [a house](#), except to sacrifice before him?

UST

⁶ But no one can build a place for God to live in, since even the heavens and the earth are not big enough for him. I myself am not worthy to build him a house, except as a place to offer sacrifices to him.

2 Chronicles 2:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- wise
- in gold
- and one who knows
- in Judah
- and in Jerusalem
- David
- my father

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem
- Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- wise men, advisor

ULT

⁷ And now, send to me a wise man to work in gold, and in silver, and in bronze, and in iron, and in purple and crimson and violet, and one who knows how to engrave engravings; with the wise who are with me in Judah and in Jerusalem, whom David my father prepared.

UST

⁷ Therefore, please send me someone who is very good at making things from gold and silver and bronze and iron, and at making things from purple and red and blue cloth. He should also know well how to engrave designs. I want him to work in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah with my skilled craftsmen, the ones whom my father David appointed.

2 Chronicles 2:8

Connecting Statement:

This continues Solomon's message to Hiram, the king of Tyre.

cedar, cypress, and alnum trees

These are different types of trees. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar
- from Lebanon
- Lebanon
- I...know
- know how
- your servants
- my servants
- your servants
- to cut

Translation Words - UST

- Lebanon
- Lebanon
- cedar, cedarwood
- cut off, cut down
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁸ And send to me trees of cedar, cypress, and alnum from Lebanon, for I myself know that your servants know how to cut trees of Lebanon. And behold, my servants will be with your servants,

UST

⁸ I know that your workers are skilled in cutting timber, so also please send me cedar logs, pine logs, and alnum from the Lebanon mountains. My workers will work with your workers.

2 Chronicles 2:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house

Translation Words - UST

- house, household

ULT

⁹ in order to prepare for me trees in abundance, for the house which I am building will be great and marvelous.

UST

⁹ In that way, they will provide me with plenty of lumber. We will need plenty, because I want the temple that we will build to be large and beautiful.

2 Chronicles 2:10

twenty thousand cors

A cor is 220 liters. Twenty thousand cors equals 4,400 kiloliters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

twenty thousand

“20,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

ground wheat

Alternate translation: “wheat flour”

twenty thousand baths

A bath is 22 liters. Twenty thousand baths equals 440 kiloliters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

10 And behold, to the wood cutters, [to the ones who cut](#) the trees, I will give crushed [wheat to your servants](#) 20,000 cors, and barley 20,000 cors, [and wine](#) 20,000 baths, [and oil](#) 20,000 baths.” ^[1]

UST

10 I will pay to your workers, the men who cut the logs, 4,400 kiloliters of bushels of ground wheat, 4,400 kiloliters of barley, and 440 kiloliters of wine, and 440 kiloliters of olive oil.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the ones who cut](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [to your servants](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [and oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [oil](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

2 Chronicles 2:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- as king (2)
- Tyre
- Solomon
- Yahweh
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Tyre, Tyrians
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- people, people group

ULT

¹¹ And Hiram, the king of Tyre, said in a writing, and sent to Solomon: "Because Yahweh loves his people, he has placed you over them as king."

UST

¹¹ When Hiram received this message, he replied by sending a message back to Solomon: "Because Yahweh loves his people, he has appointed you to be their king."

2 Chronicles 2:12

gifted with prudence and understanding

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “prudence” and “understanding.” Alternate translation: “who is very intelligent and understands many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- for Yahweh
- insight
- a house
- and a house
- for his kingdom
- the God of
- Israel
- the heavens
- the earth
- the king
- a son
- of wisdom
- knowing

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, land
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- understand, understanding, thinking
- wise men, advisor

ULT

¹² And Hiram said, “[Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), who made [the heavens](#) and [the earth](#), who has given to David [the king a son of wisdom](#), [knowing insight](#) and understanding, who will build [a house for Yahweh and a house for his kingdom](#).

UST

¹² Let everyone praise Yahweh, the God to whom the Israelite people belong, the one who created the sky and the earth! He has given King David a wise son, one who is very intelligent and who has good skill and understanding. He wants to build a temple for Yahweh and a palace for himself.

2 Chronicles 2:13

gifted with understanding

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **understanding**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “understands” or “wise.” Alternate translation: “who understand many things” or “who is very wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Huram-Abi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [Abi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

ULT

¹³ And now, I have sent a [wise](#) man, [knowing](#) understanding, Huram-[Abi](#),

UST

¹³ I will send to you Huram-Abi, one of my skilled craftsmen.

2 Chronicles 2:14

He is skilled at work in gold ... crimson wool

Translate many of these words as you did in [2 Chronicles 2:7](#).

fine linen

Alternate translation: "high quality cloth" or "the best cloth"

He is the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan

Alternate translation: "His mother is from the tribe of Dan" or "His mother is a descendant of Dan"

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- and his father
- your father
- knowing
- in gold
- in purple
- your...ones...wise
- my lord
- David

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- purple
- wise men, advisor

ULT

¹⁴ a son of a woman from the daughters of Dan, and his father a man of Tyre, knowing to work in gold, and in silver, in bronze, in iron, in stones, and in trees, in purple, in violet, and in fine linen, and in crimson, and to engrave any engraving and to devise any device, which is given to him with your wise ones and the wise ones of my lord, David, your father.

UST

¹⁴ His mother was from the tribe of Dan, and his father was from here in Tyre. He is able to make things from gold and silver and bronze and iron and stone and wood, but he also makes nice things from purple and blue and red cloth, and he does all kinds of engraving. He can make things using any design that you give to him. He will work with your craftsmen, and the craftsmen who did work for your father, King David.

2 Chronicles 2:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the message from Hiram, king of Tyre, to Solomon.

of which my master has spoken, let him send these things to his servants

Hiram refers to Solomon as “my master” and to himself and his own people as “his servants.” This is a way of showing respect. Alternate translation: “of which you, my master, have spoken, please send these things to us, your servants” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the wheat](#)
- [my lord](#)
- [to his servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And now, [the wheat](#) and the barley, the oil and the wine, which [my lord](#) has said, let him send [to his servants](#).

UST

¹⁵ Now please send us the wheat, barley, olive oil, and wine that you promised to send to us.

2 Chronicles 2:16

you will carry it up to Jerusalem

Here “you” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “you will command your people to take the wood to Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- we...will cut
- Lebanon
- to Joppa
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Joppa
- Lebanon
- cut off, cut down

ULT

16 And we ourselves will cut trees from Lebanon, according to all your need, and we will bring them to you by rafts by sea to Joppa, and you yourself will bring them up to Jerusalem.”

UST

16 When you do that, my workers will cut in the Lebanon mountains all the logs that you need and bring them down to the sea. Then we will tie the logs together to form rafts with them, and float them in the sea to the city of Joppa. From there, you can arrange for men to take them up to Jerusalem.”

2 Chronicles 2:17

Solomon counted

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon had his servants count" (See: [Metonymy](#))

They were found to be 153,600

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There were 153,600 foreigners" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Numbers](#))

153,600

"one hundred and fifty-three thousand six hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

3,600

"three thousand six hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

17 And [Solomon](#) counted all the men, the foreigners who were in the land of [Israel](#), after the census that [David, his father](#), had counted them. And there were found 153,600.

UST

17 Solomon told his workers to count all the people from other countries who were living in Israel, similar to what his father David had done. There were 153,600 of them.

2 Chronicles 2:18

seventy thousand ... eighty thousand

“70,000 men...80,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

to carry loads

It is understood that these are loads of materials for building Yahweh's house. Alternate translation: “to carry loads of materials” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#)

ULT

18 And he made from them 70,000 burden bearers, 80,000 stonemasons in the hills, and 3,600 directors to cause [the people](#) to work.
2:10 ^[1].

UST

18 Solomon assigned seventy thousand of them to carry materials, and eighty thousand to cut stone from quarries in the hills, and 3,600 of them to supervise the others and be sure that they worked steadily.

2 Chronicles 3

2 Chronicles 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Location of the temple

The location of the temple was very significant. Many important events in history occurred at this location.

2 Chronicles 3:1

Then Solomon began to build ... He prepared

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Then Solomon's workers began to build ... They prepared" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Mount Moriah

This is the name of a mountain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ornan the Jebusite

"Ornan" is the name of a man. "Jebusite" is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [And...began](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [his father](#)
- [David](#)
- [the Jebusite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [profane, profaned](#)

ULT

¹ And [Solomon began](#) to build [the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem](#) on Mount Moriah, where he had appeared to David [his father](#), where [David](#) prepared in the place at the threshing floor of Ornan [the Jebusite](#).

UST

¹ Then Solomon's workers started to build the temple for Yahweh in Jerusalem. They built it on Mount Moriah, where an angel from Yahweh had appeared to his father David. They built it on the ground that Ornan, a descendant of the Jebus people group, had sold to David and where David said that it should be built.

2 Chronicles 3:2

He began

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “They began” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the second day of the second month

“day 2 of month 2.” This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The second day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the fourth year

“in year 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he began](#)
- [of his reign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [kingdom](#)
- [profane, profaned](#)

ULT

² [And he began](#) to build in the second month on the second, in the fourth year [of his reign](#).

UST

² They began the work on the second day of the second month, when Solomon had been ruling almost four years.

2 Chronicles 3:3

that Solomon laid

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “that Solomon’s workers laid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator begins to explain the dimensions and the design of the temple.

sixty cubits ... twenty cubits

“60 cubits...20 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “27.6 meters long...9.2 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the founding of
- Solomon
- the house
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Solomon
- found, founder, foundation
- house, household

ULT

³ And these were the founding of Solomon to build the house of God, the length in cubits by the former measure, 60 cubits, and the width 20 cubits.

UST

³ The foundation of the temple was twenty-seven meters long and nine meters wide.

2 Chronicles 3:4

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. This portico was probably attached to the front part of the wall that surrounded the temple.

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Solomon overlaid

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the front](#)
- [the front of](#)
- [the house](#)
- [pure](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁴ And the porch which is at [the front](#), the length on [the front of](#) the width of [the house](#), 20 cubits, and the height, 120. And he overlaid it from within with [pure gold](#).

UST

⁴ The entrance room across the front of the temple was also nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The entrance room was also nine meters high. Solomon caused workmen to coat the interior of the entrance room with thin sheets of pure gold.

2 Chronicles 3:5

He fashioned ... which he overlaid ... which he carved

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers fashioned ... which they overlaid ... which they carved" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the main hall

This is a reference to a large room, not a hallway.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...house](#)
- [pure](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁵ and the great [house](#) he overlaid with cypress wood, and he overlaid it with [pure gold](#), and he brought up on it palm trees and chains.

UST

⁵ Solomon's workers used panels of pine wood to line the main hall of the temple. Then they covered those panels with very thin sheets of pure gold. On them they carved images of palm trees and designs that resembled chains.

2 Chronicles 3:6

He decorated

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers decorated" (See: [Metonymy](#))

precious stones

Stones that were beautiful, highly valued, and used for decorations.

Parvaim

This is probably the name of a region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ And he overlaid [the house](#) with precious stones for beauty; [and the gold was gold of](#) Parvaim.

UST

⁶ They decorated the temple with very valuable stones. The gold that they used was from the land of Parvaim.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [and the gold](#)
- [was gold of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)

2 Chronicles 3:7

He also overlaid ... he carved

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers also overlaid ... they carved" (See: [Metonymy](#))

beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [the thresholds](#)
- [gold](#)
- [cherubim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cherub](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)

ULT

⁷ And he overlaid [the house](#), the beams, [the thresholds](#), and its walls, and its doors with [gold](#); and he engraved [cherubim](#) on the walls.

UST

⁷ They covered the ceiling beams, doorframes, walls and doors of the temple with very thin sheets of gold. They also carved statues of winged creatures on the walls.

2 Chronicles 3:8

He built ... He overlaid

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers built ... They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

six hundred talents

"600 talents." A talent is 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: "about 20 metric tons" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the house
- the holy
- of holies
- the front of
- pure
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- face, facial
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

⁸ And he made the house of the holy of holies; its length at the front of the width of the house, 20 cubits, and its width 20 cubits. And he overlaid it with pure gold, to 600 talents.

UST

⁸ They also built the very holy place inside the temple. It was nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The width of the very holy place was the same. They covered its walls with sheets of pure gold that altogether weighed about twenty metric tons.

2 Chronicles 3:9

fifty shekels

"50 shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. Alternate translation: ".55 kilograms" or "about a half a kilogram"(See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

⁹ And the weight of the nails was 50 shekels of [gold](#) and the upper rooms he overlaid with [gold](#).

UST

⁹ Each gold nails weighed about one-half a kilogram. They also covered the walls of the upper rooms with thin sheets of gold.

2 Chronicles 3:10

He made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the house of](#)
- [the holy of](#)
- [holies](#)
- [cherubim](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [cherub](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And he made [in the house of the holy of holies](#) two [cherubim](#), a work of casting; and he overlaid them with [gold](#).
[1]

UST

¹⁰ Solomon's workers made two statues of creatures with wings to put inside the very holy place. They covered those statues with very thin sheets of gold.

2 Chronicles 3:11

twenty cubits ... five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters...2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the cherubim](#)
- [the...cherub](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cherub](#)
- [cherub](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

11 And the wings of [the cherubim](#), their length was 20 cubits, one wing was five cubits, reaching to the wall of [the house](#), and another wing five cubits, reaching to a wing of the other [cherub](#).

UST

11-12 Each statue had two long wings. One wing of each statue touched the wall of the temple. The other wing of each statue touched a wing of the other statue. The wingspan of each cherub was about four and three-fifths meters across. One wing of each cherub touched the wall, while the other reached to the middle of room and touched the inner wing of the other cherub. Each wing was two and one-third meters long.

2 Chronicles 3:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the...cherub
- the...cherub
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- cherub
- cherub
- house, household

ULT

¹² And the wing of the other cherub five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house; and the other wing five cubits, clinging to the wing of the other cherub.

UST

¹¹⁻¹² Each statue had two long wings. One wing of each statue touched the wall of the temple. The other wing of each statue touched a wing of the other statue. The wingspan of each cherub was about four and three-fifths meters across. One wing of each cherub touched the wall, while the other reached to the middle of room and touched the inner wing of the other cherub. Each wing was two and one-third meters long.

2 Chronicles 3:13

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubim](#)
- [were standing](#)
- [and their faces](#)
- [toward the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [cherub](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹³ The wings of these [cherubim](#) spread out 20 cubits. And they [were standing](#) on their feet, [and their faces toward the house](#).

UST

¹³ It was nine meters from the outer wing of the one statue to the outer wing of the other statue. The statues faced the doorway leading to the main room.

2 Chronicles 3:14

He made ... he fashioned

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers made ... they fashioned" (See: [Metonymy](#))

blue, purple, and crimson wool

Translate these words as you did in [2 Chronicles 2:7](#).

fine linen

Alternate translation: "high quality cloth" or "the best cloth"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the curtain](#)
- [and purple](#)
- [cherubim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cherub](#)
- [curtain](#)
- [purple](#)

ULT

14 And he made [the curtain](#) of violet, [and purple](#), and crimson and fine linen, and he brought up on it [cherubim](#).

UST

14 Solomon's workers made a curtain to separate the main room from the very holy place. It was made of blue, purple, and red thread and fine linen. Figures of winged creatures were embroidered on the curtain.

2 Chronicles 3:15

Solomon also made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

thirty-five cubits ... five cubits

"35 cubits...5 cubits." A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "16.1 meters...2.3 meters" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

the capitals

decorations on top of the pillars

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [pillars](#)
- [its head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he made before [the house](#) two [pillars](#), 35 cubits in length; and the capital which was on [its head](#), five cubits.

UST

¹⁵ They made two bronze pillars and put them at the entrance of the temple. They were each sixteen meters high. A separate piece was attached to the top of each pillar; each of the top pieces was two and one-third meters high.

2 Chronicles 3:16

He made ... he also made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "They made ... they also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

one hundred pomegranates

"100 pomegranates" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the head of](#)
- [the pillars](#)
- [pomegranates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [column, pillar](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

ULT

16 And he made chains in the inner sanctuary, and he placed on [the head of the pillars](#); and he made 100 [pomegranates](#) and he placed on the chains.

UST

16 The workers made carvings that resembled chains and put them on top of the pillars. They made carvings that resembled pomegranates and attached them to the chains. There were one hundred of them.

2 Chronicles 3:17

He set up

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “They set up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

on the right hand ... on the left

Alternate translation: “on the right side ... on the left side” or “on the south side ... on the north side”

he named

Alternate translation: “Solomon named”

Jakin

Possibly a name to describe God as “The One who establishes.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Boaz

This name means “in strength” and is possibly used here to describe God because it means, “In Him is strength.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the pillars](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [And he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Boaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Boaz](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

ULT

17 And he set up [the pillars](#) on [the face of the temple](#), one on the right hand, and one on the left. [And he called the name of](#) the right, Jakin, and the name of the left, [Boaz](#).
3:10 ^[1].

UST

17 They set up the pillars in front of the temple, one the south side of the entrance and the other on the north side. The one of the south side was named Jakin and the one on the north side was named Boaz.

2 Chronicles 4

2 Chronicles 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Special construction

Not only is the temple constructed in a special way, the things that are used in the temple's sacrificial system and its decorations are constructed in a special way.

2 Chronicles 4:1

he made

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits ... ten cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “20 cubits...10 cubits” or “9.2 meters...4.6 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an altar of](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

¹ And he made [an altar of bronze](#), 20 cubits its length, and 20 cubits its width, and 10 cubits its height.

UST

¹ Solomon’s workers made a square bronze altar, nine meters long on each side, and four and three-fifths meters high.

2 Chronicles 4:2

ten cubits ... five cubits ... thirty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “4.6 meters...2.3 meters...13.8 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

the round sea

This refers to a tank or basin that would hold water.

cast metal

This is metal that was melted then formed in a mold.

from brim to brim

Alternate translation: “from one edge to the other”

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

ULT

² And he made the Sea of cast metal, 10 by the cubit from its edge to its edge, round, all around, and 5 by the cubit its height; and a measuring string 30 by the cubit surrounding it all around.

UST

² They also made a very large round tank that was called “The Sea,” and it had a circumference of fourteen meters.

2 Chronicles 4:3

each cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “every 46 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

ten to each cubit

Alternate translation: “ten per cubit”

when the sea itself was cast

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “when the workers cast the sea itself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [oxen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)

ULT

³ And a likeness of [oxen](#) was under it all around; all around, surrounding it, 10 cubits, encircling the Sea all around; two rows of the oxen, cast in its cast metal.

UST

³ Below the outer rim there were small figures of bulls that were set in a circle, the bulls were placed 45 centimeters apart around the whole circle. The bulls were cast together in two rows, and they were also cast together with the metal basin that was called “The Sea.” (Each row had three hundred figures of bulls.)

2 Chronicles 4:4

The Sea

This refers to the tank or basin that held water for sacrifices.

was set upon twelve oxen

Alternate translation: "was on top of twelve oxen"

twelve oxen

These are images of oxen made of bronze. Alternate translation: "twelve large figures of bulls" or "twelve bronze oxen" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

"The Sea" was set on top of them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers set 'The Sea' on top of the oxen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hindquarters

This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Standing](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [to the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁴ [Standing](#) on 12 [oxen](#), three turned to the north, and 3 turned to the west, and 3 turned to the south, and three turned to the east. And the Sea was on them above, and all their hindquarters [to the house](#).

UST

⁴ "The Sea" was set on twelve large figures of bulls, with the bulls facing outward. Three bulls faced north, three faced west, three faced south, and three faced east.

2 Chronicles 4:5

thick as the width of a hand

This is about 8 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers forged the brim to look like the brim of a cup, to curve outward like a lily" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three thousand baths

"3,000 baths." A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "66 kiloliters" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [taking hold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)

ULT

⁵ And its thickness was a span, and its edge like a work of an edge of a cup, a bud of a lily, [taking hold](#), 3000 baths it could contain.

UST

⁵ The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The tank's brim was fashioned like the brim of a cup; it resembled a lily blossom. The tank held sixty-six kiloliters of water.

2 Chronicles 4:6

He made ... he put

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made ... they put” (See: [Metonymy](#))

items used in performing the burnt offering were to be washed in them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people were to wash the items used in performing the burnt offering in them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

⁶ And he made 10 pots, and he placed five on the right and five on the left to wash in them; the work of the burnt offering, they will rinse in them. And the Sea for bathing [for the priests](#) in it.

UST

⁶ The craftsmen also made ten basins for washing the articles that were to be used in making offerings, and they set five on the south side, and five on the north side. In them the utensils used for the burnt offering were washed, and the priests washed themselves in the large bronze tank that was called “The Sea.”

2 Chronicles 4:7

He made ... he placed

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made ... they placed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that were made from the instructions for their design

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “according to the instructions for their design” or “according to how Solomon instructed his workers to design them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on the right hand ... on the left

Alternate translation: “on the right side ... on the left side” or “on the south side ... on the north side”

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#)
- [according to their judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

ULT

⁷ And he made the 10 lampstands of [gold according to their judgment](#), and he placed in the temple five on the right and five on the left.

UST

⁷ The craftsmen also made ten gold lampstands according to how Solomon had instructed them. They put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side.

2 Chronicles 4:8

He made ... He made

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made ... They made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

one hundred basins

“100 basins” (See: [Numbers](#))

basins

shallow bowls used for washing

Translation Words - ULT

- [of gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

⁸ And he made 10 tables, and he gave rest in the temple, five on the right, and five on the left. And he made 100 basins [of gold](#).

UST

⁸ They made ten tables and put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side. They also made one hundred gold basins.

2 Chronicles 4:9

he made the courtyard ... and overlaid

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made ... they overlaid ... They placed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the great court

Alternate translation: “the large court”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the courtyard of](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)

ULT

⁹ And he made [the courtyard of the priests](#), and the great court and the doors for the court and their doors he overlaid with [bronze](#).

UST

⁹ They constructed one courtyard for the priests, and a larger courtyard for the other people. They made doors for the courtyards and covered them with thin sheets of bronze.

2 Chronicles 4:10

He placed

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work.
Alternate translation: “They placed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

on the east side of the temple, facing toward the south

Alternate translation: “next to the southeast corner of the temple”

ULT

¹⁰ And the Sea he placed on the right side to the east, facing toward the south.

UST

¹⁰ They placed the large tank that was called “The Sea” at the southeast corner of the temple.

2 Chronicles 4:11

Huram

See how you translated this name in [2 Chronicles 2:13](#).

the sprinkling bowls

bowls that held blood that was used in the house of God for sprinkling the altar

Huram finished the work that he did

Here Hiram represents all who worked on the temple. Alternate translation: "Hiram and the other workers finished the work that they did" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for King](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

11 And Hiram made the tubs, and the shovels, and the basins. And Hiram finished making the work that he made [for King Solomon in the house of God](#):

UST

11 They also made pots and shovels for the ashes of the altar, and other small bowls. So Hiram and his workers finished the work that King Solomon had given him to do at the temple of God.

2 Chronicles 4:12

bowl-like capitals

The upper part of a pillar is called a capital. See how you translated “capital” in 2 Chronicles 3:15. Alternate translation: “bowl-shaped tops” or “bowl-shaped upper parts”

decorative latticework

This refers to the decorative carving or markings on the upper part of the pillars. Alternate translation: “carvings that resembled chains”

Translation Words - ULT

- the...pillars
- the...pillars
- the pillars
- the head of
- the head of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- head
- head (2)
- column, pillar
- column, pillar
- column, pillar

ULT

¹² the two pillars, and the bowls, and the capitals on the head of the two pillars, and the two trellises to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the head of the pillars,

UST

¹² These were the things that they made: the two large pillars the two bowl shaped tops on top of the pillars

the two sets of carvings that resembled chains to decorate the tops of the two pillars

2 Chronicles 4:13

He had made

Here Hiram represents all who worked on the temple. Alternate translation: "Hiram and the other workers had made" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the four hundred pomegranates

"the 400 pomegranates." Translate "pomegranates" as you did in [2 Chronicles 3:16](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pomegranates](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [the pillars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face, facial](#)
- [column, pillar](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

ULT

¹³ and the 400 pomegranates for the two trellises, two rows of [pomegranates](#) for each trellis to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on [the face of the pillars](#).

UST

¹³ the four hundred carvings that resembled pomegranates that were placed in two rows, they were made to decorate the tops of the two pillars.

2 Chronicles 4:14

He also made

Here Hiram, who is also called Hiram-Abi, represents all those who worked with him. Alternate translation: "They also made" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the basins

Alternate translation: "the bowls"

ULT

¹⁴ And the stands he made, and the pots he made on the stands,

UST

¹⁴ The pomegranate carvings also were used to decorate the stands, and the basins that were placed on them,

2 Chronicles 4:15

one sea and the twelve bulls

This is a large decorative washing container. Translate “sea” as you did in [2 Chronicles 4:2](#) and “bulls” as you did in [2 Chronicles 4:3](#).

ULT

¹⁵ the one Sea, and the 12 oxen under it.

UST

¹⁵ the very large tank called “The Sea,” and the figures of twelve bulls underneath it,

2 Chronicles 4:16

Huram-Abi made

Here Hiram, who is also called Hiram-Abi, represents all those who worked with him. Alternate translation: “Hiram-Abi and his craftsmen made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

other implements

Alternate translation: “other tools” or “other objects used for the altar”

polished bronze

Bronze that the workmen polished so that it would reflect light.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abi](#)
- [for King](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of...bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

16 And the tubs, and the shovels, and the forks, and all items Hiram-[Abi](#) made [for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh](#) of polished [bronze](#). ^[1]

UST

16 the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other things needed for the work at the altar. All those things that Hiram-Abi and his craftsmen made for King Solomon were of bronze that they polished for it to gleam brightly.

2 Chronicles 4:17

The king had cast them

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "The king commanded his workers to cast them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Zarethan

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁷ In the vicinity of [the Jordan](#) [the king](#) cast them, in the thick ground between Succoth and between Zeredathah.

UST

¹⁷ They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds that Hiram-Abi had set up near the Jordan River between the cities of Succoth and Zarethan.

2 Chronicles 4:18

Solomon made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “Solomon’s workers made” or “Solomon had his workers make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the weight of the bronze could not be known

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) there was so much bronze no one tried to weigh it. Alternate translation: “no one even tried to weigh the bronze” or (2) this is a hyperbole that emphasizes the great amount of bronze. Alternate translation: “no one could even determine how much all the bronze weighed” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

¹⁸ And [Solomon](#) made all these items in great abundance; indeed, the weight of [the bronze](#) was not sought out.

UST

¹⁸ All of those things that Solomon told them to make used a very large amount of bronze, so great was the amount they used that no one knew how much it all weighed.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

2 Chronicles 4:19

Solomon made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Solomon's workers made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the furnishings

This refers to all of the bowls and tools that were used in the house of God.

the tables on which the bread of the presence was to be placed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the tables on which the priests were to place the bread of the presence" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 2:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [in the house](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the altar of](#)
- [gold](#)
- [the bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [God](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bread](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

19 And [Solomon](#) made all the items that were [in the house of God](#), and [the altar of gold](#), and the tables and on them [the bread](#) of the presence;

UST

19 Solomon's workers also made all these things that they later put into the temple: the golden altar, the tables on which the priests put the bread to display before God,

2 Chronicles 4:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- according to the judgment
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

ULT

²⁰ and the lampstands and their lamps for their burning according to the judgment before the inner sanctuary, fine gold;

UST

²⁰ the pure gold lampstands and the pure gold lamps, in which the priests put oil to burn in front of the very holy place (as God had told Moses that the priests should do),

2 Chronicles 4:21

the flowers, the lamps

The “flowers” and “lamps” were part of the lampstands.

the tongs

This is a tool made from two sticks of wood or metal connected at one end and used for picking up objects.

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

²¹ and the buds, and the lamps, and the tongs of gold, it was perfection of gold.

UST

²¹ the pure gold decorations that resembled flowers, and the lamps and tongs.

2 Chronicles 4:22

Also the lamp trimmers ... were all made of pure gold

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The workers also made the lamp trimmers ... out of pure gold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

lamp trimmers

These would have been used to trim the wicks of the lamps.

its inner doors ... were made of gold

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the workers made its inner doors ... out of gold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...gold
- gold
- the house
- the house
- its...doors
- of Holies
- for the temple

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple, house, house of God
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

²² and the lamp trimmers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the censers of fine [gold](#). And the entrance of [the house](#), its inner [doors](#) into the Holy of [Holies](#) and the doors of [the house](#), for [the temple](#), [gold](#).

4:16 ^[1], some versions have .

UST

²² The workers also made the pure gold wick trimmers and bowls for sprinkling, and dishes and incense burners,

the gold doors of the temple,

the gold inner doors leading to the very holy place,

the gold doors leading to the main hall.

2 Chronicles 5

2 Chronicles 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Moving the contents of the tent

Everything from the tent was moved into the new temple. This too was done in a special way. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

2 Chronicles 5:1

When all the work that Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was completed, Solomon brought

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “When Solomon’s workers completed all of the work for the house of Yahweh, they brought” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

treasuries

storerooms, rooms where things are kept or stored

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- for the house of
- the house of
- God
- Yahweh
- the sacred things of
- David
- his father
- the silver
- the gold

Translation Words - UST

- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- silver

ULT

¹ And all the work which [Solomon](#) did [for the house of Yahweh](#) was completed, and [Solomon](#) brought in [the sacred things of David, his father](#); and [the silver](#), and [the gold](#), and all the items, he placed in the treasuries of [the house of God](#).

UST

¹ After Solomon’s workers had finished building the temple, Solomon put in the temple storerooms everything that his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold and all the other things that were used at the temple.

2 Chronicles 5:2

assembled the elders of Israel

Alternate translation: "called together the leaders of Israel"

all the heads of the tribes

Here "heads" is a metaphor for the most important part of something. Alternate translation: "all the leaders of the tribes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- assembled
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- David
- Zion
- the elders of
- Israel
- Israel
- the heads of
- the fathers
- of the sons of
- Jerusalem
- the Box of

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Zion, Mount Zion
- David
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- elder, older, old
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

² Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the leaders of the fathers of the sons of Israel to Jerusalem, to bring up the Box of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David, that is, Zion.

UST

² Then King Solomon summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and of the families. He wanted them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David.

2 Chronicles 5:3

All the men of Israel

This may refer either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in 5:2 or (2) generally to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every male person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

at the feast, which was in the seventh month

This is the Festival of Shelters which is on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is near the beginning of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)
- [at the feast](#)
- [the...month](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [new moon](#)

ULT

³ And all the men of [Israel](#) assembled to [the king at the feast](#); it was the seventh [month](#).

UST

³ So all the leaders of Israel gathered together with the king, during the Festival of Shelters, in the seventh month.

2 Chronicles 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of
- Israel
- the Levites
- the Box

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite
- elder, older, old

ULT

⁴ And all the elders of Israel came, and the Levites carried the Box.

UST

⁴ When they had all arrived, the descendants of Levi lifted up the sacred chest,

2 Chronicles 5:5

furnishings

This refers to all of the bowls and tools that were used in the house of God. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 4:19](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Box
- meeting
- sacred
- the priests
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite
- feast, feasting

ULT

⁵ And they brought up the Box, and the tent of meeting, and all the sacred items that were in the tent; the priests, the Levites, brought them up.

UST

⁵ and they carried it and the sacred tent and the sacred things that were inside it. The priests, who were also descended from Levi, carried them.

2 Chronicles 5:6

all the assembly of Israel

Here “all” is a generalization meaning very many Israelites. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted

This is an exaggeration that emphasizes the great number of animals that were sacrificed. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “sacrificing more sheep and oxen than anyone could count” or “sacrificing very many sheep and oxen” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And King](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Box](#)
- [sacrificing](#)
- [sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

⁶ [And King Solomon](#) and all the congregation of [Israel](#) were gathering to him before [the Box](#), [sacrificing sheep](#) and oxen which was not counted, and it was not numbered because of the abundance.

UST

⁶ King Solomon and many of the other people of Israel who had gathered there walked in front of the sacred chest. And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep and bulls. No one was able to count them because there were very many.

2 Chronicles 5:7

into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under

Alternate translation: “into the inner room of the house—that is, to the most holy place—under”

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the Box of
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- the house
- the holy
- of holies
- the cherubim

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- covenant
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- cherub
- house, household

ULT

⁷ And the priests brought in the Box of the covenant of Yahweh to its place, to the inner sanctuary of the house, to the holy of holies, to under the wings of the cherubim.

UST

⁷ The priests then brought the sacred chest into the very holy place, into the inner room of the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the figures of winged creatures.

2 Chronicles 5:8

poles by which it was carried

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "poles by which the priests carried it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the cherubim
- the cherubim
- the Box
- the Box

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- cherub
- cherub

ULT

⁸ And the cherubim were spreading out wings over the place of the Box. And the cherubim covered over the Box and over its poles from above.

UST

⁸ The wings of those figures spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried.

2 Chronicles 5:9

their ends were seen ... they could not be seen

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people could see their ends ... people could not see them"

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote.

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the Box
- the front of

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- face, facial
- head

ULT

⁹ And the poles lengthened and the heads of the poles from the Box were seen at the front of the inner sanctuary, but they were not seen outside. And they are there until this day.

UST

⁹ The poles were very long, with the result that they could be seen by people who were standing in the entrance to the very holy place, but they could not be seen by anyone standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there.

2 Chronicles 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the Box
- Moses
- Yahweh
- cut
- the sons of
- Israel
- from Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Moses
- cut off, cut down

ULT

¹⁰ There was nothing in the Box except the two tablets that Moses had placed at Horeb, which Yahweh cut with the sons of Israel in their going out from Egypt.

UST

¹⁰ The only things that were inside the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that Moses had put there at Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites after they came out of Egypt.

2 Chronicles 5:11

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the priests
- the holy place
- consecrated themselves

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood

ULT

11 And it happened in the going out of the priests from the holy place that all the priests who were found consecrated themselves; there was no keeping to the divisions.

UST

11 Then the priests left the holy place in the temple. All the priests who were there set themselves apart to serve the priestly duties, without concern for which group they were from.

2 Chronicles 5:12

Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sons and brothers

Alternate translation: “sons and other relatives”

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

120 priests

“one hundred and twenty priests” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the Levites](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [and their sons](#)
- [and their brothers](#)
- [were standing](#)
- [of the altar](#)
- [priests](#)
- [with trumpets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [brother](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

ULT

¹² [And the Levites](#), the singers, all of them, [Asaph](#), Heman, Jeduthun, [and their sons and their brothers](#), clothed in fine linen, with cymbals, and with harps and lyres, [were standing](#) to the east [of the altar](#). And with them, 120 [priests](#) sounding [with trumpets](#).

UST

¹² All the descendants of Levi who were musicians—Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, their sons and their other relatives—stood on the east side of the altar. They were wearing linen clothes, and they were playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. There were 120 other priests who were blowing trumpets.

2 Chronicles 5:13

making one sound to be heard for praising and thanking Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “making one sound as they praised and thanked Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

raised their voices

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “sang loudly” (See: [Idiom](#))

for his covenant loyalty endures forever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **covenant loyalty**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithful.” Alternate translation: “for he is faithful forever” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Then the house, the house of Yahweh, was filled with a cloud

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Then a cloud filled the house of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to praise
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- with trumpets
- good
- his covenant faithfulness
- And the house
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house, household
- household
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

¹³ And it happened, like one were the trumpeters and singers, to cause to hear one voice [to praise](#) and to give thanks [to Yahweh](#). And when raising a voice [with trumpets](#) and with cymbals and with the items of the song, and when praising [Yahweh](#): “For [good](#), for forever is [his covenant faithfulness](#).” [And the house](#) filled with a cloud, [the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

¹³ The men blowing trumpets, those playing the cymbals and other musical instruments, and the singers, made music together, praising Yahweh and singing this song: “Yahweh is good to us; he faithfully loves us forever.” Then suddenly the temple was filled with a cloud.

2 Chronicles 5:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the glory of
- Yahweh
- the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- God
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- house, household

ULT

¹⁴ And the priests were not able to stand to minister because of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled the house of God.

UST

¹⁴ The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue doing their work.

2 Chronicles 6

2 Chronicles 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple dedication

Solomon dedicated the temple with a prayer asking God to honor the temple. It was common to dedicate something important to God when it was completed. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

2 Chronicles 6:1

Yahweh has said that he

Solomon speaks to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, you have said that you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

in thick darkness

Here the word “thick” shows that the darkness is extreme. Yahweh spoke of not allowing sinful people to see him as if he were to live in darkness. Alternate translation: “in great darkness” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Solomon](#) said, “[Yahweh](#) has said he would dwell in thick darkness,

UST

¹ Then Solomon prayed, “Yahweh, you said that you would live in a dark cloud.

2 Chronicles 6:2

I have built you a lofty residence

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: "I and your people have built you a lofty residence" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a lofty residence

a magnificent house, appropriate for someone who is very important

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#), [household](#)

ULT

² but I have built a lofty [house](#) for you and a place for you to dwell forever."

UST

² But now I have built a glorious temple for you to live in forever!"

2 Chronicles 6:3

while all the assembly of Israel was standing

The phrase “all the assembly” is a generalization. It does not mean that every person of Israel was standing, but that all of the people who were gathered there were standing. Alternate translation: “while the people of Israel there were standing” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- his face
- and he blessed
- the assembly of
- the assembly of
- Israel
- Israel
- was standing

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- face, facial
- king, kingship

ULT

³ And the king turned his face, and he blessed all the assembly of Israel, and all the assembly of Israel was standing.

UST

³ Then while all the people stood there, Solomon turned toward the people and asked God to bless them.

2 Chronicles 6:4

May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Praise Yahweh, the God of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

David my father

King Solomon actually was one of King David's sons.

has fulfilled it

"has caused it to happen." The word "it" refers to what God had promised. Alternate translation: "has ensured that he fulfilled his promises" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with his own hands

The hand is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "by his own power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- to David
- my father
- and with his hands

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

ULT

⁴ And he said, "[Blessed be Yahweh the God of Israel](#) who spoke with his mouth [to David my father, and with his hands](#) he fulfilled, saying,

UST

⁴ He said to them, "Let us praise Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, who has caused to happen what he promised to my father David. What he said to David was this:

2 Chronicles 6:5

in order for my name to be there

Here the metonym “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation, and his name being there represents people recognizing his greatness and worshiping him there. Alternate translation: “for people to worship me there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to be prince over my people Israel

Being “prince over people” represents ruling them. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I brought out
- my people
- my people
- Egypt
- the tribes of
- Israel
- Israel
- a house
- for my name

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- people, people group
- people, people group
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

⁵ ‘From the day that I brought out my people from the land of Egypt, I did not choose a city from all the tribes of Israel to build a house, for my name to be there. And I did not choose a man to be leader over my people Israel.

UST

⁵ ‘From the time that I brought my people out of Egypt, I have never chosen a city in Israel in which a temple should be built for people to worship me there. Nor did I choose anyone to be the leader of my Israelite people.

2 Chronicles 6:6

so that my name might be there

Here the metonym “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation, and his name being there represents people recognizing his greatness and worshiping him there. Alternate translation: “so that people might worship me there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to be over my people Israel

Being “over” people represents ruling them. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [for my name](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁶ But I have chosen [Jerusalem](#), [for my name](#) to be there, and I have chosen David to be over [my people Israel](#).'

UST

⁶ But now I have chosen Jerusalem to be the place for people to worship me, and I have chosen you, David, to rule my Israelite people.'"

2 Chronicles 6:7

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues speaking to the people at the temple.

it was in the heart of David my father

Here David's heart is spoken of as if it were a container, and what he desired is spoken of as if it were an item in the container. Alternate translation: "David my father desired" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the name of Yahweh

This could mean: (1) Yahweh's name represents himself. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh ... for me" or (2) Yahweh's name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh's reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heart of](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [a house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁷ And it was with [the heart of David my father](#) to build [a house](#) for the name of [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#).

UST

⁷ Then Solomon said further, "My father David wanted to build a temple for Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong."

2 Chronicles 6:8

it was in your heart ... for it to be in your heart

Here David's heart is spoken of as if it were a container, and what he desired is spoken of as if it were an item in the container. Alternate translation: "you desired ... to desire to do that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for my name

This could mean: (1) Yahweh's name represents himself. Alternate translation: "for me" or (2) Yahweh's name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: "for my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

In that it was in your heart

Alternate translation: "Because it was in your heart" or "Because you wanted"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁸ And [Yahweh](#) said to [David my father](#), 'On account of what is with [your heart](#) to build [a house](#) for my name, you did well that it was with [your heart](#).

UST

⁸ But Yahweh said to him, 'It is good that you wanted to build a house for me.

2 Chronicles 6:9

one who will come from your loins

Alternate translation: "one who will be your own offspring" or "one whom you yourself will father"

Translation Words - ULT

- the house
- the house
- your son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

⁹ Only you yourself must not build the house; instead, your son who comes from your loins, he himself will build the house for my name.'

UST

⁹ However, you are not the one who I want to build the temple, It is one of your own sons who will build it.'

2 Chronicles 6:10

has carried out the word that he had said

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “has done exactly what he said he would do” (See: [Idiom](#))

I have arisen in the place of David my father

Height is a metaphor for power. Alternate translation: “I have gained the power that David my father had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “I rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the name of Yahweh

This could mean: (1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. Alternate translation: “for Yahweh” or (2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: “for the reputation of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And [Yahweh](#) has established his word that he spoke, and I have risen instead of [David my father](#), and I sit on [the throne of Israel](#), just as [Yahweh](#) spoke. And I have built [the house](#) for the name of [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#).

UST

¹⁰ And Yahweh has done what he promised to do. I have become the king of Israel to rule after my father, and I am ruling the people, as Yahweh promised, and I have arranged for this temple to be built for us to worship Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [my father](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house](#)
- [the God of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

2 Chronicles 6:11

in which is Yahweh's covenant, which

The stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the terms of the covenant are spoken of as if they were the covenant itself. Alternate translation: "in which are the tablets on which Yahweh wrote the terms of the covenant that" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And I set
- the Box
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- he cut
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- cut off, cut down

ULT

11 And I set there the Box, in which there is the covenant of Yahweh, which he cut with the sons of Israel."

UST

11 I have put the sacred chest in the temple, in which are the stone tablets showing the covenant that Yahweh made with us Israelite people."

2 Chronicles 6:12

in the presence of all the assembly of Israel

Alternate translation: "in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there"

spread out his hands

"raised his hands." This was to show that he was praying. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altar of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹² And he stood before [the altar of Yahweh](#) in front of all [the assembly of Israel](#). And he spread out [his hands](#),

UST

¹² Then Solomon stood in front of the altar that was in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there. He spread out his hands as he began to pray.

2 Chronicles 6:13

five cubits long, five cubits wide, and three cubits high

You may convert these to modern measures. Alternate translation: “two and one-third meters long, two and one-third meters wide, and one and one-half meters high” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

he spread out his hands toward the heavens

Solomon lifted up his hands and held them high as he knelt on the platform to pray. Spreading out his hands toward the heavens was a way of showing that he was praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [and he knelt down](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [to the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹³ for [Solomon](#) made a platform of [bronze](#), and he placed it in the midst of the court, five cubits its length, and five cubits its width, and three cubits its height. And he stood on it, [and he knelt down](#) on his knees in front of all [the assembly of Israel](#), and he spread out [his hands to the heavens](#).

UST

¹³ Now His workers had built a bronze platform there for him to stand on, which was two and one-third meters square and one and one-half meters high. They had put it in the outer courtyard. Solomon mounted that platform and then knelt down in front of all the people of Israel who had gathered there, and he spread out his arms toward heaven.

2 Chronicles 6:14

on the earth, who keeps covenant and steadfast love with your servants

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “on the earth. You keep your promise to love your servants” or “on the earth. You faithfully love your servants”

walk before you with all their heart

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “live wholeheartedly the way that you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God of
- a god
- their heart
- Israel
- in the heavens
- or on the earth
- one who keeps
- the covenant
- and covenant faithfulness
- to your servants

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- God
- God
- heart
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- earth, land
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

¹⁴ And he said, “Yahweh, God of Israel, there is not like you a god in the heavens or on the earth, one who keeps the covenant and covenant faithfulness to your servants, walking before you with all their heart;

UST

¹⁴ Then he prayed, “Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, there is no God like you in heaven or on the earth. You solemnly promised in your covenant that you would faithfully love us, and that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do.

2 Chronicles 6:15

you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him

“you who have kept your promise to your servant David my father.”
To keep a promise is an idiom that means to do what one has promised. Alternate translation: “you who have done what you promised your servant David my father” (See: [Idiom](#))

you spoke with your mouth

The phrase “with your mouth” may emphasize that God himself spoke. It was not someone else who made the promise. Alternate translation: “you yourself spoke”

and have fulfilled it with your hand

The hand is a metonym for the power of the hand. Alternate translation: “and, by your power, have fulfilled what you said” or “and by your power have done what you said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

as it is today

This refers to the day when Solomon was saying this prayer.

Translation Words - ULT

- kept
- for your servant
- David
- my father
- and by your hand

Translation Words - UST

- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

¹⁵ who kept for your servant David my father that which he spoke to him. And you spoke with your mouth and by your hand you have fulfilled, like this day.

UST

¹⁵ You have done the things that you promised my father David, who served you very well, that you would do. Truly, you promised to do those things for him, and today we see that by your power you have caused it all to happen.

2 Chronicles 6:16

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

carry out what you have promised

This is a request. To carry out what one has said is an idiom meaning to do what one has said. Alternate translation: “please do what you have promised” (See: [Idiom](#))

You will not fail to have a man

God speaking in terms of David having a man implies that the man would be a descendant of David. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “you will always have a descendant” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel

The phrase “in my sight” here implies that God would choose the man and the man would want to obey God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. Alternate translation: “to rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to walk in my law, as you have walked before me

The way a person behaves is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “to obey my law, as you have obeyed me” or “to be faithful to my law as you have been faithful to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God of
- your sons
- in my law
- you walked
- Israel
- Israel
- keep
- keep
- for your servant
- David
- my father
- There will...be cut off
- the throne of

ULT

¹⁶ And now, Yahweh, God of Israel, keep for your servant David my father that which you spoke to him saying, ‘There will not be cut off for you a man from before me, sitting on the throne of Israel, only if your sons keep their ways to walk in my law, just as you walked before me.’

UST

¹⁶ So now, Yahweh, the God we Israelites worship Israel, as you promised your servant David, my father, please make sure that he will always have a descendant who will be king of Israel. For you promise you would do this if his descendants were faithful to you.

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- cut off, cut down
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- throne, enthroned
- walk, walked
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

2 Chronicles 6:17

let your word be confirmed, which you have spoken to your servant David

Alternate translation: "I want you to make come true the word that you have spoken to your servant David"

let your word be confirmed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "confirm your word" or "make your word come true" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your word

Alternate translation: "your promise"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God of
- Israel
- let...be confirmed
- to your servant

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁷ And now, Yahweh, God of Israel, let your word **be confirmed**, which you spoke **to your servant**, to David.

UST

¹⁷ So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised David, who served you well, to become true.

2 Chronicles 6:18

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

But will God actually live with mankind on the earth?

Possible meanings of this question are: (1) Solomon is asking a real question and expecting an answer or (2) the question is rhetorical and Solomon is emphasizing that God is too big and mighty to live on earth. Alternate translation: “But it surely cannot be that God will actually live on the earth!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But will God

Here Solomon speaks about God in the third person to show his great respect for God. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “But will you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Look

Here “Look” indicates that he is about to say something important.

you—how much less can this temple that I have built

Alternate translation: “you, so this temple that I have built certainly cannot contain you”

this temple that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: “this temple that your people have built under my leadership” or “this house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- mankind
- the earth
- the heavens
- the heavens
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Adam
- earth, land
- house, household

ULT

¹⁸ But will God indeed dwell with mankind on the earth? Behold, the heavens and the heavens of the heavens do not contain you—how much less this house that I have built!

UST

¹⁸ But, my God, will you really live on earth among us? This temple I have built cannot contain you; not even the universe and heaven itself can contain you.

2 Chronicles 6:19

respect this prayer of your servant and his request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “respect me, your servant, as I make this request” (See: [Doublet](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you

The words “cry” and “prayer” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he asks Yahweh to help him. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “listen to me, your servant, as I call for you to help me” (See: [Doublet](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the prayer of
- your servant
- your servant
- his supplication
- Yahweh
- my God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- grace, gracious
- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁹ Yet turn to the prayer of your servant and to his supplication, Yahweh my God, to listen to the cry and to the prayer that your servant is praying before you,

UST

¹⁹ But Yahweh, my God, please listen to my prayer, while I am pleading with this day and do what I am requesting.

2 Chronicles 6:20

May your eyes be open toward this temple

The eyes being open is a metonym for watching, and here watching represents protecting. "Please watch over this temple" or "Please protect this temple" (See: [Metaphor](#))

day and night

This is a merism. Alternate translation: "all the time" or "continually" (See: [Merism](#))

where you promised to put your name

This could mean: (1) Yahweh's name represents himself. Alternate translation: "where you promised to be" or (2) Yahweh's name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: "where you promised to make people know you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the prayer your servant prays toward this place

Solomon refers to himself as "your servant" to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "the prayer that I, your servant, pray toward this place" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [your name](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁰ your eyes to be open to this [house](#) days and night, to the place where you said to put [your name](#) there, to listen to the prayer which [your servant](#) prays toward this place.

UST

²⁰ Always protect this temple, this place where you said you would be present, in order that you might always hear me when I pray, for I am your servant.

2 Chronicles 6:21

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

So listen to the requests of your servant and of your people Israel

Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “So listen to my requests and the requests of your people Israel” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

when you listen, forgive

Alternate translation: “when you hear our prayers, please forgive our sins”

Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [and your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²¹ And listen to the supplications of [your servant and your people Israel](#) when they pray toward this place, and you yourself hear from the place of your dwelling from [the heavens](#), and hear and forgive.

UST

²¹ Listen to me when I pray, and listen to your Israelite people when they pray, whether we are here, or even if we just face in this direction. Listen from heaven, where you live; and when you hear us pray, forgive us.

2 Chronicles 6:22

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

is required to swear an oath

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone requires him to swear an oath" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

this house

This refers to the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [your altar](#)
- [in...house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)

ULT

²² If a man [sins](#) against his neighbor and is made by him to swear an oath, and brings an oath before [your altar](#) in this [house](#),

UST

²² If people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person, and if they bring him in front of your altar outside this holy temple, and if he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the truth,'

2 Chronicles 6:23

bringing what he has done upon his own head

To bring someone's conduct on him represents punishing him for his bad conduct. Alternate translation: "punishing him as he deserves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

upon his own head

Here the "head" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "on him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

give to him according to his righteousness

Alternate translation: "give him what he deserves because he is innocent"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [and judge](#)
- [your servants](#)
- [to bring back](#)
- [on his head](#)
- [the righteous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [head](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²³ then you yourself hear from [the heavens](#), and act, [and judge your servants, to bring back](#) the wicked, to put his way [on his head](#), and to make righteous [the righteous](#), to give to him according to his righteousness.

UST

²³ then please listen from heaven and decide who is telling the truth. Then punish the person who is guilty as he deserves to be punished, and do good to the other person as a reward for his innocence.

2 Chronicles 6:24

When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When an enemy defeats your people Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they have sinned against you

Alternate translation: "because your people Israel have sinned against you"

if they turn back to you

Here "turn back to you" represents submitting again to God. Alternate translation: "if they submit to you again" (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

This could mean: (1) "confess that they have sinned against you" or (2) "praise you" or (3) "say that they will obey you from now on."

request forgiveness before you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **forgiveness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "ask you to forgive them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [an enemy](#)
- [they have sinned](#)
- [and they return](#)
- [and they confess](#)
- [your name](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [in...house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [confess, confession](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²⁴ And if [your people Israel](#) are struck down before [an enemy](#) because [they have sinned](#) against you, [and they return](#), [and they confess your name](#), [and they pray](#), and they seek favor before you in this [house](#),

UST

²⁴ And suppose that your Israelite people are defeated by their enemies because they sinned against you, and forced to go to some distant country. Suppose further that they turn away from their sinful behavior and face in the direction of this temple and acknowledge that you have justly punished them; and suppose that they beg you to forgive them.

- [return, turn back](#)

2 Chronicles 6:25

please listen from the heavens

To “listen” is an idiom for responding to prayer. Alternate translation: “please honor their prayer” or “please answer their prayer” (See: [Idiom](#))

bring them back to the land that you gave to them and to their ancestors

This implies that when their enemies defeated them, God’s people will have gone to live in other lands. Alternate translation: “bring them back to their own land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heavens
- your people
- Israel
- and bring them back
- and to their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group
- return, turn back

ULT

²⁵ then you yourself hear from the heavens and forgive the sin of your people Israel, and bring them back to the ground that you gave to them and to their fathers.

UST

²⁵ Then please listen to them from heaven and forgive your them for the sins that they have committed, and bring them back to this land that you gave to our ancestors.

2 Chronicles 6:26

When the skies are shut up and there is no rain

The sky is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain, and when God does not want it to rain he closes the door to the building. Alternate translation: "When you do not allow rain to fall from the skies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

This could mean: (1) "confess that they have sinned against you" or (2) "praise you" or (3) "say that they will obey you from now on."

turn from their sin

Here "turn from" is a metaphor for stopping doing it. Alternate translation: "stop committing their sins" or "stop acting sinfully" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁶ When [the heavens](#) are restrained and there is no rain because [they have sinned](#) against you, [and they pray](#) toward this place, [and they confess your name](#), from their sin [they turn](#) for you afflict them,

UST

²⁶ When you do not allow any rain to fall because the people have sinned against you—then, if they stop acting sinfully and humbly pray to you, you who are present in this place,

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [they have sinned](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [and they confess](#)
- [your name](#)
- [they turn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [confess, confession](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

2 Chronicles 6:27

the good way in which they should walk

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "the good way that they should live" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance

The land is spoken of as if it were an inheritance because God wanted them to possess it forever. Alternate translation: "your land, which you have given to your people to own forever" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in the heavens
- your servants
- and your people
- to your people
- Israel
- good
- they should walk
- your land

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, land
- people, people group
- people, people group
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- walk, walked

ULT

27 then you yourself hear [in the heavens](#) and forgive the sin of [your servants and your people Israel](#), for you teach them the [good](#) way in which [they should walk](#) in it. And give rain on [your land](#), which you gave [to your people](#) for a possession.

UST

27 then listen from heaven and forgive the sins of your people. Teach them the right way to conduct their lives. Then send rain on the land that you gave to your people forever.

2 Chronicles 6:28

blight or mildew

These are agricultural terms that refer to the death of crops from either too little or too much rain, respectively.

locusts or caterpillars

A “locust” is a type of grasshopper that causes destruction by eating crops. The word “caterpillar” refers to an early growth stage of the locust.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Famine](#)
- [from their enemies](#)
- [at the gates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [famine](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

ULT

²⁸ [Famine](#), if there is, in the land pestilence, if there is blight or mildew, locust or grasshopper, if there is indeed they suffer distress [from their enemies](#) in the land [at the gates](#), any plague or any sickness,

UST

²⁸ And when the people of this land experience famines, or if there is a plague or mildew or locusts or grasshoppers, or when their enemies surround any of their cities in order to attack them—if any of these disaster happens to them—

2 Chronicles 6:29

prayers and requests

The words “prayers” and “requests” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person is sincere as he makes his requests. (See: [Doublet](#))

knowing the plague and sorrow in his own heart

Here “plague” is a metaphor for sin, and sin and sorrow are spoken of as being in people’s hearts. Alternate translation: “knowing the sin and sorrow in his own heart” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he spreads out his hands toward this temple

This was a way of showing that they were praying to the God of the temple. See how you translated “spread out his hands” in [2 Chronicles 6:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prayer](#)
- [supplication](#)
- [person](#)
- [your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [they know](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Adam](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²⁹ any [prayer](#), any [supplication](#) which is by any [person](#) or by all [your people Israel](#) which [they know](#) each his own plague and his own sorrow, and he spreads out [his hands](#) toward this [house](#),

UST

²⁹ and then if your Israelite people earnestly plead, or if even just one person does so—if they stretch out their hands toward this temple and pray to you because they know the weakness and sorrow in their own hearts—

2 Chronicles 6:30

for all his ways

Here “his ways” represents the person’s behavior. Alternate translation: “for what he has done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heavens
- you know
- you...know
- his heart
- the heart of
- the sons of
- mankind

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- heart
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- Adam
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁰ then you yourself hear from [the heavens](#), your dwelling place, and forgive, and give to each according to all his ways; because [you know his heart](#), for you yourself, only you, [know the heart of the sons of mankind](#),

UST

³⁰ then listen from your home in heaven and forgive them. You alone know what each person is thinking, so reward each person according to everything that he does.

2 Chronicles 6:31

so that they may walk in your ways

Here “walk in your ways” represents living and behaving the way God wants. Alternate translation: “so that they may live as you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they may fear you](#)
- [live](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [to our fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

³¹ in order that [they may fear you](#), by walking in your ways all the days that they [live](#) on [the face of](#) the ground that you gave [to our fathers](#).

UST

³¹ Do this in order that they might honor you and conduct their lives as you want them to, all the time that they live in this land that you gave to our ancestors.

2 Chronicles 6:32

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

who—because of your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—comes

It is implied that the foreigners come because they hear about God's greatness. Alternate translation: "who hears about your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—if he comes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

your great name

Here God's name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: "your great reputation" or "your greatness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to God's power. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

prays toward this house

Praying toward Yahweh's temple shows that one is praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the foreigner
- from your people
- Israel
- of your...name
- and your...hand
- strong
- and pray
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- name
- pray, prayer
- alien, foreigner, sojourn
- hand
- house, household
- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group

ULT

³² And also to the foreigner who is not from your people Israel, and he comes from a distant land because of your great name, and your strong hand, and your outstretched arm, and they come and pray toward this house,

UST

³² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great and powerful. If they turn toward this temple and pray,

2 Chronicles 6:33

may know your name

Here God's name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: "may know your reputation" or "may know your greatness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

as do your own people Israel

Alternate translation: "as your own people Israel know your name and fear you"

this house I have built is called by your name

The phrase "is called by your name" shows that God possesses and owns the house. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you own this house that I have built" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

this house I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 6:18](#). Alternate translation: "this house that your people have built under my leadership" or "this house that I and your people have built" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [the foreigner](#)
- [house](#)
- [calls](#)
- [is called](#)
- [the peoples of](#)
- [like your people](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [may know](#)
- [your name](#)
- [your name](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [alien, foreigner, sojourn](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

³³ and you yourself hear from [the heavens](#), from your dwelling place, and do according to all that [the foreigner](#) calls to you, so that all [the peoples of the earth](#) may know your name and fear you, [like your people Israel](#), and to know that [your name is called](#) toward this [house](#) that I have built.

UST

³³ then from your home in heaven please listen to their prayer and do for them what they request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will honor and obey you, as your people of Israel do. And do this so that they will know that you are present in this temple that I have built.

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- people, people group
- people, people group

2 Chronicles 6:34

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

Suppose that your people go out ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

they pray to you toward this city ... and toward the house

Praying toward Jerusalem and the temple shows that they are praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the house that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: “this house that your people have built under my leadership” or “this house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your name

This could mean: (1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. Alternate translation: “for you” or (2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: “for your reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your people](#)
- [go out](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [and they pray](#)
- [and the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

³⁴ When [your people go out](#) to battle against [their enemies](#) in the way which you send them, [and they pray](#) to you toward the way of this city that you have chosen it [and the house](#) that I have built for your name,

UST

³⁴ When you send your people to go and attack their enemies, if they pray to you, no matter where they are, and if they turn toward this city that you have chosen and toward this temple that I have caused to be built to honor you,

2 Chronicles 6:35

to their prayer, their request

The abstract nouns “prayer” and “request” can be stated as verbs.
Alternate translation: “to what they request when they pray to you”
(See: [Doublet](#))

help their cause

This refers to helping them fight against their enemies.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [their prayer](#)
- [their supplication](#)
- [their judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

ULT

³⁵ then hear from [the heavens their prayer](#), and [their supplication](#), and do [their judgment](#).

UST

³⁵ then will you please listen from heaven to their prayers. Listen to what they plead for you to do, and give them help.

2 Chronicles 6:36

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

Suppose they sin ... suppose that you are angry

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

hand them over to the enemy

Here “hand them over to the enemy” represents allowing the enemy to capture them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that the enemy carries them away

Here “carries them away” represents forcing them to leave their own country. Alternate translation: “so that the enemy forces them to leave” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they sin
- does...sin
- person
- an enemy
- their captors
- a land

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Adam
- adversary, enemy
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- earth, land

ULT

³⁶ When they sin against you—for there is no person who does not sin—and you are angry with them and give them before an enemy, and their captors take them captive, to a land, distant or near,

UST

³⁶ It is true that everyone sins. So when your people sin against you, and you become angry with them, you might allow their enemies to capture them and take them to their countries, even to countries that are far away.

2 Chronicles 6:37

suppose they realize ... suppose that they repent ... Suppose that they say

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

where they have been exiled

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "where their enemies have taken them as exiles" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

seek favor from you

Alternate translation: "beg you to be merciful to them"

We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly

These two sentences mean the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the people's actions were. (See: [Parallelism](#))

acted perversely and sinned

The words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the people sinned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they turn back](#)
- [and they turn](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [there](#)
- [of their captivity](#)
- [We have sinned](#)
- [we have committed iniquity](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful](#)

ULT

³⁷ [and they turn back their heart](#) in the land where they are captive [there, and they turn](#) and they seek favor from you in the land [of their captivity](#), saying, '[We have sinned; we have committed iniquity](#), and we have done evil,'

UST

³⁷ When that happens, while they are in those distant countries, if they say 'We have sinned; we have done things that are wrong and have done things that are very wicked,'

2 Chronicles 6:38

Suppose that they return ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

they return to you

Here “return to you” represents submitting to Yahweh again. Alternate translation: “they submit to you again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idioms “with all their heart” means “completely” and “with all their soul” means “with all their being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “completely” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

where they took them as captives

Alternate translation: “where their enemies took them as captives”

that they pray toward their land

This refers to Israel. Praying toward Israel would show that they were praying to Yahweh, the God of Israel. Alternate translation: “that they pray facing their land” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

toward the city that you chose

This refers to Jerusalem.

the house that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: “the house that your people have built under my leadership” or “the house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your name

This could mean: (1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. Alternate translation: “for you” or (2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: “for your reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they turn](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [their being](#)

ULT

³⁸ [and they turn](#) to you with all [their heart](#) and with all [their being](#) in the land [of their captivity](#), where [they took](#) them [captive](#), [and they pray](#) toward the way of [their land](#) which you gave [to their fathers](#), and the city that you chose, and toward the house that I have built for your name,

UST

³⁸ suppose that they repent very sincerely and pray facing this land that you gave their ancestors, and facing this city that you chose, and facing this temple that I have built for you to be present in.

- of their captivity
- they took...captive
- and they pray
- their land
- to their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- pray, prayer
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

2 Chronicles 6:39

to their prayer and to their requests

The words “prayer” and “requests” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people are sincere as they make their requests. Alternate translation: “their requests” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [their prayer](#)
- [their supplication](#)
- [their judgment](#)
- [your people](#)
- [sinned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

³⁹ then hear from [the heavens](#), from your dwelling place, [their prayer](#) and [their supplication](#), and do [their judgment](#), and forgive [your people](#) who [sinned](#) against you.

UST

³⁹ Then from your home in heaven listen to their prayer, and listen to them while they plead for your help, and do what they ask you to do, and forgive your people who have sinned against you.

2 Chronicles 6:40

Now

Here the word “now” is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your eyes be open

The eyes being open is a metonym for seeing. Here it represents looking attentively. Alternate translation: “please pay attention to us” or “please look at us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

let your ears be attentive to the prayer

The ears being attentive is a metonym for listening attentively. Alternate translation: “please listen to the prayer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the prayer that is made in this place

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “to the prayer that we make in this place” or “to us as we pray to you in this place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my God](#)
- [to the prayer of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Now, [my God](#), please let your eyes be open, and your ears attentive [to the prayer of](#) this place.

UST

⁴⁰ Now, my God, look at us as we pray to you in this place, and please listen to us.

2 Chronicles 6:41

arise, Yahweh God, to your resting place

This pictures God as if he were sitting on his throne, and asks that he will get up from his throne and come to this place. Alternate translation: “arise, Yahweh God, and come to your resting place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the ark of your strength

Alternate translation: “the ark, which is a symbol of your power”

Let your priests ... be clothed with salvation

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “to save.” This could mean: (1) being clothed with salvation is a metaphor for experiencing salvation. Alternate translation: “Let your priests ... know that you have saved them” or (2) being clothed with salvation is a metaphor for demonstrating salvation. Alternate translation: “Let your priests ... demonstrate how you save people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

41 And now arise, [Yahweh God](#), to your resting place, you [and the Box of](#) your strength. [Your priests, Yahweh God](#), may they be clothed in salvation, and your faithful ones [rejoice](#) in goodness.

UST

41 Yahweh our God, come and stay in this place with the sacred chest, the chest that shows that you are powerful. Yahweh God, cause your priests to know clearly that you have rescued them. Cause us your people to rejoice because of all the good things that you do for us.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [and the Box of](#)
- [Your priests](#)
- [rejoice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)

2 Chronicles 6:42

do not turn the face of your anointed away from you

Turning the face of someone away represents rejecting him.
Alternate translation: "do not reject your anointed one" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your anointed

"your anointed one." Being anointed is a metonym for being chosen by God. King Solomon may have been speaking specifically about himself. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the one you anointed" or "me, the one you chose to be king" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴² Yahweh God, do not [turn away the face of](#) your anointed ones. Remember the covenant faithfulnesses of [David your servant](#)."

UST

⁴² Yahweh God, do not reject me, the king whom you have appointed to be the king of Israel; do not forget how faithfully were to David, your servant, because of your covenant with him."

Keep in mind your acts of covenant loyalty for David, your servant

The phrase "your acts" can be expressed with the phrase "what you have done." Alternate translation: "Remember what you have done for David, your servant, because of your covenant loyalty"

Keep in mind

Alternate translation: "Remember"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [do...turn away](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [David](#)
- [your servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

2 Chronicles 7

2 Chronicles 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's dream

God appeared again to Solomon in a dream and said the temple was acceptable and he honored it with his presence. He would remain as long as Israel obeyed him. If they worshiped other gods and idols he would let their enemies destroy the temple. (See: [temple, house, house of God](#) and [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#))

2 Chronicles 7:1

the house

Alternate translation: "Yahweh's house" or "the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- and consumed
- Yahweh
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- devour
- house, household

ULT

¹ And when Solomon finished praying, then the fire came down from the heavens and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the house.

UST

¹ When Solomon finished praying, fire came down from the sky and burned up the animals that the people had sacrificed, as well as the other offerings. And the power and light of Yahweh filled the temple.

2 Chronicles 7:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the glory of

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

² And the priests were not able to go into the house of Yahweh because the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh.

UST

² The light was extremely bright, with the result that the priests could not enter the temple of Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 7:3

they bowed down with their faces to the ground on the stone pavement

This is a position of humility and worship. Alternate translation: "they lay down on the ground with their faces touching the stone pavement" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

his covenant loyalty endures forever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **covenant loyalty**, you could express the same idea with the adjective "loyal" and the verb "promise." Alternate translation: "God will always be loyal to us because of his covenant" or "God will always faithfully do for us what he promised" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his covenant faithfulness](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [the house](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [and they worshiped](#)
- [and gave thanks](#)
- [he is good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [confess, confession](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

³ And all [the sons of Israel](#) were seeing [the fire](#) come down and the glory of [Yahweh](#) on [the house](#), and they bowed down their faces [to the ground](#) on the stone pavement, [and they worshiped and gave thanks to Yahweh](#), "Truly [he is good](#); truly [his covenant faithfulness](#) is forever."

UST

³ When all the Israelite people who were there saw the fire coming down and the light of Yahweh above the temple, they prostrated themselves with their faces touching the stone pavement. They worshiped and thanked Yahweh, saying, 'Yahweh is always good to us; he will love us forever, as he promised to do.'

2 Chronicles 7:4

all the people

This generalization refers either: (1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [2 Chronicles 5:2](#), or (2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the king](#)
- [the people](#)
- [were offering](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

⁴ [And the king](#) and all [the people were offering sacrifice](#) before [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁴⁻⁵ Then the king and all the people who were there dedicated the temple to Yahweh by offering more sacrifices to him. King Solomon offered twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats to be sacrificed.

2 Chronicles 7:5

twenty-two thousand oxen

"22,000 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

120,000 sheep and goats

"one hundred and twenty thousand sheep and goats" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- the king
- Solomon
- a sacrifice of
- and...sheep
- the people
- the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Solomon
- flock, herd
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

⁵ And King Solomon offered a sacrifice of 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep. And the king and all the people dedicated the house of God.

UST

⁴⁻⁵ Then the king and all the people who were there dedicated the temple to Yahweh by offering more sacrifices to him. King Solomon offered twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats to be sacrificed.

2 Chronicles 7:6

each standing where they serve

Alternate translation: "each standing in their appointed place"

the Levites also with instruments of music of Yahweh

The word "stood" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: the Levites also stood with instruments of music of Yahweh" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

For his covenant faithfulness endures for ever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithfully" or "faithful." See how you translated "covenant faithfulness" in [2 Chronicles 7:3](#). Alternate translation: "God will always be faithful to his covenant with us" or "God will always faithfully love us" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all Israel

This generalization refers to those who were at the feast in Jerusalem, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the priests](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [were standing](#)
- [was standing](#)
- [by the hand of them](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [his covenant faithfulness is](#)
- [when...praised](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

⁶ [And the priests](#) at their posts [were standing](#); [and the Levites](#) with instruments of song of [Yahweh](#) which [David the king](#) had made to give thanks to [Yahweh](#), "For [his covenant faithfulness is](#) forever;" [when David praised by the hand of them](#). And [the priests](#) were trumpeting in front of them, and all [Israel was standing](#).

UST

⁶ The priests stood in their positions, and the other descendants of Levi stood in their positions holding the musical instruments to praise Yahweh, instruments that King David had ordered to be made for praising Yahweh and thanking him. They sang, "He faithfully loves us forever." Opposite the other descendants of Levi the priests stood, blowing their trumpets, while all the Israelite people were standing and listening.

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Levi, Levite
- hand
- king, kingship
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

2 Chronicles 7:7

the bronze altar that he had made

The author speaks of Solomon commanding someone to make the bronze altar and telling him how to do it as if Solomon himself had made it. Alternate translation: “the bronze altar that he had commanded someone to make” or “the bronze altar that he had caused to be made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat

This was because there were so many offerings. Alternate translation: “was not able to hold the large amount of burnt offerings, grain offerings, and fat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [And...consecrated](#)
- [the courtyard](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [the...altar](#)
- [the grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁷ And [Solomon consecrated](#) the middle of [the courtyard](#) which is before [the house of Yahweh](#). For he did there the burnt offerings and the fat of the peace offerings because the [bronze altar](#) which [Solomon](#) made was not able to contain the burnt offerings, and [the grain offering](#), and the fats.

UST

⁷ Solomon dedicated the middle part of the courtyard in front of the temple. Then he presented offerings to be completely burned there along with the fat of the animals to be sacrificed to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. The priests burned them there in the courtyard because in addition to those things there were offerings of flour, with the result that there was not enough space on the bronze altar to burn all those sacrifices.

2 Chronicles 7:8

all Israel with him

This generalization refers to those who were at the feast in Jerusalem, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt

Lebo Hamath was north of Israel, and the brook of Egypt was south of Israel. These are used together to emphasize that people from every part of Israel were at the festival. Alternate translation: “from Lebo Hamath in the north to the brook of Egypt in the south” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Merism](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [a...assembly](#)
- [Egypt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)

ULT

⁸ And [Solomon](#) did the feast at that time, seven days, and all [Israel](#) with him, a very great [assembly](#), from Lebo Hamath to the brook of [Egypt](#).

UST

⁸ Solomon and the other people celebrated the Festival of Shelters for seven days. There was a huge group of people who celebrated with him. Some of them came from as far away as Lebohamath in the far north and from the border of Egypt in the far south.

2 Chronicles 7:9

the eighth day

The word “eighth” is the ordinal form of “8.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

a solemn assembly

This was a special religious gathering.

they kept the dedication of the altar

Here “kept the dedication” is an idiom meaning “celebrated the dedication.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an assembly](#)
- [the dedication of](#)
- [the altar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [dedicate, dedication, established, devoted](#)

ULT

⁹ And they did on the eighth day [an assembly](#), for [the dedication of the altar](#) they did, seven days, and the feast, seven days.

UST

⁹ On the eighth day they gathered again to worship Yahweh. They had celebrated the dedication of the altar for seven days and the Festival of Shelters for seven days.

2 Chronicles 7:10

the twenty-third day of the seventh month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-third day is near the middle of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

with glad and joyful hearts

The words “glad” and “joyful” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of joy. Alternate translation: “with very glad hearts” or “and they were very joyful” (See: [Doublet](#))

because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown

Alternate translation: “because Yahweh had shown wonderful goodness” or “because Yahweh had been so good”

Israel, his people

“Israel, God’s people.” The phrase “his people” emphasizes God’s faithfulness to Israel. (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [his people](#)
- [joyful](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and for Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

10 And on the 23rd day of the seventh month, he sent away [the people](#) to their tents [joyful](#) and good of [heart](#) on account of the goodness which [Yahweh](#) did for David, [and for Solomon](#), and for Israel [his people](#).

UST

10 Then on the next day Solomon sent them to their homes. They were very joyful because of all the good things that Yahweh had done for David and Solomon and for all his Israelite people.

2 Chronicles 7:11

Solomon finished the house of Yahweh and his own house

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “the workers whom Solomon commanded finished the house of Yahweh and Solomon’s own house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Everything that came into Solomon’s heart to make

The heart is spoken of as if it were a container, and desires are spoken of as if they came into the heart. Alternate translation: “Everything that Solomon desired to make” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he successfully carried out

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “he successfully finished” or “he caused to be done successfully” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- Solomon
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the king
- the heart of
- in the house of
- he succeeded

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Solomon
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

¹¹ And Solomon finished the house of Yahweh and the house of the king. And all that came into the heart of Solomon to do in the house of Yahweh and in his house, he succeeded.

UST

¹¹ In this way, Solomon’s workers finished building the temple and Solomon’s palace. And Solomon finished doing everything else that he had planned to do.

2 Chronicles 7:12

by night

Alternate translation: "at night" or "one night"

a house of sacrifice

Alternate translation: "the house where people will offer sacrifices to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- your prayer
- for a house of
- sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- house, household
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹² And Yahweh appeared to Solomon in the night, and he said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this place for myself for a house of sacrifice."

UST

¹² Then Yahweh appeared to him one night in a dream and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this temple to be the place where my people will offer sacrifices to me."

2 Chronicles 7:13

Suppose that I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain

Here “heavens” refers to the sky, and is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 6:26](#). Alternate translation: “Suppose that I do not allow the rain to fall from the skies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

devour the land

The word “land” represents the plants and crops on the land. (See: [Metonymy](#))

if I send disease among my people

Here “send disease” represents causing diseases. Alternate translation: “if I cause my people to have diseases” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [I command](#)
- [the land](#)
- [among my people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹³ If I restrain [the heavens](#) and there is no rain, or if [I command](#) the locust to devour [the land](#), or if I send pestilence [among my people](#),

UST

¹³ When I prevent any rain from falling, or when I command locusts to eat all the crops, or when I send a plague among my people,

2 Chronicles 7:14

who are called by my name

Here being called by God's name is an idiom meaning belonging to God. Alternate translation: "who belong to me" (See: [Idiom](#))

seek my face

Here God's face represents his acceptance of them. Possible meanings are **seek my face** represents: (1) urgently asking him for forgiveness. Alternate translation: "beg me to forgive them" or (2) strongly wanting to please him. Alternate translation: "choose to please me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

turn from their wicked ways

Here "turn from" is a metaphor meaning to stop doing something, and "ways" represent behavior. Alternate translation: "stop their wicked behavior" or "stop doing wicked things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

heal their land

Here land that does not produce much is spoken of as though it were sick. Alternate translation: "make their land good again" or "make their land produce good crops" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my people](#)
- [my name](#)
- [is called](#)
- [and pray](#)
- [and seek](#)
- [my face](#)
- [and turn back](#)
- [evil](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [their land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹⁴ and [my people](#), whom [my name is called](#) over them, humble themselves, and [pray](#), and [seek my face](#), and [turn back](#) from their [evil](#) ways, then I myself will hear from [the heavens](#), and I will forgive their sin, and I will heal [their land](#).

UST

¹⁴ then if the people who belong to me, are sorry for their sins and stop doing them, and if they plead with me for me to forgive, then I will indeed listen from heaven. I will forgive them for having sinned, and I will cause them to prosper again.

2 Chronicles 7:15

my eyes will be open

The eyes being open is a metonym for seeing. Here it represents looking attentively. Alternate translation: “I will pay attention to you” or “I will watch you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my ears attentive to the prayers

The ears being attentive is a metonym for listening attentively. Alternate translation: “I will listen to the prayers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the prayers that are made in this place

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “to the prayers that you make in this place” or “to you as you pray to me in this place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the prayer of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Now my eyes will be open and my ears attentive [to the prayer of](#) this place.

UST

¹⁵ I will listen to them when they pray to me in this place.

2 Chronicles 7:16

that my name may be there forever

This could mean: (1) God's name represents himself. Alternate translation: "that I may be there forever" or (2) God's name represents Yahweh's reputation, and his name being there represents people worshiping him there. Alternate translation: "for people to worship me there forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

My eyes and my heart will be there every day

Here "My eyes" represents God's careful attention, and "my heart" represents his love. These being at his temple implies that he will protect his temple. Alternate translation: "I will watch and protect it forever" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁶ And now I have chosen [and I have consecrated](#) this [house](#) for [my name](#) to be there until forever. And my eyes and my heart will be there all the days.

UST

¹⁶ I have decided to be present in this temple, and I have set apart it for myself. I will protect it for all time.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I have consecrated](#)
- [house](#)
- [my name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [house, household](#)

2 Chronicles 7:17

As for you

Here “you” refers to King Solomon.

if you walk before me as David your father walked

Here walking is a metaphor for living. Walking before God represents living in obedience to him. Alternate translation: “If you obey me as David your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

David your father

Solomon was one of David’s sons.

keeping my statutes and my decrees

Alternate translation: “obeying my statutes and my decrees”

Translation Words - ULT

- [you walk](#)
- [walked](#)
- [David](#)
- [your father](#)
- [I have commanded you](#)
- [and my statutes](#)
- [and my judgments](#)
- [you keep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [statute](#)
- [statute](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And you, if [you walk](#) before me just as [David your father walked](#), and do according to all that [I have commanded you, and my statutes and my judgments you keep](#),

UST

¹⁷ And as for you, if you obey me as David, your father, did, and if you do all that I command you to do, and if you obey all my laws and decrees,

2 Chronicles 7:18

I will establish the throne of your kingdom

Here the throne represents ruling. Establishing the throne of Solomon's kingdom represents causing Solomon to have descendants who will rule over Israel. Alternate translation: "I will make descendants of yours rule over your kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

A descendant of yours will never fail to be ruler in Israel

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "One of your descendants will always be ruler in Israel" or "Descendants of yours will always rule in Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the throne of](#)
- [your kingdom](#)
- [I cut](#)
- [There will...be cut off](#)
- [your father](#)
- [ruling](#)
- [in Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dominion](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

ULT

¹⁸ then I will establish [the throne of your kingdom](#), just as I [cut](#) with David [your father](#), saying, 'There will not be [cut off](#) from you a man [ruling in Israel](#).'

UST

¹⁸ I will make sure that your descendants will always be kings, which is what I promised to David your father, when I told him, 'Persons from your descendants will always be the kings of Israel.'

2 Chronicles 7:19

But if you turn away

Here “turn away” from God is a metaphor meaning to stop worshipping him. Alternate translation: “But if you stop worshipping me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

you turn away

Possible meanings are that the word **you** refers: (1) to all the people of Israel, or (2) to Solomon and his descendants.

my statutes and my commandments

Here the words “commandments” and “statutes” mean basically the same thing and emphasize all that Yahweh has commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you all turn](#)
- [and my commandments](#)
- [gods](#)
- [and worship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)

ULT

¹⁹ But if [you all turn](#) yourselves, and forsake my statutes [and my commandments](#) which I placed before you all, and walk and serve other [gods and worship](#) them,

UST

¹⁹ What will I do to you Israelites when you stop worshipping me? What will I do when you disobey the decrees and commands I have given to you? And what will I do when you start worshipping other gods?

2 Chronicles 7:20

I will uproot them from out of my ground that I have given them

The word “them” refers to the people of Israel. God speaks of making his people leave his land as if they were plants that he would pull up by their roots out of the soil. Alternate translation: “I will make them leave the land I have given them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

This house

This refers to the temple.

that I have set apart for my name

This could mean: (1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. Alternate translation: “that I have set apart for myself” or (2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. Alternate translation: “that I have set apart for my reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will cast away from before me

God speaks of rejecting his temple as if he were to throw it far away from himself. Alternate translation: “I will reject it” or “I will ignore it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make it a proverb and a joke among all the peoples

Alternate translation: “I will cause all the peoples to make proverbs and jokes about it” or “because of what I do to it, all the nations will mock and ridicule it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [I consecrated](#)
- [my face](#)
- [the peoples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²⁰ then I will remove them from upon my ground which I gave to them. And this [house](#) which [I consecrated](#) for my name, I will cast out from before [my face](#), and I will make it a proverb and a taunt among all [the peoples](#).

UST

²⁰ This is what I will do: I will cause you to be driven away from this land that I have given to you, and I will reject the temple that I have set apart for myself. I will make people from all the other people groups laugh about what happened to house where Yahweh was worshiped.

2 Chronicles 7:21

will be shocked

Alternate translation: "will be amazed"

will hiss

This is how they would show that they are shocked by what happened to the temple (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...house](#)
- [will be devastated](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded](#)
- [household](#)

ULT

²¹ And this [house](#) which was exalted to all who pass by it [will be devastated](#), and they will say, 'Why did [Yahweh](#) do thus to this land and to this house?'

UST

²¹ Although this temple is now so magnificent, when that happens, all the people who pass by will be appalled, and they will say, 'Why has Yahweh done terrible things like this to this country and to this temple?'

2 Chronicles 7:22

they forsook Yahweh

Alternate translation: "they were unfaithful to Yahweh" or "they did not obey Yahweh"

who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt

This phrase tells why they should have worshiped God. (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

they laid hold of other gods

Here "laid hold of" represents choosing to be loyal to them. Alternate translation: "they chose to be loyal to other gods" (See: [Metaphor](#))

bowed down to them and worshiped them

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase "bowed down to them" describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they forsook
- Yahweh
- the God of
- gods
- their fathers
- brought them out
- Egypt
- and worshipped
- misery

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- God
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²² And they will say, 'On account of which [they forsook Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#) who [brought them out](#) from the land of [Egypt](#), and they laid hold of other [gods and worshipped](#) them and served them. On account of thus, he brought on them all this [misery](#).'

UST

²² And others will reply, 'It happened because they rejected Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged, the one who brought their ancestors out of Egypt, and they have chosen to worship other gods and try to please them. And that is why Yahweh has caused them to experience all these disasters.'

2 Chronicles 8

2 Chronicles 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's victories

Solomon achieved many victory when he was king. This chapter records many of these victories. Israel is at its height of power when Solomon was king.

2 Chronicles 8:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the end of twenty years

“after 20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Solomon had built the house of Yahweh and his own house

The author writes of Solomon commanding the people to build the temple and palace and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built them. Alternate translation: “Solomon caused the house of Yahweh and his own house to be built” or “Solomon directed the building of the temple and his house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹ And it happened at the end of 20 years, in which [Solomon](#) built [the house of Yahweh](#) and [his house](#),

UST

¹ Solomon’s workers took twenty years to build the temple and his palace.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [his house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

2 Chronicles 8:2

Hiram

Hiram was the king of Tyre. See how you translated his name in [2 Chronicles 2:11](#). Alternate translation: “Hiram, the king of Tyre” or “King Hiram” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Solomon rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him

The author speaks of Solomon commanding the people to rebuild the towns as if he himself had rebuilt them. Alternate translation: “Solomon caused the towns that Hiram had given to him to be rebuilt” or “Solomon commanded and the people rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

² and the cities which Hiram gave [to Solomon](#), [Solomon](#) built them. And he caused to dwell there [the sons of Israel](#).

UST

² Then his workers rebuilt the cities that King Hiram had given back to him, and Solomon sent Israelites to live in those cities.

2 Chronicles 8:3

Solomon attacked Hamathzobah

Solomon represents his whole fighting army. Alternate translation: "Solomon's army attacked the town of Hamathzobah" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)

ULT

³ And [Solomon](#) went to Hamathzobah and he prevailed over it.

UST

³ Solomon's army then went to the town of Hamathzobah and captured it.

2 Chronicles 8:4

He built Tadmor in the wilderness

Tadmor was a city north of Israel, in modern-day Syria. The author writes of Solomon commanding the people to build Tadmor as if Solomon himself built it. Alternate translation: “Solomon caused the town of Tadmor in the wilderness to be rebuilt” or “Solomon commanded, and the people built the town of Tadmor in the wilderness” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Tadmor

Tadmor was a city north of Israel, in modern-day Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

store cities

“storage cities” or “supply cities.” These are cities where the government stored food or supplies.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [desert, wilderness](#)

ULT

⁴ And he built Tadmor [in the wilderness](#) and all the cities of stores which he built in Hamath.

UST

⁴ They also rebuilt walls around the city of Tadmor in the wilderness, and in the region of Hamath, for all the towns where they kept supplies.

2 Chronicles 8:5

Beth Horon the Upper and Beth Horon the Lower

These were two cities in Judah. The upper city was on top of a hill and the lower city was in a valley. Alternate translation: “Higher Beth Horon and Lower Beth Horon” or “Beth Horon of the Hill and Beth Horon of the Valley” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [doors](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

⁵ And he built Beth Horon the Upper and Beth Horon the Lower, fortified cities with walls, [doors](#), and a bar,

UST

⁵ They rebuilt the cities of Upper Beth Horon and Lower Beth Horon, and built walls around them with gates and bars for the gates.

2 Chronicles 8:6

Baalath

This was a city in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all the lands under his rule

Alternate translation: "all the lands that he ruled"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and in Lebanon](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

⁶ and Baalath and all the cities of stores which were [to Solomon](#), and all the cities of the chariots and the cities of the horsemen, and all the desire of [Solomon](#) which he desired to build [in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon](#), and in all [the land](#) of his kingdom.

UST

⁶ They also rebuilt the city of Baalath and all the cities where supplies were kept, and the cities where Solomon's chariots and horses were kept. Solomon's workers built whatever he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area that he ruled.

2 Chronicles 8:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the Hittites
- and the Amorites
- and the Perizzites
- and the Hivites
- and the Jebusites
- from Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Amorite
- Hittite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- people, people group

ULT

⁷ All the people who were left from the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who were not from Israel,

UST

⁷ Solomon forced people from many other groups who were not Israelites to work for him as if they were slaves. They were people from the Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus people groups.

2 Chronicles 8:8

their descendants who were left after them in the land

Alternate translation: “after those people died, their descendants who remained in the land”

forced laborers

Alternate translation: “slaves”

which they are to this day

This phrase adds information about the descendants of those that Solomon had made into forced laborers. Alternate translation: “and their descendants are still forced laborers even now” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

to this day

This refers to the time when the book of 2 Chronicles was written. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [their sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [had...brought to an end](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

⁸ from [their sons](#) who were left after them in the land, whom [the sons of Israel](#) had not [brought to an end](#)—and [Solomon](#) brought them up for forced laborers, until this day.

UST

⁸ They were descendants of groups whom the Israelites had not completely destroyed. Solomon forced them to become his laborers, and they are still that at this present time.

2 Chronicles 8:9

Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel

Alternate translation: "Solomon did not make any of the people of Israel become slaves"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Solomon
- to be laborers
- and chiefs of
- and chiefs of
- and his horsemen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Solomon
- horseman
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁹ But, from the sons of Israel which Solomon did not make to be laborers for his work, rather, they were men of battle, and chiefs of his officers, and chiefs of his chariots and his horsemen.

UST

⁹ But Solomon did not force Israelites to work for him. Israelites became his soldiers and commanders of his chariots and his chariot drivers.

2 Chronicles 8:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- were to King
- Solomon
- over the people

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

¹⁰ and these, the chiefs of supervisors who were to King Solomon, 250 ruling over the people.

UST

¹⁰ They were also King Solomon's chief officials. There were 250 of them, and they supervised the workers.

2 Chronicles 8:11

the daughter of Pharaoh

Alternate translation: "his wife, the daughter of Pharaoh"

to the house that he had built for her

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build a house for his wife as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: "the house that he had his workers build for her" or "to the house he had commanded his workers to build for her" (See: [Metonymy](#))

David king of Israel

David was Solomon's father and had been king before Solomon.

because wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy

It can be stated that the ark had been brought into King David's house. Alternate translation: "because the ark of Yahweh was brought into that house, and wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

11 And the daughter of Pharaoh Solomon brought up from the city of David to the house that he built for her, for he said, "My wife must not dwell in the house of David, the king of Israel, because sacred are the places where the Box of Yahweh has come into them."

UST

11 Solomon brought his wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt, to the place that his workers had built for her in the place outside Jerusalem called the city of David. He said, "I do not want my wife to live in the palace that my father King David's workers built, because the sacred chest was in that palace for a while, and any place where the sacred chest has been is holy."

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- David
- David
- to the house
- in the house of
- the king of
- Israel
- sacred
- the Box of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Solomon
- house, household
- king, kingship

2 Chronicles 8:12

his altar that he had built

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build the altar as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: "on Yahweh's altar that Solomon had his workers build" or "the Yahweh's altar that he had commanded his workers to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his altar

Alternate translation: "Yahweh's altar" or "the altar of Yahweh"

the portico

"the temple porch" or "the entrance to the temple." This was a covered porch supported by columns, attached to the front of the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the altar of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Solomon](#) brought up [burnt offerings to Yahweh](#) on [the altar of Yahweh](#) that he had built before the porch.

UST

¹² On the altar that Solomon's workers had built in front of the entrance to the temple, Solomon brought many offerings that were to be completely burned.

2 Chronicles 8:13

the daily schedule required

Alternate translation: "as was required each day"

following the directions

Here "following the directions" represents obeying them. Alternate translation: "obeying the directions" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the directions found in the commandment of Moses

Alternate translation: "what Moses had commanded them"

the set festivals three times every year

Alternate translation: "the three festivals that they were to celebrate every year"

the Festival of Shelters

"the Festival of Tents." This is a festival to celebrate God's provision for his people. When the people of Israel wandered in the desert, they lived in temporary shelters. Each year when they harvested their crops, they stayed in temporary shelters in their gardens. In both situations, God provided for them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [for the Sabbaths](#)
- [at the Feast of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sabbath](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

¹³ And by the matter day by day to bring up, according to the commandment of [Moses](#), for the [Sabbaths](#), and for the new moons, and for the appointed times three times in the year: [at the Feast of](#) Unleavened Bread, and at the Feast of Weeks, and at the Feast of Booths.

UST

¹³ He did that obeying what sacrifices Moses had declared should be made every day, on the Sabbath days, to celebrate each day on which there was a new moon, and on the three other festivals that were celebrated each year: the Festival of Bread with No Yeast, the Festival of Harvest, and the Festival of Shelters.

2 Chronicles 8:14

In keeping with the decrees of his father David

Alternate translation: "According to the decrees of his father David" or "As his father David had decreed"

He also appointed the gatekeepers by their divisions to every gate

Alternate translation: "He also appointed groups of gatekeepers to each gate"

gatekeepers

These were Levites who guarded the gates and only let inside those who had permission to go inside.

Translation Words - ULT

- according to the judgment of
- David
- David
- God
- his father
- the priests
- the priests
- and the Levites
- to praise
- and the gatekeepers
- and gate
- the commandment of

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- David
- David
- Levi, Levite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

ULT

¹⁴ And he appointed according to the judgment of David his father the divisions of the priests over their service, and the Levites over their charge to praise and to minister in front of the priests, for the matter of the day in its day, and the gatekeepers in their divisions for gate and gate, for thus was the commandment of David, the man of God.

UST

¹⁴ Obeying what his father David had commanded, Solomon appointed the groups of priests for their work, and he appointed the descendants of Levi to lead the people while they sang to praise Yahweh, and while they assisted the priests in their daily work. He also appointed groups of them to guard all the gates, because that was also what David, God's servant, had commanded.

2 Chronicles 8:15

These people did not deviate from the commands

Here “deviate from the commands” represents to do something different from what was commanded. It can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “These people carefully obeyed the commands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the commandment of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And they did not turn from [the commandment of the king](#) regarding [the priests and the Levites](#) concerning any matter, or concerning the treasuries.

UST

¹⁵ The priests and other descendants of Levi obeyed completely everything that the king commanded, including the order to take care of the storerooms.

2 Chronicles 8:16

All the work ordered by Solomon was completed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "They completed all the work that Solomon had ordered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the day the foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "from the day they laid the foundation of the house of Yahweh" or "from the day they built the foundation of the house of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

until it was finished

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "until they finished building the temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The house of Yahweh was completed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The house of Yahweh was complete" or "They completed building the house of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- its completion

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- consume, devour
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

¹⁶ And all the work of Solomon was completed, from the day of the foundation of the house of Yahweh and until its completion. Complete was the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁶ They did all the work of building the temple that Solomon told them to do, until it was all completed. In the way they finished building the temple.

2 Chronicles 8:17

Ezion Geber and then to Elath on the coast

These are towns along the Sea of Reeds. They had ports where people who had ships could stop. Alternate translation: “the towns of Ezion Geber and Elath, on the coast of the Sea of Reeds” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- went

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- walk, walked

ULT

¹⁷ Then [Solomon went](#) to Ezion Geber and to Elath on the edge of the sea, in the land of Edom.

UST

¹⁷ Then some of Solomon's men went to the cities of Ezion Geber and Elath on the coast of the Sea of Reeds, next to a region that belonged to the Edom people group.

2 Chronicles 8:18

Ophir

This is the name of a place. Its location is not known. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

450 talents of gold

“four hundred and fifty talents of gold.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about sixteen thousand kilograms of gold” or “about fifteen metric tons of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the hand of](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [and servants](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [who knew](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

18 And Hiram sent to him [by the hand of his servants](#) ships, [and servants who knew](#) the sea. And they came with [the servants of Solomon](#) to Ophir. And they took from there 450 talents of [gold](#), and they brought to [King Solomon](#).

UST

18 King Hiram sent him from the city of Tyre some ships that were commanded by his officers. They were men who were experienced sailors. These men went in the ships with Solomon's men to the region of Ophir and brought back about fifteen metric tons of gold, which they delivered to King Solomon.

2 Chronicles 9

2 Chronicles 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon ends.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's fame

Solomon was famous outside of Israel because of his wisdom and tremendous wealth. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

2 Chronicles 9:1

She came with a very long caravan

Alternate translation: “a very large group of servants” or “a very long line of servants”

all that was in her heart

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “everything she wanted to know” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [her heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

¹ And the queen of Sheba heard the report of [Solomon](#), and she came to test [Solomon](#) with difficult questions [in Jerusalem](#) with very great wealth and camels carrying spices, [and gold](#) in abundance, and precious stone. And she came to [Solomon](#) and spoke with him about all that was in [her heart](#).

UST

¹ The queen who ruled the Sheba area in Arabia heard that Solomon had become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer. She came with a large group of servants, and she brought camels that were loaded with spices, and valuable gems. When she arrived, she shared her thoughts with him.

2 Chronicles 9:2

there was no question that he did not answer

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “he answered every question” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [from Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

² And [Solomon](#) declared to her all her matters; and a matter was not concealed [from Solomon](#) which he did not declare to her.

UST

² Solomon answered all her questions. He explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult.

2 Chronicles 9:3

When the queen of Sheba saw Solomon's wisdom and the palace that he had built

Here "saw Solomon's wisdom" represents realizing that Solomon was very wise. Alternate translation: "When the queen of Sheba realized how wise Solomon was, and when she saw the palace that he had built" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the palace that he had built

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build his palace as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: "the palace that Solomon had his workers build" or "the palace that he had commanded his workers to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ And the queen of Sheba saw the wisdom of [Solomon and the house](#) that he built,

UST

³ The queen realized that Solomon was very wise. She saw his palace,

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [and the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [household](#)

2 Chronicles 9:4

the seating of his servants

This could mean: (1) where his servants lived or (2) how his servants sat around the table.

his cupbearers

“his wine servers.” These were servants who tasted the king’s wine to make sure that there was no poison in it. If it was safe to drink the wine, they would give it to the king.

there was no more breath in her

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “she was completely amazed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servants](#)
- [his ministers](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [breath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴ and the food of his table, and the seating of [his servants](#), and the standing of [his ministers](#) and their attire, and his cupbearers and their attire, and his burnt offering that he brought up to ^[1] [the house of Yahweh](#), and there was not still [breath](#) in her.

UST

⁴ she saw the food that was served on his table every day, she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms, the servants who served the food and wine, and the sacrifices that he took to the temple to be offered. She was extremely amazed.

2 Chronicles 9:5

I heard in my own land

Alternate translation: "I heard while I was in my own land"

your words and your wisdom

Here the word "wisdom" can describe the word "words." Alternate translation: "your wise words" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [True](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁵ And she said to [the king](#), "[True](#) was the word that I heard in my land concerning your words and concerning your wisdom.

UST

⁵ She said to the king, "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are is true!

2 Chronicles 9:6

now my eyes have seen it

The phrase “my eyes” emphasizes that she herself saw it. Alternate translation: “now I have seen it for myself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They did not tell me about even half of your wisdom and wealth” or “You are much more wise and wealthy than what they told me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I did...believe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)

ULT

⁶ But [I did](#) not [believe](#) their words until when I came, and my eyes saw. And behold, it was not told to me half of the greatness of your wisdom you have added on to the report that I heard.

UST

⁶ But I did not believe it was true until I came here and saw it myself. You are extremely wise and rich, even more than what people told me.

2 Chronicles 9:7

How blessed are your people

This is an exclamation that shows her amazement. Alternate translation: “Your people are greatly blessed” (See: [Exclamations](#))

how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you

This is an exclamation that shows her amazement. Alternate translation: “your servants who constantly stand before you are greatly blessed” (See: [Exclamations](#))

they hear your wisdom

Hear “wisdom” represents the wise things that he says. Alternate translation: “they hear the wise things that you say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servants of yours](#)
- [who are standing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁷ How blessed are your men! And how blessed are these [servants of yours](#), [who are standing](#) before you continually and are hearing your wisdom. ^[2]

UST

⁷ The men who work for you are very fortunate! Your servants who are constantly standing in front of you and listening to the wise things that you say are also fortunate!

2 Chronicles 9:8

who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on his throne

These phrases tell why people should praise Yahweh. Alternate translation: “because he has taken pleasure in you and placed you on his throne” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

who has taken pleasure in you

Alternate translation: “who is pleased with you”

who placed you on his throne, to be king for Yahweh your God

The idea of being on Yahweh's throne represents having the authority to rule as Yahweh does. Being king “for Yahweh” means to represent Yahweh as king. Alternate translation: “who gave you authority to rule as he does, to represent Yahweh your God as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in order to establish them forever

This could mean: (1) “establish” represents helping them in general. Alternate translation: “in order to help them forever” or (2) “establish” represents making them strong as a nation. Alternate translation: “in order to make them a nation forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for you to do justice and righteousness

The abstract nouns “justice” and “righteousness” can be expressed with the words “fairly” and “righteously.” Alternate translation: “for you to rule fairly and righteously” or “for you to do what is just and right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- for Yahweh
- your God
- your...God
- God...your
- Israel
- justice
- be blessed
- delighted
- his throne
- to be king
- to be king (2)

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing

ULT

⁸ Let Yahweh your God be blessed, who delighted in you to place you on his throne, to be king for Yahweh your God, because your God loved Israel to establish them forever. And he has placed you over them to be king, to do justice and righteousness!”

UST

⁸ I praise Yahweh your God, who has shown that he is pleased with you by appointing you to be the king of Israel for him. God has always loved the Israelite people, and he desires to assist them forever, so he has appointed you to be their king, in order that you will rule them fairly and righteously.”

- God
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- delight
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- throne, enthroned

2 Chronicles 9:9

120 talents

“one hundred and twenty talents.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about four thousand kilograms of gold” or “about four metric tons of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

No greater amount of spices ... was ever given to him again

The verb “was ever given” can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “No one ever gave more spices than the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the king](#)
- [to King](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁹ And she gave [to the king](#) 120 talents of [gold](#) and spices in great abundance and precious stone. And there was not like that spice which the queen of Sheba gave [to King Solomon](#).

UST

⁹ Then the queen gave to Solomon about four metric tons of gold and a large amount of spices and gemstones. Never had King Solomon received more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

2 Chronicles 9:10

Hiram

Hiram was the king of Tyre. See how you translated his name in [2 Chronicles 2:11](#). Alternate translation: “Hiram, the king of Tyre” or “King Hiram” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ophir

This is the name of a place. Its location is not known. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 8:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

algum wood

Algum is a kind of tree that grows in Lebanon. King Hiram sent this kind of wood to Solomon. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 2:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servants of](#)
- [and the servants of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

10 And also [the servants of](#) Hiram [and the servants of Solomon](#), who brought [gold](#) from Ophir, brought algum wood and precious stone.

UST

10-12 King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her more than she had given to him. Then she and those who came with her returned to her own land. The men of Hiram worked with the men of Solomon to bring gold from Ophir. They also brought a large amount of algum wood. The wood was used to make steps for the house of Yahweh, and they also used the wood to make harps and lyres for those who played music. No one in all the land of Judah had ever seen anything like the quality of the algum wood that was used to make the steps and the instruments.

2 Chronicles 9:11

the king made steps ... well as harps and lyres

The author speaks of the king having his workers make these things as if he himself had made them. Alternate translation: “the king had his workers make the steps ... as well as harps and lyres” or “the king’s workers made steps ... well as harps and lyres” (See: [Metonymy](#))

No wood like this had been seen before in the land of Judah

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “No one had seen wood like this before in the land of Judah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

11 And [the king](#) made the algum wood into staircases [for the house of Yahweh](#) and for the house of [the king](#), and lyres and harps for the singers. And there was not seen like them before in the land of [Judah](#).

UST

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

2 Chronicles 9:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And King
- the king
- Solomon
- and her servants

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹² And King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire which she asked besides that which she brought to the king. And she turned and went to her land, she and her servants.

UST

¹⁰⁻¹² King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her more than she had given to him. Then she and those who came with her returned to her own land. The men of Hiram worked with the men of Solomon to bring gold from Ophir. They also brought a large amount of algum wood. The wood was used to make steps for the house of Yahweh, and they also used the wood to make harps and lyres for those who played music. No one in all the land of Judah had ever seen anything like the quality of the algum wood that was used to make the steps and the instruments.

2 Chronicles 9:13

in one year

This could mean: (1) this refers to each year or (2) this refers to a particular year.

666 talents of gold

A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about twenty-two thousand kilograms of gold” or “about twenty-two metric tons of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gold](#)
- [gold](#)
- [to Solomon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

¹³ And the weight of [the gold](#) that came [to Solomon](#) in one year was 666 talents of [gold](#),

UST

¹³ Each year there was brought to Solomon about twenty-two metric tons of gold. That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders.

2 Chronicles 9:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- and the governors of
- the land
- gold
- and silver
- to Solomon

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- earth, land
- gold, golden
- govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha
- king, kingship
- silver

ULT

¹⁴ besides from the traveling men and the traders who brought in; and all the kings of Arabia and the governors of the land were bringing gold and silver to Solomon.

UST

¹⁴ Also, the kings of Arabia and the governors of the districts in Israel brought gold and silver to Solomon.

2 Chronicles 9:15

King Solomon made

The author writes about Solomon having his workers make the shields as if he himself had made them. Alternate translation: “King Solomon had his workers make” or “King Solomon’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

two hundred large shields

“200 large shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

beaten gold

Alternate translation: “gold that people had beaten into thin sheets”

Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one

Here the phrase “went into” represents being made with. This could mean: (1) the shields were covered with sheets of gold. Alternate translation: “They covered each shield with six hundred shekels of gold” or (2) the shields were made of gold. Alternate translation: “They made each shield out of six hundred shekels of gold”

Six hundred shekels of gold

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “Six and one half kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Six hundred shekels

The word “shekels” does not appear here in the Hebrew text. Some modern versions assume instead the unit called bekah, which was equivalent to only a half shekel. Any version making this assumption would signal a metric equivalent of about three kilograms.

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)
- [gold](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#) (2)
- [king](#), [kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [King Solomon](#) made 200 large shields of beaten [gold](#); 600 of beaten [gold](#) he brought up for one large shield.

UST

¹⁵ King Solomon’s workers took this gold and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets of gold; they put about six and one-half kilograms of gold on each shield.

2 Chronicles 9:16

He also made

The author writes about Solomon having his workers make the shields as if he himself had made them. Alternate translation: “King Solomon had his workers also make” or “His workers also made”(See: [Metonymy](#))

three hundred shields

“300 shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

Three minas of gold went into each shield

Here the phrase “went into” represents being made with. This could mean: (1) the shields were covered with sheets of gold. Alternate translation: “They covered each shield with three minas of gold” or (2) the shields were made of gold. Alternate translation: “They made each shield out of three minas of gold”

Three minas of gold

A mina is about 600 grams. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “One and three-quarters kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

the king put them

The author writes about Solomon having his workers put the shields in the palace as if he himself had put them there. Alternate translation: “King Solomon had his workers put them” or “King Solomon’s workers put them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the House of the Forest of Lebanon

Solomon’s palace was built of trees from Lebanon. This could mean: (1) this was the name of a large room in the palace. Alternate translation: “the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon” or (2) this was the name of his whole palace. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gold
- gold
- shield
- the king
- in the House of
- Lebanon

Translation Words - UST

- temple, house, house of God
- Lebanon
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

¹⁶ And 300 shields of beaten gold; 300 gold he brought up for one shield. And the king placed them in the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

UST

¹⁶ His workers made three hundred smaller shields. They covered each of them with one and three-quarters kilograms of gold. Then the king put those shields in the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

- king, kingship
- shield

2 Chronicles 9:17

the king made a great throne

The author speaks of commanding his workers to build the throne as if he himself had built it. Alternate translation: “the king had his workers make a great throne” or “the king’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a great throne of ivory

Alternate translation: “a great throne decorated with ivory”

ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals, such as the elephant, walrus, or hippopotamus. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [a...throne of](#)
- [pure](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [the king](#) made a great [throne of ivory](#) and overlaid it with [pure gold](#).

UST

¹⁷ His workers also made for him a large throne. Part of it was covered with ivory and part of it was covered with very fine gold.

2 Chronicles 9:18

two lions

These were statues. Alternate translation: "two statues of lions" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- with gold
- And hands
- standing

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden
- hand

ULT

18 And six steps to the throne, and a footstool [with gold](#) to the throne was fastened. [And hands](#) from this and from this on the place of the seat and two lions [standing](#) beside the hands.

UST

18 There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a gold footstool that was attached to the throne. At each side of the throne there was an armrest, and alongside each armrest there was a statue of a lion.

2 Chronicles 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- were standing
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- kingdom

ULT

¹⁹ And 12 lions were standing there on six steps, from this and from this; it had not been done thus for any kingdom.

UST

¹⁹ So there were twelve statues of lions. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

2 Chronicles 9:20

the House of the Forest of Lebanon

Solomon's palace was built of trees from Lebanon. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:16](#). This could mean: (1) this was the name of a large room in the palace. Alternate translation: "the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon" or (2) this was the name of his whole palace. Alternate translation: "the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days

Silver was so common in Solomon's days that if a king wanted to show his wealth, he would not do it by making things out of silver. Instead he would use gold, which was less common and more valuable. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people did not value silver so much" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in Solomon's days

Here "Solomon's days" refers to the time when Solomon ruled. Alternate translation: "when Solomon ruled" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- Solomon
- Solomon
- were gold
- were...gold
- the House of
- Lebanon
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- Lebanon
- Solomon
- Solomon
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house, household
- king, kingship
- silver

ULT

²⁰ And all the vessels of drink of [King Solomon](#) were gold, and all the vessels of [the House of](#) the Forest of [Lebanon](#) were refined gold. Nothing of silver; it was not thought in the days of [Solomon](#) for anything.

UST

²⁰ All of Solomon's cups were made of gold, and all the various dishes in the House of the Forest of Lebanon were made of gold. They did not make things from silver, because during the years that Solomon ruled, silver was not considered to be valuable.

2 Chronicles 9:21

a fleet of oceangoing ships

Alternate translation: "a group of ships that travel on the ocean"

along with the fleet of Hiram

Alternate translation: "along with Hiram's fleet of ships"

apes and baboons

It is not certain whether the word translated as "apes" here refers to apes, baboons, or monkeys. It is not certain whether the word translated as "baboons" here refers to baboons or peacocks. This can be translated more generally as "animals from far away" or "animals from Africa." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- belonging to the king
- went
- to Tarshish
- of Tarshish
- the servants of
- gold
- and silver

Translation Words - UST

- Tarshish
- Tarshish
- gold, golden
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- silver
- walk, walked

ULT

²¹ For the ships belonging to the king went to Tarshish with the servants of Hiram. Once every three years the ships of Tarshish would come carrying gold and silver, ivories, and apes and baboons.

UST

²¹ The king had a fleet of ships capable of sailing far out on the ocean. It sailed along with Hiram's merchant fleet. Every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, ivory, apes, and baboons.

2 Chronicles 9:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- the kings of
- Solomon
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- Solomon
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

²² And King Solomon became greater than all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom.

UST

²² King Solomon became richer and wiser than any other king on the earth.

2 Chronicles 9:23

All the kings of the earth

The word “all” here is a generalization. Alternate translation: “Kings from around the world” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sought the presence of Solomon

The presence of a person is a metonym for being able to speak and listen to the person. Alternate translation: “wanted to visit Solomon” or “came to visit Solomon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks, and here it is spoken of as if it were a container. Here, **wisdom** is a metonym for the wise things a person thinks or says. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wisdom**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “to hear how wise God had enabled him to be” or “to hear him speak the wise words that God had enabled him to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

which God had put in his heart

God putting wisdom in Solomon’s heart represents God making Solomon wise. Alternate translation: “which God had given him” or “because God had made him wise” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²³ And all [the kings of the earth](#) were [seeking the face of Solomon](#) to hear his wisdom which [God](#) placed [in his heart](#).

UST

²³ Kings from all over the world wanted to come and listen to the wise things that Solomon said, things that God had put into his mind.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [were seeking](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [God](#)
- [in his heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

2 Chronicles 9:24

year after year

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “every year” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his gift](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [and horses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

²⁴ And they were bringing each [his gift](#), items of [silver](#) and items of [gold](#), and garments, armor, and spices, [and horses](#) and mules, a matter of year by year.

UST

²⁴ All the people who came to him brought presents: things made from silver or gold; they also brought robes, weapons, spices, horses, and mules. The merchants continued to do this every year.

2 Chronicles 9:25

four thousand stalls ... twelve thousand horsemen

"4,000 stalls...12,000 horsemen" (See: [Numbers](#))

stalls

This is a small enclosure where horses are kept.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Solomon](#)
- [horses](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁵ And there were [to Solomon](#) 4,000 stalls for [horses](#) and chariots, and 12,000 horsemen; and he placed them in chariot cities and with [the king in Jerusalem](#).

UST

²⁵ Solomon had four thousand stalls for his horses and chariots, and twelve thousand men who rode horses. Solomon put some of them in Jerusalem and some of them in other cities where he kept his chariots.

2 Chronicles 9:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he was ruling
- the kings
- the land of
- the Philistines
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- dominion
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Philistines
- earth, land
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁶ And it happened he was ruling over all the kings from the River and until the land of the Philistines, and until the border of Egypt.

UST

²⁶ Solomon ruled over all the kings in the area from the Euphrates River in the northeast, to the region of Philistia in the west, and to the border of Egypt in the south.

2 Chronicles 9:27

as much as the stones on the ground

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that there was such a great amount of silver. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [silver](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

²⁷ And [the king](#) made [silver in Jerusalem](#) as stones, and the cedars he made as sycamore trees that were in the lowlands, in abundance.

UST

²⁷ During the years that Solomon was king, he caused silver to become as common in Jerusalem as stone; and he caused cedar trees in the foothills of Judah to become as plentiful as sycamore fig trees.

2 Chronicles 9:28

They brought horses for Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands

The word “they” may refer to Solomon’s merchants. However this sentence is not about what the merchants did, but about where Solomon’s horses came from. Alternate translation: “Horses were brought to Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands” or “Solomon’s horses were from Egypt and all the lands”

from all the lands

The word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “from many other places” or “from many other countries” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they were bringing out](#)
- [horses](#)
- [from Egypt](#)
- [to Solomon](#)
- [the lands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

ULT

²⁸ [And they were bringing out horses from Egypt to Solomon](#) and from all [the lands](#).

UST

²⁸ Solomon’s agents brought horses to the land of Judah from Egypt and from many other lands.

2 Chronicles 9:29

first and last

The phrase “first and last” represents the whole time of Solomon's reign. Alternate translation: “from the beginning to the end of his reign” (See: [Merism](#))

are they not written...(which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat)?

The author uses the question to remind the readers that other people had written about Solomon. It can be expressed in active form Alternate translation: “they are written...(which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat.)” or “people have written about them...(which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat).” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The History of Nathan the Prophet ... The Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite ... The Visions of Iddo the Seer

These are the names of some writings that existed when 2 Chronicles was written, but they do not exist now.

Ahijah the Shilonite

This is a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.

Shilonite

This is the name of a people group from the town of Shiloh. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Solomon](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [the Prophet](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Solomon](#)

ULT

²⁹ And the remainder of the matters of [Solomon](#), the first things and the last things, are they not written in the words of [Nathan the Prophet](#), and in the prophecy of [Ahijah](#) the Shilonite, and in the visions of Iddo the Seer concerning [Jeroboam the son of](#) Nebat?

UST

²⁹ Lists of all the other things that Solomon did are written in the scrolls written by the prophet Nathan, and by the prophet Ahijah from the city of Shiloh, and in the scroll in which was written the visions of the prophet Iddo (a scroll in which Iddo's visions about Jeroboam son of Nebat were also written).

2 Chronicles 9:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- And...reigned
- in Jerusalem
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁰ And Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel 40 years.

UST

³⁰ Solomon ruled in Jerusalem over all of Israel for forty years.

2 Chronicles 9:31

He slept with his ancestors

This was a polite way to tell about him dying. Alternate translation: "He died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Solomon
- his fathers
- his father
- David
- Rehoboam
- his son
- And...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Rehoboam
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

ULT

³¹ And Solomon lied down with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David his father. And Rehoboam, his son, reigned in his place.

9:4 ^[1] to say, .

9:7 ^[2] , assuming that the text should read as in 1 Kings 10:8.

UST

³¹ Then Solomon died; they buried him in the part of Jerusalem called 'the city of David.' And his son Rehoboam became the next king.

2 Chronicles 10

2 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This begins a section on King Rehoboam. (2 Chronicles 10-12)

Special concepts in this chapter

Rehoboam's taxes

The people asked Solomon's son, Rehoboam, to reduce the heavy taxes and the forced labor Solomon had demanded but Rehoboam refused. He lacked the wisdom to follow the advice of the men who had been councilors of his father Solomon. So the ten northern tribes broke off and made Jeroboam their king. They were called "Israel" and Rehoboam's kingdom was called Judah. This will cause confusion between the northern kingdom of Israel and the whole nation of Israel. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people use the metaphor of a yoke to complain about the high taxes and forced labor Solomon demanded from the people. They said, "Your father made our yoke difficult." (See: [Metaphor](#))

2 Chronicles 10:1

all Israel was coming

Here "Israel" is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "the men of Israel were coming" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to make...king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹ And [Rehoboam](#) went to Shechem, for to Shechem all [Israel](#) had come [to make](#) him [king](#).

UST

¹ All the people of northern Israel went to the city Shechem in order to appoint Rehoboam to be their king. So Rehoboam also went there.

2 Chronicles 10:2

Jeroboam ... Nebat

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [2 Chronicles 9:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- in Egypt
- from Egypt
- King
- Solomon
- And...returned

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- Solomon
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

ULT

² And it happened when [Jeroboam the son of](#) Nebat heard, for he was [in Egypt](#) where he had fled from the face of [King Solomon](#). And [Jeroboam returned from Egypt](#).

UST

² Now Jeroboam son of Nebat had fled to Egypt to escape from King Solomon. While he was in Egypt he heard about the people wanting to appoint Rehoboam to be their king, and so he returned to Israel from Egypt.

2 Chronicles 10:3

they sent and called him

Alternate translation: "the men of Israel sent for Jeroboam"

Jeroboam and all Israel came

Alternate translation: "Jeroboam and all Israel came to Rehoboam"

all Israel came

Here "Israel" is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "the men of Israel came" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they called](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³ And they sent [and they called](#) to him, and [Jeroboam](#) and all [Israel](#) came. And they spoke to [Rehoboam](#), saying,

UST

³ So the leaders of the northern tribes summoned Jeroboam, and he went with them to talk to Rehoboam. They said to Rehoboam,

2 Chronicles 10:4

made our yoke difficult

A difficult yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. Alternate translation: “treated us cruelly” or “forced us to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us

These two phrases mean the same thing. The yoke metaphor emphasizes the fact that Solomon had treated them harshly. Alternate translation: “make the hard work that your father gave us easier, and do not treat us as harshly as he did” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Your father](#)
- [your father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

⁴ “[Your father](#) hardened our yoke. But now, lighten the hard service of [your father](#) and his heavy yoke which he gave to us, and we will serve you.”

UST

⁴ “Your father Solomon forced us to work very hard, but if you charge us fewer taxes than we were paying to him, and if you make us work not so much we will serve you faithfully.”

2 Chronicles 10:5

after three days

"after 3 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and return](#)
- [the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people, people group](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁵ And he said to them, "Yet three days [and return](#) to me." And [the people](#) went.

UST

⁵ He replied, "Come back three days from now, and I will give you my answer." So those leaders and Jeroboam left.

2 Chronicles 10:6

the old men who had stood before Solomon

To “stand before” is an idiom for serving the king in his presence.
Alternate translation: “the old men who counseled Solomon” or “the old men who attended to Solomon” (See: [Idiom](#))

to bring an answer to these people

Alternate translation: “to answer these people” or “to reply to these people”

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- Rehoboam
- to...people
- And...consulted
- do...advise
- with the elders
- standing
- Solomon
- his father
- alive
- to bring back

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- life, live, living, alive
- restore, restoration
- Rehoboam
- Solomon
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- elder, older, old
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- people, people group

ULT

⁶ And King Rehoboam consulted with the elders who had been standing before Solomon his father when he was alive, saying, “How do you all advise to bring back an answer to this people?”

UST

⁶ Then King Rehoboam consulted his older men who had advised his father Solomon while he was still alive. He asked them, “What shall I say to answer these men?”

2 Chronicles 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ And they spoke to him, saying, "If you are good to this people and are favorable to them, and speak to them **good** words, then they will be for you **servants** all the days."

UST

⁷ They replied, "If you will be kind to these people and do things that will please them, and if you say kind things to them when you answer them, they will always serve you."

2 Chronicles 10:8

Rehoboam ignored the advice

Alternate translation: "Rehoboam did not follow the advice"

who had grown up with him, who stood before him

Alternate translation: "who were his long-time friends, and who advised him"

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders
- had advised him
- and he consulted
- the young men
- had grown
- standing

Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- to minister, ministry
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- elder, older, old
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

⁸ But he abandoned the advice of the elders who had advised him, and he consulted the young men who had grown with him, standing before him.

UST

⁸ But he did not agree with what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors.

2 Chronicles 10:9

Lighten the yoke that your father put on us

To “lighten the yoke” is a metaphor that represents easing the burden. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 10:4](#). Alternate translation: “Do not treat us as cruelly as your father did” or “Do not force us to work as hard as your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do...advise](#)
- [that we may bring back](#)
- [to...people](#)
- [your father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁹ And he said to them, “What do you all [advise, that we may bring back](#) an answer to this [people](#) who spoke to me, saying, ‘Lighten from the yoke that [your father](#) gave us?’”

UST

⁹ He said to them, “What do you say that I should answer the men who are asking me to reduce the work and taxes that my father required from them?”

2 Chronicles 10:10

made their yoke heavy

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. This metaphor is continued in this verses. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 10:4](#). Alternate translation: “treated them cruelly” or “forced them to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist

This metaphor means that Rehoboam is more cruel and intimidating than his father. Alternate translation: “I rule much more harshly than my father ever did” or “I am much harsher than my father” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the young men](#)
- [had grown](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [Your father](#)
- [my father](#)
- [made...heavy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [the young men](#) who [had grown](#) with him spoke, saying, “Thus you shall say [to the people](#) who spoke to you, saying ‘[Your father made](#) our yoke [heavy](#), but you yourself lighten from on us.’ Thus you shall say to them, ‘My little finger is thicker than the loins of [my father](#).’

UST

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with him replied, “Those men have said that your father forced them to work very hard for him, so they want you to reduce the work and taxes that your father required from them. But this is what you should tell them: ‘My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist.’

2 Chronicles 10:11

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. This metaphor is continued in this verses. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 10:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will add to your yoke

"I will make your yoke heavier." A yoke is a metaphor for labor.

Alternate translation: "I will force you to work harder" (See:

[Metaphor](#))

I will punish you with scorpions

Possible meanings are that: (1) "scorpions" is a metaphor for any kind of painful punishment. Alternate translation: "I will punish you much more harshly" or (2) "scorpions" is a metaphor for whips with sharp metal barbs at the end. Alternate translation: "I will punish you with whips that have sharp pieces of metal at the ends" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my father](#)
- [My father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

11 So now, [my father](#) loaded on you all a heavy yoke, but I myself will add to your yoke. [My father](#) rebuked you all with whips, but I with scorpions."

UST

11 My father required you people to work hard and pay high taxes, but I will make the loads you carry even heavier. My father whipped you with leather whips, but I will whip you with scorpions."

2 Chronicles 10:12

on the third day

“after three days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- the people
- Rehoboam
- the king
- Return

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- Jeroboam
- Rehoboam
- king, kingship
- people, people group

ULT

¹² And Jeroboam came and all the people to Rehoboam on the third day, just as the king spoke saying, “Return to me on the third day.”

UST

¹² Three days later, Jeroboam and all the leaders came to King Rehoboam again, as he had instructed them to do.

2 Chronicles 10:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- King
- Rehoboam
- the elders

Translation Words - UST

- Rehoboam
- elder, older, old
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

¹³ And the king answered them harshly.
And King Rehoboam abandoned the
advice of the elders.

UST

¹³ The king ignored the advice of the
older men and spoke harshly to the
Israelite leaders.

2 Chronicles 10:14

made your yoke heavy, but I will add to it

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. Alternate translation: “treated you cruelly, but I will be more cruel” or “forced you to work very hard, but I will make you work harder” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will punish you with scorpions

Possible meanings are that: (1) “scorpions” is a metaphor for any kind of painful punishment. Alternate translation: “I will punish you much more harshly” or (2) “scorpions” is a metaphor for whips with sharp metal barbs at the end. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 10:11](#). Alternate translation: “I will punish you with whips that have sharp pieces of metal at the ends” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the young men](#)
- [I will make heavy](#)
- [My father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

14 And he spoke to them according to the advice of [the young men](#), saying, “[I will make heavy](#) your yoke, and I myself will add to it. [My father](#) rebuked you all with whips, but I with scorpions.”

UST

14 He told them what the younger men had advised. He said, “My father put heavy burdens of work and taxes on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. It was as though he beat you with whips, but I will beat you with scorpions!”

2 Chronicles 10:15

So the king did not listen to the people

Here “listen to the people” represents not care about what they said or about actually doing what they asked. Alternate translation: “So the king did not do what the people had asked him to do” or “So the king ignored the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was a turn in events brought about by God

This is an idiom and can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God caused things to happen like this” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

that Yahweh might carry out his word ... Nebat

Alternate translation: “that Yahweh might do according to the message that he told Ahijah the Shilonite to tell Jeroboam son of Nebat” or “that Yahweh might do what he had said he would do when he told Ahijah the Shilonite to give a message to Jeroboam son of Nebat”

that Yahweh might carry out his word

The idiom “carry out his word” means to do what he had said he would do. (See: [Idiom](#))

his word that Ahijah the Shilonite had spoken to Jeroboam son of Nebat

This refers to the message that God gave Ahijah to tell Jeroboam.

Ahijah the Shilonite ... Jeroboam son of Nebat

See how you translated these names in [2 Chronicles 9:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the people](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [the king](#) did not listen to [the people](#), because it was a turn of affairs from [God](#), in order that [Yahweh](#) would establish his word that he spoke [by the hand of Ahijah](#) the Shilonite to [Jeroboam the son of](#) Nebat.

UST

¹⁵ So the king did not pay any attention to the people's leaders. All this happened in order that what Yahweh wanted would occur, what he had told the prophet Ahijah about Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes out of the twelve.

- hand
- king, kingship
- people, people group

2 Chronicles 10:16

all Israel

Here “Israel” is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “the men of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

the king did not listen to them

Here “listen to the people” represents not caring about what they said or about actually doing what they asked. Alternate translation: “the king did not do what they had asked him to do” or “the king ignored them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

The people use this question and statement to imply that since they do not belong to David's family, they are not obligated to support David's grandson, King Rehoboam. Alternate translation: “We have no share in David. We will not have anything to do with the descendants of the son of Jesse” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

What share do we have in David?

Having a share in someone represents being his descendants and receiving the good things that descendants receive. Alternate translation: “We do not belong to the family of David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

“Son of Jesse” here is a metonym for David, a son of Jesse. Having an inheritance in someone represents being his descendants and receiving the good things that descendants receive. Alternate translation: “We will not receive any inheritance from the son of Jesse” or “We will have nothing to do with the his descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Each of you should go back to his tent

“Tent” here is a metonym representing people's homes. Alternate translation: “Go to your homes, people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now see to your own house, David

Here “see to” is an idiom meaning to take care of something, and “house” is a metonym for David's lineage of power and prestige. Alternate translation: “Now take care of your own kingdom, descendant of David” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- Israel

ULT

¹⁶ And all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, and the people answered the king, saying, “What for us is a portion with David? And no inheritance with the son of Jesse. Each to your tents, Israel! Now, see your house, David.” And all Israel went to his tents.

UST

¹⁶ When the Israelite leaders realized that the king did not pay any attention to what they said, they shouted, “We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David! We will not pay attention to what this grandson of Jesse says! You people of Israel, let us go home! As for this descendant of David, he can look after his family himself!” So the Israelite leaders returned to their homes.

- the king
- the king
- David
- the people
- and...answered
- inheritance
- with the son of
- Jesse
- your house

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- David
- Jesse
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- return, turn back

2 Chronicles 10:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But the sons of
- Israel
- Judah
- Rehoboam
- and...reigned

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Judea, Judah
- Rehoboam
- reign, rule

ULT

¹⁷ But the sons of Israel dwelling in the cities of Judah, and Rehoboam reigned over them.

UST

¹⁷ And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah, in the countryside and in the cities, towns, and villages.

2 Chronicles 10:18

Adoniram

Adoniram is the name of a man. In the Hebrew text of this sentence, his name was written as Adoram. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who was over the forced laborers

Being over people represents having authority to tell them what to do. Alternate translation: “who was in charge of the forced laborers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

stoned him to death with stones

Alternate translation: “killed Adoniram by stoning him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [And King](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

18 And [King Rehoboam](#) sent Hadoram, who was over the forced labor, but [the sons of Israel](#) stoned him with stones and he died. And [King Rehoboam](#) strengthened himself to go up in the chariot to flee [to Jerusalem](#).

UST

18 Then King Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. But the Israelite people killed him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, King Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 10:19

against the house of David

Here “the house of David” represents the kings who were descendants of David. Alternate translation: “against the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this day

This refers to the general time when the author wrote this book. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#). Alternate translation: “even now”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [against the house of](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Israel](#) has rebelled [against the house of David](#) until this day.

UST

¹⁹ Ever since that time, the people of the northern tribes of Israel have been rebelling against the descendants of King David.

2 Chronicles 11

2 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section on King Rehoboam continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Strengthening their defenses

Rehoboam strengthened the defenses of Judah. Without the help of the northern tribes, the kingdom of Judah did not really have much power to defend itself from outside attacks. Therefore, Rehoboam felt it necessary to strengthen Judah's military defenses.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

When the author speaks about Israel, he is now referring almost exclusively to the northern kingdom of Israel and not the united nation of Israel.

2 Chronicles 11:1

the house of Judah and Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants and refers specifically to the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. Alternate translation: “all the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

180,000 chosen men

“one hundred and eighty thousand chosen men” (See: [Numbers](#))

chosen men who were soldiers

“choice men who were soldiers.” The phrase “chosen men” is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. Alternate translation: “of the best soldiers” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [to Rehoboam](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to bring back](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹ And [Rehoboam](#) came [to Jerusalem](#), and he assembled [the house of Judah and Benjamin](#), 180,000 chosen who do battle, to fight against [Israel](#), [to bring back](#) the kingdom [to Rehoboam](#).

UST

¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. He wanted them to fight against the northern tribes of Israel and defeat them, in order that he could rule all twelve tribes again.

2 Chronicles 11:2

the word of Yahweh came ... saying

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message ... and he said” or “Yahweh spoke these words ... and he said” (See: [Idiom](#))

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the man of God

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the man who belongs to God” or “the prophet of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

² But the word of [Yahweh](#) was to Shemaiah the man of [God](#), saying,

UST

² But Yahweh spoke to the prophet Shemaiah and said this to him:

2 Chronicles 11:3

all Israel in Judah and Benjamin

Here the word "Israel" refers to the Israelite people who live in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. Alternate translation: "all of the Israelites in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Judah](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

³ "Say to [Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah](#), and to all [Israel in Judah and Benjamin](#), saying,

UST

³ "Go and tell this to Solomon's son Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and to all the Israelite people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin:

2 Chronicles 11:4

your brothers

This is a reference to the ten northern tribes. By calling them "brothers," Yahweh emphasizes the family relationship between all of the tribes.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- your brothers
- Return
- to his house
- and returned
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam
- house, household
- return, turn back

ULT

⁴ 'Thus says Yahweh, "Do not go up and do not fight with your brothers. Return, each to his house, for from with me, this thing is.'"" And they listened to the words of Yahweh and returned from going against Jeroboam.

UST

⁴ 'Yahweh says that you must not go to fight against the people of Israel; it is as though they are your own relatives. All of you must go home. What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen.'" So Shemaiah went and told that to them, and they all paid attention to what Yahweh had commanded them to do; they did not attack Jeroboam and his soldiers.

2 Chronicles 11:5

Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and built cities

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Rehoboam build these cities. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and had his workers build cities" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [in Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

ULT

⁵ And [Rehoboam](#) dwelled [in Jerusalem](#), and he built cities for fortification [in Judah](#).

UST

⁵ Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem, and his workers built walls around several of the cities and towns in Judah to protect them against enemy attacks.

2 Chronicles 11:6

Etam, Tekoa

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ And he built Bethlehem, and Etam,
and Tekoa,

UST

⁶ In the area that belonged to the tribes
of Judah and Benjamin they built walls
around Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa,

2 Chronicles 11:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁷ and Beth Zur, and Soko, and Adullam,

UST

⁷ Beth Zur, Soko, Adullam,

2 Chronicles 11:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁸ and Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph,

UST

⁸ Gath, Mareshah,

2 Chronicles 11:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁹ and Adoraim, and Lachish, and Azekah,

UST

⁹ Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah,

2 Chronicles 11:10

Zorah, Aijalon

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Judah](#)
- [and in Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ and Zorah, and Aijalon, and Hebron, which were [in Judah](#) and [in Benjamin](#), fortified cities.

UST

¹⁰ Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron.

2 Chronicles 11:11

He fortified the fortresses

Here the word “fortresses” refers to fortified cities. That Rehoboam “fortified the fortresses” means that he built up and strengthened the defenses of these fortified cities. Alternate translation: “He strengthened the defenses of the fortified cities” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and oil](#)
- [and wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oil](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

11 And he strengthened the fortifications. And he placed in them leaders and storehouses of food [and oil and wine](#),

UST

11 He also appointed an army commander in each of those cities and towns, and gave them supplies of food, olive oil, and wine.

2 Chronicles 11:12

made them very strong

Alternate translation: "made the cities very strong"

Judah and Benjamin belonged to him

Rehoboam was in control of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- and Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Judea, Judah

ULT

¹² and in each, city by city, large shields and spears, and he very much strengthened them greatly. And to him were Judah and Benjamin.

UST

¹² He put shields and spears in all the cities and made them well-protected. So he continued to control the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

2 Chronicles 11:13

The priests and the Levites ... went over to him from within their borders

This could mean: (1) "The priests and Levites ... supported Rehoboam from within their borders" or (2) "The priests and Levites ... traveled from within their borders to join Rehoboam."

Translation Words - ULT

- And the priests
- and the Levites
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite

ULT

¹³ And the priests and the Levites who were in all Israel presented themselves to him from all their territories.

UST

¹³ The priests and other descendants of Levi throughout Israel supported Rehoboam.

2 Chronicles 11:14

pasturelands

lands used for animals

Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away

To “drive away” is an idiom that means to forcefully cause someone to leave. Alternate translation: “Jeroboam and his sons had forced them to leave” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [left](#)
- [to Judah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [from serving as priests](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

ULT

¹⁴ For [the Levites left](#) their open lands and their property. And they went [to Judah](#) and to Jerusalem, for [Jeroboam and his sons](#) rejected them [from serving as priests to Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁴ The descendants of Levi abandoned their property and their pastureland, and they came to Jerusalem and to other places in Judah, because Jeroboam and his sons would not allow them to do the work of priests of Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 11:15

the goat and calf idols he had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Jeroboam make these idols. Alternate translation: “the goat idols and calf idols that he had his craftsmen make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he established for himself [priests](#) for the high places and for the goats and for the calves which he had made.

UST

¹⁵ Instead, Jeroboam appointed the priests that he wanted to work at the altars he commanded to be built on the hills all around the cities, to offer sacrifices to the idols that he commanded to be made that resembled goats and calves.

2 Chronicles 11:16

People ... came after them

Alternate translation: "People ... followed the Levites" or "People ... came to Jerusalem after the Levites"

those who set their hearts to seek Yahweh

Here the word "hearts" represents the thoughts and desires. The idiom "set their hearts" means to determine to do something.
Alternate translation: "those who had determined to seek Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

Worshipping Yahweh is spoken of as if the person were seeking Yahweh. Alternate translation: "to worship Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the tribes of
- Israel
- Israel
- their fathers
- their heart
- to seek
- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- the God of
- the God of
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seek, search, look for
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

16 And after them from all the tribes of Israel, the ones giving their heart to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel, came to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

UST

16 And people from every tribe in Israel who wanted to worship Yahweh, the God to whom the Israelites belonged, went with the descendants of Levi to Jerusalem to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 11:17

made Rehoboam son of Solomon strong

The people supporting Rehoboam as king is spoken of as if they made Rehoboam strong. Alternate translation: “supported Rehoboam son of Solomon as king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they walked for three years in the way of David and Solomon

Here a person’s actions and lifestyle are spoken of as if the person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: “they followed the example of David and Solomon for three years” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kingdom of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and they made...strong](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [and Solomon](#)
- [they walked](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And they strengthened [the kingdom of Judah](#), [and they made Rehoboam the son of Solomon strong](#) for three years, for [they walked](#) in the way of [David and Solomon](#) for three years.

UST

¹⁷ They caused the kingdom of Judah to be strong, and for three years they were happy that Solomon’s son Rehoboam was the king. During that time they conducted their lives righteously as David and Solomon had done previously.

2 Chronicles 11:18

Mahalath ... Abihail

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jerimoth ... Eliab

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Rehoboam
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- David
- Jesse

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- David
- Jesse
- Rehoboam

ULT

18 And Rehoboam took for himself a wife: Mahalath, the daughter of Jerimoth, the son of David, Abihail, the daughter of Eliab, the son of Jesse.

UST

18 Rehoboam married Mahalath. She was the daughter of David's son Jerimoth, and her mother was Abihail, the daughter of Eliab and granddaughter of Jesse.

2 Chronicles 11:19

Jeush ... Shemariah ... Zaham

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And she bore to him [sons](#): Jeush, and Shemariah, and Zaham.

UST

¹⁹ Rehoboam and Mahalath had three sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham.

2 Chronicles 11:20

Mahalath ... Maacah

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboam took Maacah

This idiom means that he married her. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam married Maacah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Maacah](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Abijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Maacah](#)

ULT

²⁰ And after her, he took [Maacah](#), the daughter of [Absalom](#); and she bore to him [Abijah](#), and Attai, and Ziza, and Shelomith.

UST

²⁰ Later Rehoboam married Maacah, the daughter of Absalom, and they had four sons: Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith.

2 Chronicles 11:21

eighteen wives and sixty concubines ... twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters

“18 wives and 60 concubines...28 sons and 60 daughters” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [And...loved](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [son](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Rehoboam](#) loved [Maacah](#), the daughter of [Absalom](#), more than all his wives and his concubines, for he lifted 18 wives and 60 concubines, and he fathered 28 [sons](#) and 60 daughters.

UST

²¹ Rehoboam loved Maacah more than he loved any other of his wives and slave wives. Altogether he had eighteen wives and sixty slave wives, and twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters.

2 Chronicles 11:22

he had the thought of making him king

Alternate translation: "he had thought of making Abijah king"

Translation Words - ULT

- Rehoboam
- Abijah
- the son of
- Maacah
- among his brothers
- he caused to make him king

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Abijah
- Maacah
- Rehoboam
- reign, rule

ULT

²² And Rehoboam appointed to be head Abijah the son of Maacah, to be leader among his brothers; for he caused to make him king.

UST

²² Rehoboam appointed his son Abijah to be the leader of his older and younger brothers, because he wanted to appoint Abijah to be the next king.

2 Chronicles 11:23

he scattered all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city

Alternate translation: "he sent all his sons throughout all the land to every fortified city of Judah and Benjamin"

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- the lands of
- Judah
- and Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Judea, Judah
- earth, land

ULT

²³ And he dealt wisely, and he scattered all his sons to all the lands of Judah and Benjamin to all the fortified cities. And he gave to them provisions in abundance, and he asked for a multitude of wives.

UST

²³ He very wisely sent some of his other sons to other cities in the areas of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and to other cities that had walls around them. He gave them plenty of supplies and many wives.

2 Chronicles 12

2 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the section on King Rehoboam.

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping Yahweh

The safety of Israel and Judah was dependent upon the people worshiping Yahweh and not upon their military power. Because Rehoboam deserted the worship of God, God allowed the king of Egypt to take all of the wealth Solomon stored up.

2 Chronicles 12:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when Rehoboam's reign was established

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "when Rehoboam had established his reign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all Israel with him

Here the words "all Israel" refer specifically to the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, over which Rehoboam was king. The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "all the Israelite people whom he ruled also abandoned the law of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

¹ And it happened when [the reign of Rehoboam](#) was established and when he had become strong, [he abandoned the law of Yahweh](#)—and all [Israel](#) with him.

UST

¹ After Rehoboam had obtained complete control of his kingdom, he and all the other people in Judah stopped obeying the laws of Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the reign of](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [he abandoned](#)
- [the law of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [kingdom](#)

2 Chronicles 12:2

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the fifth year of King Rehoboam

This refers to the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign as king. Alternate translation: "in the fifth year that Rehoboam was king" or "in year five of King Rehoboam's reign" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shishak, king of Egypt, came up against Jerusalem

"Shishak, king of Egypt" here is a metonym for Shishak along with the Egyptian army. Alternate translation: "Shishak, king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Shishak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. Alternate translation: "came to attack" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of King
- the king of
- Rehoboam
- Egypt
- Jerusalem
- they were unfaithful
- to Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jerusalem
- Rehoboam
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

² And it happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak, the king of Egypt, came up against Jerusalem, because they were unfaithful to Yahweh.

UST

² As a result, after Rehoboam had been king for almost five years, Yahweh sent Shishak, the king of Egypt, with his army to attack Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 12:3

twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand horsemen

“1,200 chariots and 60,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Soldiers without number

This exaggeration means that there were more soldiers than a person could easily count. Alternate translation: “Many soldiers” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Libyans, Sukkites, and Cushites

These are people from Libya, Sukki, and Ethiopia. The location of Sukki is uncertain, but it may be a region in Libya. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the people](#)
- [from Egypt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

³ With 1200 chariots, and 60,000 horsemen, and there was no number [for the people](#) who came with him [from Egypt](#): Libyans, Sukkites, and Cushites.

UST

³ He brought with his army twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand soldiers who rode horses and a very large number of troops from two regions in Libya, and from Ethiopia.

2 Chronicles 12:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- belonged to Judah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Judah

ULT

⁴ And he captured the fortified cities that belonged to Judah, and he came to Jerusalem.

UST

⁴ They captured many of the cities in Judah that had walls around them, and they came as far as Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 12:5

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this word in [2 Chronicles 11:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

so I have also given you over into Shishak's hand

Here the word "hand" represents power. Yahweh speaks of enabling Shishak's army to defeat the king and the others in Jerusalem as if he were placing them into Shishak's hand. Alternate translation: "so I have enabled Shishak to defeat you" or "so I have given you to Shishak as captives" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the prophet](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [and the chiefs of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [had gathered](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [You all...have abandoned](#)
- [I...have...abandoned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁵ And Shemaiah [the prophet](#) came to [Rehoboam and the chiefs of Judah](#) who [had gathered](#) to [Jerusalem](#) because of Shishak. And he said to them, "Thus says [Yahweh](#): [You all](#) yourselves [have abandoned](#) me, and I myself have also [abandoned](#) you all [into the hand of](#) Shishak."

UST

⁵ Then the prophet Shemaiah came to Rehoboam and the other leaders of Judah who had gathered in Jerusalem because they were afraid of the army of Shishak. Shemaiah said to them, "Yahweh says this: 'You have abandoned me; so now I am abandoning you, to allow you to be captured by the army of Shishak.'"

2 Chronicles 12:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- Israel
- and the king
- Righteous is
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Yahweh
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁶ And the chiefs of Israel and the king humbled themselves. And they said, "Righteous is Yahweh."

UST

⁶ Then the king and the other Israelite leaders humbled themselves and said, "What Yahweh is doing to us is just."

2 Chronicles 12:7

they had humbled themselves

Alternate translation: "the princes of Israel and the king had humbled themselves"

the word of Yahweh came ... saying

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message ... and he said" or "Yahweh spoke these words ... and he said" (See: [Idiom](#))

I will rescue them to some extent

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will permit Shishak to attack Jerusalem and cause trouble for the people, but he will rescue them from total destruction or (2) the words "to some extent" can be translated as soon, meaning that Yahweh will rescue the people of Jerusalem before Shishak can completely destroy the city.

my anger will not pour out on Jerusalem

Yahweh speaks of his anger as if it were a liquid, and of expressing his anger as if he were to pour out that liquid. Alternate translation: "I will not express my anger against Jerusalem" or "Jerusalem will not suffer the effects of my anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

by means of Shishak's hand

Here the word "hand" represents Shishak himself. Alternate translation: "by means of Shishak" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will...pour out](#)
- [on Jerusalem](#)
- [by the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁷ And when [Yahweh](#) saw that they had humbled themselves, the word of [Yahweh](#) was to Shemaiah, saying, "They have humbled themselves. I will not destroy them; and I will give to them like a little for escape, and my rage will not [pour out on Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak](#)."

UST

⁷ When Yahweh realized that they had humbled themselves, he gave this message to Shemaiah: "Because they have humbled themselves, I will not allow them to be destroyed. Instead, I will soon rescue them. I will not use Shishak's army to completely destroy the people of Jerusalem,

2 Chronicles 12:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- for servants
- and they will know
- the kingdoms of
- the lands

Translation Words - UST

- earth, land
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁸ Nevertheless, they will be to him for servants, and they will know my service and the service of the kingdoms of the lands."

UST

⁸ but they will conquer Jerusalem and force the people there to do what Shishak wants them to do. As a result, the people of Jerusalem will learn that it is better to serve me than to serve the kings of other countries."

2 Chronicles 12:9

Shishak, king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem

“Shishak, king of Egypt” here is a metonym for Shishak along with the Egyptian army. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 12:2](#). Alternate translation: “Shishak, king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 12:2](#). Alternate translation: “came to attack” (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the shields of gold that Solomon had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon make these shields. Alternate translation: “the shields of gold that Solomon had his craftsmen make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Egypt
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- the treasures of
- the treasures of
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- storehouse
- storehouse

ULT

⁹ And Shishak, the king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem and took the treasures of the house of Yahweh and the treasures of the house of the king. Everything he took; and he took the shields of gold that Solomon had made.

UST

⁹ When Shishak's army attacked Jerusalem, they took away the valuable things that were in the temple of Yahweh and in the king's palace. They took everything that was valuable, including the gold shields that Solomon's workers had made.

2 Chronicles 12:10

King Rehoboam made shields of bronze

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Rehoboam make these shields. Alternate translation: "King Rehoboam had his craftsmen make shields of bronze" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in their place

Alternate translation: "in place of the shields of gold"

entrusted them into the hands of the commanders

Here the word "hands" represents care or responsibility. Alternate translation: "made them the responsibility of the commanders" (See: [Metonymy](#))

who guarded the doors to the king's house

Here the word "doors" represents the entrance. Alternate translation: "who guarded the entrance to the king's house" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [and he appointed](#)
- [the hand of](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [King Rehoboam](#) made in their place shields of [bronze](#), and he [appointed](#) over [the hand of the chiefs of](#) the runners, the keepers of the entrance of [the house of the king](#).

UST

¹⁰ So King Rehoboam's workers made bronze shields to be used instead of the gold ones, and gave the bronze shields to the commanders of the men who guarded the entrance to the his palace.

2 Chronicles 12:11

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the guards would carry them

Alternate translation: "the guards would carry the shields"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the house of
- Yahweh
- and brought them back

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

ULT

11 And it happened as often as the king came into the house of Yahweh, the runners came and carried them and brought them back to the chamber of the runners.

UST

11 After that, whenever the king went to the temple, the guards went with him, carrying those bronze shields. Then when the king left, they would return the shields to the guards' room.

2 Chronicles 12:12

Yahweh's anger turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely

Yahweh no longer being angry with Rehoboam is spoken of as if Yahweh's anger were a person who turned away from Rehoboam. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was no longer angry with him and so did not destroy him completely" (See: [Personification](#))

besides, there was

Alternate translation: "in addition, there was"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [turned](#)
- [in Judah](#)
- [good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

¹² And when he humbled himself, the anger of [Yahweh turned](#) from him, and did not destroy to completion. And also, [in Judah](#) there were [good](#) matters.

UST

¹² Because Rehoboam humbled himself, Yahweh stopped being angry with him, and did not get rid of him. Instead, he caused good things to happen in Judah.

2 Chronicles 12:13

forty-one years old ... seventeen years

"41 years old...17 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

so that he might put his name there

Possible meanings for the phrase **put his name** are: (1) a metonym for "dwell." Alternate translation: "so that he might dwell there" or (2) an idiom that refers to ownership. Alternate translation: "so that it might belong to him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Naamah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and he reigned](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his name](#)
- [the tribes of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

ULT

¹³ And [King Rehoboam](#) strengthened himself [in Jerusalem](#), and he reigned. For [a son of](#) 41 years [Rehoboam](#) was in his reigning, and 17 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#), the city that [Yahweh](#) had chosen to put [his name](#) there from all [the tribes of Israel](#). And the name of his mother, Naamah the Ammonitess.

UST

¹³ King Rehoboam again obtained complete control in Jerusalem, and continued to be the king of Judah. He was forty-one years old when he became the king. He ruled for seventeen years in Jerusalem, which is the city that Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes in Israel to be the place in which people were to worship him.

2 Chronicles 12:14

he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh

Here the word “heart” represents the thoughts and desires. The idiom “fix his heart” means to determine to do something. Alternate translation: “he was not committed to seeking Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

Worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the person were seeking Yahweh. Alternate translation: “to worship Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his heart](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

14 And he did evil, for he did not establish [his heart to seek Yahweh](#).

UST

14 Rehoboam's mother's name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group. Rehoboam did evil things because he did not try to find out what Yahweh wanted him to do.

2 Chronicles 12:15

first and last

“from beginning to end.” These two words form a merism and refer to everything that Rehoboam did from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign. Alternate translation: “everything that he did” (See: [Merism](#))

are they not written ... Jeroboam?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “they are written ... Jeroboam.” or “you can read about them ... Jeroboam.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Shemaiah ... Iddo

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the constant wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent the armies that they led. Alternate translation: “the wars in which Rehoboam’s army and Jeroboam’s army constantly engaged” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [and Jeroboam](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

ULT

15 And the matters of [Rehoboam](#), the first things and the last things, are they not written in the words of Shemaiah [the prophet](#) and Iddo the seer, according to genealogy? And there were wars between [Rehoboam](#) and [Jeroboam](#) all the days.

UST

15 An account of all the things that Rehoboam did while he was the king, and lists of the members of his family, are in the scrolls written by the prophets Shemaiah and Iddo. The armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam were constantly fighting each other.

2 Chronicles 12:16

Abijah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboam slept with his ancestors

Rehoboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried in the city of David

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people buried him in the city of David" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Rehoboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [David](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And [Rehoboam](#) lied down with [his fathers](#), and he was buried in the city of [David](#). And [Abijah his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

¹⁶ When Rehoboam died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Abijah became the king.

2 Chronicles 13

2 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in God, King Abijah of Judah was able to overcome the army of Israel even though it was twice as big as his army. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Chronicles 13:1

In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam

This refers to the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign as king. Alternate translation: "In the eighteenth year that Jeroboam was king" or "in year 18 of King Jeroboam's reign" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of King
- Jeroboam
- Abijah
- then...reigned
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Abijah
- Jeroboam
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

¹ In the 18th year of King Jeroboam, then Abijah reigned over Judah.

UST

¹ When Jeroboam had been ruling Israel for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 13:2

Macaiah, the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah

“Macaiah” is the name of a woman. “Uriel” is the name of a man.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent the armies that they led. Alternate translation: “There was war between the army of Abijah and the army of Jeroboam” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

² Three years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother, Macaiah, the daughter of Uriel from Gibeah. And war was between [Abijah](#) and between [Jeroboam](#).

UST

² He ruled in Jerusalem for three years. His mother was Micaiah, the daughter of Uriel from the city of Gibeah. There was a war between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam.

2 Chronicles 13:3

400,000 chosen men...800,000 chosen men

"Four hundred thousand chosen men ... eight hundred thousand chosen men." The phrase "chosen men" is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. Alternate translation: "400,000 skilled men...800,000 skilled men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [And Jeroboam](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

³ And [Abijah](#) began the battle with an army of [mighty ones of](#) battle, 400,000 chosen men. [And Jeroboam](#) deployed against him in battle 800,000 chosen men, [mighty ones of strength](#).

UST

³ Abijah went into the battle, taking 400,000 of his capable soldiers, and Jeroboam prepared to fight them, taking 800,000 of his capable troops.

2 Chronicles 13:4

Mount Zemaraim

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Abijah](#) rose on Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hills of [Ephraim](#), and he said, "Hear me, [Jeroboam](#) and all [Israel](#)!

UST

⁴ Abijah stood on the top of Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill country that belonged to the tribe of Ephraim, and he shouted, "Jeroboam and all you other people of Israel, listen to me!

2 Chronicles 13:5

Do you not know ... by a formal covenant?

Abijah asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the positive answer that it anticipates. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know very well ... by a formal covenant." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the kingdom](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [a covenant of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

⁵ Is it not to you all to know that [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), gave [the kingdom](#) to David over [Israel](#) forever, to him [and to his sons, a covenant of](#) salt?

UST

⁵ You certainly know that Yahweh, whom we Israelites are to worship, made a covenant with David by which he promised that his descendants would always rule over Israel.

2 Chronicles 13:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- the son of
- the son of
- the servant of
- Solomon
- David
- and he rebelled
- his lord

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- David
- Jeroboam
- Solomon
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ But Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon, the son of David, arose, and he rebelled against his lord.

UST

⁶ But Jeroboam, who was only an official of David's son King Solomon, rebelled against his king.

2 Chronicles 13:7

base fellows

Alternate translation: "wicked men" or "evil men"

gathered to him

Alternate translation: "joined with Jeroboam"

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- the son of
- and they strenghtened themselves
- Rehoboam
- And Rehoboam
- Solomon
- young
- heart
- he did...strengthen himself

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- son
- son
- Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- Solomon
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁷ And empty men, **sons** of wickedness, assembled about him, **and they strenghtened themselves** over **Rehoboam, the son of Solomon. And Rehoboam** was **young** and tender of **heart**, and **he did** not **strengthen himself** before them.

UST

⁷ And when Solomon's son Rehoboam became king and was still young and inexperienced, a group of worthless scoundrels gathered around you and rebelled against him.

2 Chronicles 13:8

the kingdom of Yahweh

This is a reference to a united Israel as it existed in the time of David and Solomon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

that is held within the hand of the descendants of David

Here the word “hand” represents authority and possession. Abijah is claiming that only the descendants of David have the rightful authority to rule Yahweh's kingdom. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that the descendants of David hold within their hand” or “which only the descendants of David have the authority to rule” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the golden calves that Jeroboam made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that Jeroboam had others make the golden calves. Alternate translation: “the golden calves that Jeroboam had his craftsmen make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁸ And now, you all are saying to strengthen self before [the kingdom of Yahweh, by the hand of the sons of David](#), and you all are a great abundance, and with you all are calves of [gold](#) which [Jeroboam](#) made for you all [for gods](#).

UST

⁸ And now you are planning to fight against the kingdom that Yahweh established to be governed by David's descendants. It is true that you have a huge army, and you and your soldiers have brought with you the golden statues of calves that Jeroboam's workers made to be your gods.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kingdom of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [David](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [for gods](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)

2 Chronicles 13:9

But did you not drive out ... as the people of other lands do?

Abijah asks this rhetorical question to rebuke the people and to emphasize the positive answer that it anticipates. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "But you drive out ... as the people of other lands do." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Whoever comes to serve as a priest

Alternate translation: "Anyone who comes to serve as a priest"

a priest of what are not gods

The phrase "what are not gods" refers to the golden calves that Jeroboam had his craftsmen make. Although the priests served them as if they were gods, they were not really gods. Alternate translation: "a priest of idols that are not really gods" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests of
- priests
- a priest of
- Yahweh
- a herd
- and...rams
- what are...gods
- the sons of
- a son of
- Aaron
- and the Levites
- like the peoples of
- the lands
- his hand

Translation Words - UST

- God
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- earth, land

ULT

⁹ Did you all not drive out the priests of Yahweh, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and make for yourselves priests like the peoples of the lands? Any who comes to fill his hand with a young bull, a son of a herd, and seven rams, and he will be a priest of what are not gods.

UST

⁹ But you drove out the priests that Yahweh appointed, men who are descendants of Aaron the first high priest. You also drove out the descendants of Levi, and you appointed the priests that you wanted, like the people of other countries do. And so one may even come to set himself apart for the work of a priest, even sacrificing a young bull and seven rams as a sign of his ordination and his dedication to become a priest. But what kind of priest is he? He is consecrated to serve idols that are not gods at all!

- hand
- people, people group
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

2 Chronicles 13:10

as for us

The word “us” refers to the people of the southern kingdom of Judah.

who are at their work

The word “work” can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “who are working” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- is our God
- we have...abandoned him
- are ministering
- the sons of
- Aaron
- and the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- God
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁰ But us, [Yahweh is our God](#), and [we have not abandoned him](#). And priests, [are ministering to Yahweh, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites](#), in the work.

UST

¹⁰ As for us, Yahweh is our God, and we have not abandoned him. Our priests who serve Yahweh are descendants of Aaron, and the descendants of Levi assist them.

2 Chronicles 13:11

the bread of the presence

The “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that the priests placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God and as a symbol of God’s presence.

they also tend the lampstand

Alternate translation: “they also take care of the lampstand”

for them to burn every evening

Alternate translation: “so that the lamps burn every evening” or “and light the lamps every evening”

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- burnt offerings
- bread
- gold
- keeping
- our God
- you all...have abandoned

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- bread
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- gold, golden
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

11 And they are making sacrifices to Yahweh, burnt offerings, morning by morning and evening by evening, and spiced incense, and a line of bread on the pure table, and the gold lampstand and its lamps to burn evening by evening. For we are keeping the charge of Yahweh, our God, but you all yourselves have abandoned him.

UST

11 Every morning and every evening they present to Yahweh offerings to be completely burned on the altar, and they burn fragrant incense. Each week they place on the sacred table the bread to display before Yahweh, and each morning they light the lamps that are on the gold lampstand. We are obeying what Yahweh our God requires us to do. But you have abandoned him; you no longer worship him.

2 Chronicles 13:12

God is with us at our head

Here the front of the army is spoken of as if it were the head. Abijah is saying that God is the one who is leading the army of Judah in battle. Alternate translation: "God is with us as our leader" (See: [Metaphor](#))

do not fight against Yahweh

Since Yahweh is leading the army of Judah, Abijah speaks of the army of Israel fighting against the army of Judah as if they were fighting against Yahweh himself. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [at our head](#)
- [is God](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your fathers](#)
- [you will...succeed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

12 And behold, with us, [at our head, is God](#), and his priests and the trumpets of shouting to raise a shout against you all. [Sons of Israel](#), do not fight against [Yahweh, the God of your fathers](#), for [you will not succeed](#)."

UST

12 Yahweh is with us; he is our leader. The priests whom he has appointed will blow their trumpets to signal that we are ready to fight a battle against you. You Israelite men, do not fight against Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belonged, because you will not be successful against him."

2 Chronicles 13:13

an ambush behind them

Alternate translation: "a surprise attack behind the army of Judah"

the ambush was behind them

Alternate translation: "the soldiers who were to attack them by surprise were behind them"

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jeroboam
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- Judea, Judah

ULT

¹³ But Jeroboam had caused to circle around an ambush to come from behind them; and they were before Judah, and the ambush from behind them.

UST

¹³ While he was speaking, Jeroboam sent some of his troops around the army of Judah. So while the soldiers who were with Jeroboam were in front of the army of Judah, the other soldiers of Israel were behind the army of Judah.

2 Chronicles 13:14

When Judah looked back

Here “Judah” represents the soldiers in the army of Judah. Alternate translation: “When the soldiers of Judah looked back” (See: [Metonymy](#))

behold

The word “behold” here shows that the soldiers were surprised by what they saw.

the fighting was both in front of them and behind them

The word “fighting” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “the army of Israel was fighting them from the front and from the back” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [before them](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [and the priests](#)
- [trumpets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

ULT

14 And [Judah](#) turned, and behold, to them was the battle [before them](#) and behind. And they cried out [to Yahweh](#), [and the priests](#) were blowing [trumpets](#).

UST

14 When the soldiers of Judah turned and saw that they were going to be attacked from the front and from the rear, they cried out to Yahweh. The priests blew their trumpets,

2 Chronicles 13:15

God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah

God enabling the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and the army of Israel is spoken of as if God struck Jeroboam and Israel. Alternate translation: "God enabled Abijah and the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and all Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

all Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to the army. Alternate translation: "the entire army of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah
- And...raised a shout
- Jeroboam
- Israel
- Abijah
- and Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Abijah
- Jeroboam
- Judah
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- alarm, alarmed

ULT

¹⁵ And the men of Judah raised a shout; and it happened when the men of Judah raised a shout, then God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.

UST

¹⁵ and the men of Judah shouted a loud battle cry. Then Yahweh enabled Abijah and the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and the army of Israel.

2 Chronicles 13:16

fled before Judah

Here the word “Judah” represents the army of Judah. Alternate translation: “fled before the army of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God gave them into the hand of Judah

Here the word “hand” represents power. God enabling the army of Judah to defeat the army of Israel is spoken of as if God had put the army of Israel in the hand of the army of Judah. Alternate translation: “God enabled Judah to defeat the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [God](#)
- [into their hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

16 And [the sons of Israel](#) fled from before [Judah](#), and [God](#) gave them [into their hand](#).

UST

16 The soldiers of Israel fled from the soldiers of Judah, and God enabled the army of Judah to defeat them.

2 Chronicles 13:17

killed them with great slaughter

This idiom means that they thoroughly defeated them, or that they killed very many of the soldiers. Alternate translation: “thoroughly defeated them” or “slaughtered many of their soldiers” (See: [Idiom](#))

500,000 chosen men

“five hundred thousand chosen men.” The phrase “chosen men” is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. Alternate translation: “500,000 of the best soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [and his people](#)
- [and they fell](#)
- [from Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [Abijah and his people](#) struck them a great striking, [and they fell](#) slain [from Israel](#), 500,000 chosen men.

UST

¹⁷ Abijah and his troops struck the capable soldiers of Israel and killed 500,000 of them, the best soldiers there were in Israel.

2 Chronicles 13:18

the people of Israel were subdued

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the army of Judah subdued the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Judah
- and...were strong
- Yahweh
- the God of
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

18 And the sons of Israel were humbled at that time, and the sons of Judah were strong because they relied on Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

UST

18 So the soldiers of Israel were defeated, and the soldiers of Judah won the battle because they trusted in Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged.

2 Chronicles 13:19

Abijah pursued

Alternate translation: "Abijah chased after"

Jeshanah ... Ephron

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abijah](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Abijah](#) pursued after [Jeroboam](#); and he captured from him cities: [Bethel](#) and its daughters, and Jeshanah and its daughters, and Ephron and its daughters.

UST

¹⁹ Abijah's army pursued the army of Jeroboam, and they captured from the people of Israel the cities of Bethel, Jeshanah, and Ephron, and the surrounding villages.

2 Chronicles 13:20

Yahweh struck him, and he died

Yahweh causing Jeroboam to die is spoken of as if Yahweh struck Jeroboam. It is possible that this refers to Yahweh causing Jeroboam to become ill. Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused Jeroboam to die” or “Yahweh caused Jeroboam to become ill, and he died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the strength of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [the strength of Jeroboam](#) did not hold again in the days of [Abijah](#); and [Yahweh](#) struck him down, [and he died](#).

UST

²⁰ During the remaining time that Abijah ruled, Jeroboam did not become powerful again. Then Yahweh caused him to become very ill, and he died.

2 Chronicles 13:21

he took fourteen wives for himself

The idiom “took ... wives” means that he married. Alternate translation: “he married fourteen women” (See: [Idiom](#))

fourteen wives ... twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters

“14 wives...22 sons and 16 daughters” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abijah](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Abijah](#) strengthened himself; and he lifted to himself 14 wives, and he fathered 22 [sons](#) and 16 daughters.

UST

²¹ But Abijah became more powerful. He married fourteen wives and had twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters.

2 Chronicles 13:22

his behavior, and words

Alternate translation: "his behavior, and his sayings" or "his behavior, and the things that he said"

are written in the history of the prophet Iddo

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "are in the history that the prophet Iddo wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Abijah](#)

ULT

22 And the remainder of the matters of [Abijah](#), and his ways, and his words are written in the writing of [the prophet](#) Iddo.

UST

22 An account of the other things that Abijah did while he was the was king, including what he said and what he did, is in the scroll written by the prophet Iddo.

2 Chronicles 14

2 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the section about King Asa. (2 Chronicles 14-16)

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in Yahweh, Asa was able to defeat million men of the army of Nubia. Trust in Yahweh is more important than military might. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Chronicles 14:1

Abijah slept with his ancestors

Abijah dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "Abijah died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

Alternate translation: "people buried him"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Abijah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

In his days

Alternate translation: "During his reign"

the land was quiet ten years

There being no war is spoken of as if the land were quiet. Alternate translation: "there was peace in the land for ten years" or "there was no war in the land for ten years" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abijah](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [David](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹ And [Abijah](#) lied down with [his fathers](#), and they buried him in the city of [David](#). And [Asa, his son, reigned](#) in his place. In his days [the land](#) was quiet ten years.

UST

¹ When Abijah died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Asa became the king. While Asa was ruling, there was peace in Judah for ten years.

2 Chronicles 14:2

what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh his God

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Asa’s actions. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judged to be good and right” or “what Yahweh considered to be good and right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [the good](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)

ULT

² And [Asa](#) did [the good](#) and the right in the eyes of [Yahweh his God](#).

UST

² Asa did things that Yahweh his God considers to be right and good.

2 Chronicles 14:3

He broke down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to do these things.
Alternate translation: "He had his people break down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...altars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)

ULT

³ And he took away the foreign [altars](#) and the high places, and he shattered the pillars, and he cut to pieces the Asherim.

UST

³ His workers got rid of the altars to worship foreign gods that were at the hilltops where the idols were worshiped. They smashed the stone pillars and cut down the poles that were there for the goddess Asherah.

2 Chronicles 14:4

He commanded Judah to seek Yahweh

Here the word "Judah" represents the people of Judah. Worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if it were seeking him. Alternate translation: "He commanded the people of Judah to worship Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Judah](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

⁴ And he said [to Judah to seek Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#), and to do [the law](#) and the commandment.

UST

⁴ Asa commanded the people of Judah to worship only Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, and to seek his will and obey his commands.

2 Chronicles 14:5

he took away the high places

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to do these things. Alternate translation: “he had his people take away the high places” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The kingdom had rest under him

There being no war is spoken of as if the kingdom had rest. Alternate translation: “The kingdom had peace under him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

under him

“under his reign.” A king ruling a kingdom is spoken of as if the king is over the kingdom or the kingdom is under the king. Alternate translation: “during his reign” or “while he was king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

⁵ And he took away from all the cities of [Judah](#) the high places and the incense altars. And the kingdom was quiet before him.

UST

⁵ His workers destroyed all the places where idols were worshiped on the hilltops, and the altars for burning incense to idols, in every town in Judah. As a result, there was peace while Asa ruled the kingdom of Judah.

2 Chronicles 14:6

He built fortified cities

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to do these things. Alternate translation: “He had his workers build fortified cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the land was quiet

There being no war is spoken of as if the land were quiet. Alternate translation: “there was peace in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in Judah
- the land
- Yahweh
- had given rest

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Judah
- earth, land
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

⁶ And he built fortified cities in Judah, for the land was quiet. And there was not with him war in these years, because Yahweh had given rest to him.

UST

⁶ His workers built cities and constructed walls around them. No army attacked Judah during those years, because Yahweh enabled them to have peace.

2 Chronicles 14:7

Asa said to Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “Asa said to the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

peace on every side

“peace all around.” This means that Judah was at peace with all of the surrounding nations.

So they built

The ellipsis may be supplied from the context. Alternate translation: “So they built the cities” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Judah](#)
- [doors](#)
- [the land](#)
- [we have sought](#)
- [We have sought](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [and he has given rest](#)
- [and they succeeded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

⁷ And he said [to Judah](#), “Let us build these cities and let us surround with a wall, and towers, [doors](#), and bars; still [the land](#) is before us because [we have sought Yahweh our God. We have sought, and he has given rest](#) to us all around.” And they built, [and they succeeded](#).

UST

⁷ Asa said to the people of Judah, “We should protect these towns by building walls around them, with watchtowers and gates that have bars. This country still belongs to us because we have requested Yahweh our God to help us. We requested him for his help, and he has given us peace in our entire country.” So they built buildings and succeeded in what they did.

2 Chronicles 14:8

300,000 men...280,000 men

“three hundred thousand men ... two hundred and eighty thousand men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Asa
- an army
- strength
- from Judah
- And from Benjamin
- mighty ones of

Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Judah
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

⁸ And there was to Asa an army carrying large shield and spear; from Judah, 300,000. And from Benjamin, ones carrying shield and drawing bow, 280,000. All these were mighty ones of strength.

UST

⁸ Asa had an army of 300,000 men from Judah. They all carried large shields and spears. He also had 280,000 men from the tribe of Benjamin in his army. They also carried shields, and also bows and arrows. They were all brave soldiers.

2 Chronicles 14:9

Zerah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

one million soldiers and three hundred chariots

"1,000,000 soldiers and 300 chariots" (See: [Numbers](#))

Mareshah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...came out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)

ULT

⁹ And Zerah the Cushite [came out](#) against them with an army of 1,000 thousands and 300 chariots; and he came to Mareshah.

UST

⁹ Zerah, a man from Ethiopia, attacked Judah with an army of one million men and three hundred chariots. He came to Mareshah, southwest of Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 14:10

the Valley of Zephathah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asa went out to meet him

Here “Asa” represents both the king and the army that he led into battle. It is implicit that he went out to meet him in battle. Alternate translation: “Asa led his army out to meet him in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [And...went out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Asa](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [Asa went out](#) before him, and they deployed for battle in the Valley of Zephathah at Mareshah.

UST

¹⁰ Asa went with his army to fight against them, and both armies took their positions in the Zephathah Valley.

2 Chronicles 14:11

in your name

Here “name” represents Yahweh’s authority. Alternate translation: “on your behalf” or “by your authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

do not let man defeat you

Since the army of Judah is fighting in Yahweh’s name, Asa speaks of Zerah defeating Judah as if Zerah were to defeat Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “do not let man defeat your people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- And...called
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- his God
- our God
- our God (2)
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Asa
- declare, proclaim, announce
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

11 And Asa called to Yahweh his God and said, “Yahweh, it is nothing for you to help between many and one without strength. Help us, Yahweh our God, for on you we rely, and in your name we have come against this multitude. Yahweh, our God you are; do not let man prevail against you.”

UST

11 Then Asa cried out to Yahweh his God, saying, “Yahweh, there is no one like you who can help those who have very little power to resist large armies. We have come to fight against this huge army. Yahweh, you are our God; do not allow anyone to defeat you.”

2 Chronicles 14:12

Yahweh struck the Cushites before Asa and Judah

God enabling the army of Judah to defeat the Cushites is spoken of as if God struck the Cushites. Alternate translation: "God enabled Asa and the army of Judah to defeat the Cushites" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

¹² And [Yahweh](#) struck down the Cushites before [Asa](#) and before [Judah](#); and the Cushites fled.

UST

¹² Then Yahweh enabled Asa and the army of Judah to defeat the army from Ethiopia. They fled,

2 Chronicles 14:13

So many Cushites fell that they could not recover

This could mean: (1) "So many Cushites died that the army could not recover" or (2) "So many Cushites died that there were none who remained alive."

So many Cushites fell

Here to "fall" is a euphemism for dying in battle. Alternate translation: "So many Cushites died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

for they were completely destroyed before Yahweh and his army

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh's army completely destroyed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [and the people](#)
- [Gerar](#)
- [And there fell](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Gerar](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹³ And [Asa and the people](#) who were with him pursued them until [Gerar](#). And [there fell](#) from the Cushites so that there was none to them something living; for they were broken before [Yahweh](#) and before his camp. And they carried away very much plunder.

UST

¹³ and Asa and his army pursued them to the southwest as far as Gerar. A huge number of the soldiers from Ethiopia were killed, with the result that those who were not killed were unable to fight anymore. They were completely defeated by Yahweh and his army, and the men of Judah carried away a great amount of their possessions.

2 Chronicles 14:14

for terror of Yahweh had come on the inhabitants

The inhabitants of the villages being terrified is spoken of as if terror were an object that came upon them. This could mean: (1) "terror of Yahweh" refers to terror from Yahweh. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh had caused the inhabitants to be terrified" or (2) "terror of Yahweh" refers to being terrified of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "for the inhabitants were terrified of Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gerar](#)
- [the dread of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Gerar](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And they struck all the cities around [Gerar](#), for [the dread of Yahweh](#) was on them. And they plundered all the cities, for great spoils was in them.

UST

¹⁴ The men of Judah were able to destroy the villages near to the city of [Gerar](#) because Yahweh had caused the people there to become terrified and unable to fight. The army of Judah took away all the valuable things from those villages.

2 Chronicles 14:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sheep
- and they returned
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- flock, herd
- return, turn back

ULT

¹⁵ And also the tents of cattle they struck; and they took captive **sheep** in abundance, and camels, **and they returned to Jerusalem.**

UST

¹⁵ They also attacked the places where the local people who took care of domestic animals had set up their tents, and they took away large flocks and herds of sheep and goats and camels. Then they returned to Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 15

2 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Promise

The people promise to serve the Lord. This is something they will ultimately fail to do. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

The phrase “seek Yahweh” means “wanting to believe and obey Yahweh.” This is a common way to describe proper worship of Yahweh. It is possible the meaning of this idiom is about a desire to properly worship. (See: [Idiom](#))

2 Chronicles 15:1

The Spirit of God came on Azariah

This is an idiom which means that the spirit of God influenced Azariah and enabled him to prophesy. Alternate translation: “The Spirit of God gave Azariah the ability to prophesy” (See: [Idiom](#))

Oded

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the Spirit of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)

ULT

¹ And Azariah [the son of](#) Oded, on him came [the Spirit of God](#).

UST

¹ The Spirit of God came on Azariah son of Oded.

2 Chronicles 15:2

he will be found by you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you will find him” or “he will permit you to find him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he went out](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [you all seek him](#)
- [you all abandon him](#)
- [he will abandon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

² [And he went out](#) before [Asa](#), and he said to him, “Hear me, [Asa](#), and all [Judah and Benjamin](#): [Yahweh](#) is with you all, when you all are with him. And if [you all seek him](#), he will be found by you all; but if [you all abandon him](#), [he will abandon](#) you all.”

UST

² Azariah went to talk with Asa and said to him, “Asa and all you men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, listen to me. Yahweh is with you whenever you are with him. If you request him to help you, he will help you, but if you abandon him, he will abandon you.”

2 Chronicles 15:3

Israel was without the true God

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. This refers to a time when the people of Israel did not worship the true God. Alternate translation: "The people of Israel did not worship the true God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

without a teaching priest

Alternate translation: "without a priest who taught them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [were to Israel](#)
- [true](#)
- [the...God](#)
- [a priest](#)
- [the law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

³ And many days [were to Israel](#) without the [true God](#), and without [a priest](#) teaching, and without [the law](#).

UST

³ For many years the Israelite people did not have the true God, and they did not have priests or God's laws.

2 Chronicles 15:4

he was found by them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they found him” or “he permitted them to find him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But they turned](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and they sought him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

⁴ [But they turned](#) in their distress to [Yahweh, the God of Israel, and they sought him](#), and he was found by them.

UST

⁴ But when they experienced trouble, they turned to Yahweh, our God, and requested him to help them. And he helped them.

2 Chronicles 15:5

for him who traveled away, nor for him who traveled to here

This phrase is an idiom that refers to a person who travels anywhere away from home. Alternate translation: “for the person who traveled anywhere” (See: [Idiom](#))

great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands

The people experiencing great troubles is spoken of as if those troubles were objects that were on the people. Alternate translation: “all the inhabitants of the lands experienced great troubles” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [peace](#)
- [the lands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth, land](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)

ULT

⁵ And in those times there was no [peace](#) for one going out, nor for one coming in; for great dismay was upon all the inhabitants of [the lands](#).

UST

⁵ At that time, people were not safe when they traveled, because all the people who lived in those countries were experiencing many difficulties.

2 Chronicles 15:6

They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city

The word “they” refers to the words “nation” and “city.” Conquering one another is spoken of as if they were breaking each other into pieces. Alternate translation: “Nations and cities destroyed each other, nations fighting nations, cities fighting cities” (See: [Metaphor](#))

They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city

Here “nation” and “city” are metonyms for the people who live there. You may also supply a connecting word to clarify the relationship between these two phrases. Alternate translation: “Nations and cities destroyed each other, as the people of one nation fought against the people of another nation, and the people of one city fought against the people of another city” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

ULT

⁶ And they were beaten down, [nation by nation](#), and city by city, for [God](#) confused them in all [distress](#).

UST

⁶ The people of various nations were crushed by armies of other nations, and people in some cities were crushed by armies from other cities, because God was allowing them to experience many difficulties.

Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [nation by](#)
- [God](#)
- [distress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity](#)

2 Chronicles 15:7

do not let your hands be weak

Here the word "hands" represents the people who work. Alternate translation: "do not become weak as you work" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your work will be rewarded

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Yahweh is the implied subject. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh will reward your work" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be strong](#)
- [your hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

⁷ But you all, [be strong](#), and do not let [your hands](#) grow slack, for there is reward for your work."

UST

⁷ But you people, you must be strong and do not become discouraged, because God will reward you for what you do to please him."

2 Chronicles 15:8

When Asa heard these words, the prophecy of Oded the prophet

The phrase “the prophecy of Oded the prophet” defines “these words.” Alternate translation: “When Asa heard the words that Oded the prophet spoke” or “When Asa heard the prophecy of Oded the prophet”

the prophecy of Oded the prophet

Many versions, including the UST, make this passage read, “the prophecy of Azariah, the son of Oded the prophet.” They do this in order to make the sense agree with [2 Chronicles 15:1](#). Translators will probably want to do the same in their versions.

drove away the disgusting things

The words “the disgusting things” refers to idols. Having his people remove or destroy the idols is spoken of as if it were driving them away. Alternate translation: “got rid of the disgusting idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- the prophet
- he strengthened himself
- and caused to pass away
- the land of
- Judah
- and Benjamin
- Ephraim
- the altar of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Asa
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Judea, Judah
- earth, land
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁸ And when [Asa](#) heard these words and the prophecy of Oded [the prophet, he strengthened himself and caused to pass away](#) the abhorrences from all [the land of Judah and Benjamin](#), and from the cities that he had captured from the hill country of [Ephraim](#). And he restored [the altar of Yahweh](#) which was before the porch of [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁸ Asa was encouraged when he heard what Azariah son of Oded, prophesied. Asa commanded his workers to remove all the detestable idols from everywhere in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and from the towns that his soldiers had captured in the hills of the tribe of Ephraim. Asa's workers repaired the altar where people offered sacrifices to Yahweh that was in front of the entrance to the temple in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 15:9

He gathered all Judah and Benjamin

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that David assembled people from all over Judah and Benjamin. Alternate translation: “He gathered together people from all over Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

For they came from Israel

Alternate translation: “For people from of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon came from Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [from Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

⁹ And he gathered all [Judah and Benjamin](#), and the sojourners with them from Ephraim and Manasseh, and from Simeon; for they fell on him [from Israel](#) in abundance when they saw that [Yahweh his God](#) was with him.

UST

⁹ He gathered together all the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and many people had come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who were living among them. He was able to do that because many people had left those tribes in Israel, when they realized that Yahweh was helping him.

2 Chronicles 15:10

So they gathered together

"They" here refers to the tribes of Judah and Israel that were with Asa.

the third month

This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

third ... fifteenth

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [at Jerusalem](#)
- [of the reign of](#)
- [Asa](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And they gathered [at Jerusalem](#) in the third month, in the 15th year [of the reign of Asa](#).

UST

¹⁰ After Asa had been ruling for almost fifteen years, in the third month of that year, those people gathered in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 15:11

some of the plunder that they had brought

This refers to the plunder that they had taken from the villages around Gerar in [2 Chronicles 14:14](#).

seven hundred ... seven thousand

"700...7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [and...sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

11 And they sacrificed [to Yahweh](#) in that day from the plunder they brought: 700 [oxen](#) and 7,000 [sheep](#).

UST

11 At that time they sacrificed to Yahweh seven hundred bulls and seven thousand sheep and goats, from the animals that they had captured when they defeated the army of Ethiopia.

2 Chronicles 15:12

with all their heart and with all their soul

Together, these two phrases form an idiomatic expression that refers to a person's entire being. Alternate translation: "with all their beings" or "wholeheartedly" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [their being](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹² And they entered into a covenant [to seek Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#), with all [their heart](#) and with all [their being](#).

UST

¹² They solemnly made an agreement to worship very sincerely Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 15:13

be put to death

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “should die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

whether the person was small or great

This could mean: (1) a person's importance within the community is spoken of as if the person were small or great. Alternate translation: “whether the person was important or not” or (2) a young person is spoken of as if he were small and an old person is spoken of as if he were great. Alternate translation: “whether the person was young or old” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [does...seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹³ And any who does not [seek Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), will be killed, whether small or great, whether man or woman.

UST

¹³ They promised to execute all those who would not worship Yahweh, including those who were important and who were not important, both men and women.

2 Chronicles 15:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And they swore
- to Yahweh
- with a...voice

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- voice

ULT

¹⁴ And they swore to Yahweh with a great voice, and with a shout, and with trumpets and with horns.

UST

¹⁴ They shouted and blew trumpets and other horns while they solemnly promised to do that.

2 Chronicles 15:15

All Judah rejoiced

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that people from all over Judah rejoiced. Alternate translation: “People all over Judah rejoiced” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

with all their heart

The idiom “with all their heart” means “with complete devotion.” Alternate translation: “with complete devotion” or “wholeheartedly” (See: [Idiom](#))

he was found by them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 15:4](#). Alternate translation: “they found him” or “he permitted them to find him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- And...rejoiced
- their heart
- they swore
- they sought him
- Yahweh
- And...gave rest

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- rest, rested, restless
- seek, search, look for

ULT

¹⁵ And all [Judah rejoiced](#) about the oath, for with all [their heart they swore](#), and with all their will [they sought him](#), and he was found by them. And [Yahweh gave rest](#) to them all around.

UST

¹⁵ All the people who were living in Judah were happy to promise to do that because they had solemnly promised to do it very sincerely. They eagerly asked Yahweh to guide them, and he helped them. So he enabled them to have peace throughout their country.

2 Chronicles 15:16

a disgusting figure

This phrase refers to an idol.

Asa cut down the disgusting figure, ground it ... and burned it

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to cut down the figure. Alternate translation: "Asa made his workers cut down the disgusting figure, grind it ... and burn it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Maacah](#)
- [King](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [And...cut down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And also [Maacah](#), the mother of [King Asa](#), he took her away from being queen, because she made to Asherah an abominable image. And [Asa cut down](#) her abominable image, and crushed and burned at the brook Kidron.

UST

¹⁶ King Asa's grandmother Maacah had made a disgusting pole for worshiping the goddess Asherah. So Asa commanded his workers to cut down that pole, chop it into pieces, and burn it in the Kidron Valley. He did not allow Maacah to continue to influence the people because she was the mother of the previous king.

2 Chronicles 15:17

But the high places were not taken out of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But Asa did not command the people to take the high places out of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Asa's heart was completely devoted

The heart represents the person. Alternate translation: "Asa was completely devoted" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all his days

This refers to the whole period of time that Asa lived. Alternate translation: "the whole time that he lived" or "throughout his whole life" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from Israel](#)
- [the heart of](#)
- [Asa](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Asa](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But the high places they did not take away [from Israel](#). Nevertheless, [the heart of Asa](#) was undivided all his days.

UST

¹⁷ Although Asa's workers did not get rid of places where people worshiped idols, and those high places remained on the hills throughout Asa's reign. But still, Asa was determined to do what pleased Yahweh all during the years that he was alive.

2 Chronicles 15:18

the house of God

Here the word "house" represents the temple. Alternate translation: "the temple of God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sacred things of
- his father
- and his sacred things
- the house of
- God
- silver
- and gold

Translation Words - UST

- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- house, household
- silver

ULT

18 And he brought the sacred things of his father and his sacred things into the house of God, silver and gold and items.

UST

18 He ordered his workers to bring into God's temple all the silver and gold and other valuable items that he and his father had dedicated to God.

2 Chronicles 15:19

the thirty-fifth year

“year 35” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the reign of](#)
- [Asa](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And war was not until the 35th year
of the reign of Asa.

UST

¹⁹ There were no more wars in Judah
until Asa had been ruling Judah almost
thirty-five years.

2 Chronicles 16

2 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Asa did not trust Yahweh

When Baasha was building Ramah to blockade him, Asa asked the king of Aram to help him instead of trusting God to help him. This was sinful because he disobeyed Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

2 Chronicles 16:1

the thirty-sixth year

“year 36” (See: [Numbers](#))

built up Ramah

It is implied that the army of Baasha first captured Ramah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “captured and fortified Ramah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that he might not allow anyone to

Alternate translation: “so that no one could”

Translation Words - ULT

- of the reign of
- Asa
- to Asa
- Baasha
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Judah
- Judah
- Ramah
- one to go out

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Asa
- Asa
- Baasha
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- Ramah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹ In the 36th year of the reign of Asa, Baasha, the king of Israel, went up against Judah and built Ramah, so as to not allow one to go out or come in to Asa, the king of Judah.

UST

¹ When Asa had been ruling Judah for almost thirty-six years, King Baasha of Israel went with his army to attack Judah. They captured the town of Ramah north of Jerusalem and started to build a wall around it, in order to prevent any people from entering or leaving the area in Judah that King Asa ruled.

2 Chronicles 16:2

Then Asa brought the silver ... of the king's house, and sent it

Asa would have had his workers gather the gold and silver for him.
Alternate translation: "Then Asa told his workers to take the silver ... of the king's house, and to take it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ben Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He said

This means he spoke by means of his servants. Asa told his servants what to say to Ben Hadad and they did. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Asa told his servants to say to Ben Hadad" or "Through his servants, Asa said to Ben Hadad" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [And...brought](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [and the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

² And [Asa brought silver and gold](#) from the treasuries of [the house of Yahweh and the house of the king](#). And he sent to Ben Hadad, [the king of Aram](#), who was dwelling in Damascus, saying,

UST

² So Asa told his workers to take all the silver and gold that was in the storerooms of the temple and in his own palace, and take and give it to Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who was ruling in Damascus. He sent him a message, saying,

2 Chronicles 16:3

Let there be a covenant between me and you ... between my father and your father

A covenant being between two people represents those two people having a covenant with each other. Alternate translation: "Let us have a covenant with each other ... with my father and your father" or "Let us make a peace treaty ... with my father and your father" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Look, I have sent

Alternate translation: "As proof that I want a treaty with you, I have sent"

Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel

Breaking a covenant represents canceling it and not doing what one has promised to do. Alternate translation: "Cancel your covenant with Baasha king of Israel" or "Do not be loyal to Baasha king of Israel as you promised in your covenant with him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel

Asa wanted Ben Hadad to attack Israel. Ben Hadad could only do that if he broke his covenant with the king of Israel. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel, and attack Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

leave me alone

This is an idiom. Here Asa speaks of himself to represent himself along with his army. Alternate translation: "not attack me" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A covenant](#)
- [your covenant](#)
- [my father](#)
- [your father](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [Go](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [covenant](#)

ULT

³ "A [covenant](#) between me and between you, and between [my father](#) and between [your father](#). Behold, I have sent to you [silver and gold](#). [Go](#), break [your covenant](#) with [Baasha, the king of Israel](#), and he will go up from against me."

UST

³ "I want there to be a peace treaty between me and you, like there was between my father and your father. Look, I am sending you much silver and gold. So please cancel the treaty that you have made with Baasha, the king of Israel, in order that he will take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army."

- Israel, Israelites
- Baasha
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- king, kingship
- silver
- walk, walked

2 Chronicles 16:4

sent the commanders of his armies against the cities

Here Asa's armies are represented by their commanders. Alternate translation: "sent his armies to attack the cities" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ijon, Dan, Abel Maim

These are the names of cities in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁴ And Ben Hadad listened to [King Asa](#) and he sent [the chiefs of](#) the armies which belonged to him against the cities of [Israel](#). And they struck Ijon, and Dan, and Abel Maim ^[1], and all the stores of the cities of [Naphtali](#).

UST

⁴ Ben Hadad agreed to do what King Asa suggested. He sent the commanders of his armies with their soldiers to attack some of the towns in Israel. They captured Ijon, Dan, Abel Maim, and all the cities in the tribe of Naphtali where supplies were kept.

2 Chronicles 16:5

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he stopped building up Ramah, and let his work cease

Here Asa represents himself and his army. "his work" refers to other work that his workers were doing in Ramah. Alternate translation: "he commanded his army to stop fortifying Ramah and doing other work there" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

building up

Alternate translation: "fortifying"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Baasha](#)
- [Ramah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Baasha](#)
- [Ramah](#)

ULT

⁵ And it happened when [Baasha](#) heard, then he ceased building [Ramah](#), and he stopped his work.

UST

⁵ When Baasha heard about that, he commanded his troops to stop fortifying Ramah.

2 Chronicles 16:6

took all Judah

This refers to all the men who live in Judah. Alternate translation: “took all the men of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

timbers

Timbers are large pieces of wood used to build houses or walls.

Baasha had been

Here “Baasha” refers to his workers. Alternate translation: “Baasha’s workers had been” (See: [Metonymy](#))

building up ... to build up

Alternate translation: “fortifying ... to fortify”

Then King Asa used

Here “King Asa” represents his workers. Alternate translation: “Then King Asa had his workers use” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Geba

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [And...Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [Mizpah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁶ And [King Asa](#) took all [Judah](#). And they carried away the stones of [Ramah](#) and its wood with which [Baasha](#) had been building, and he built with them Geba and [Mizpah](#).

UST

⁶ Then King Asa gathered all the men of Judah, and they took away from Ramah all the stones and timber that Baasha’s men had been using to build the wall around that town. They took those materials to the cities of Geba and Mizpah north of Jerusalem and built walls around them.

2 Chronicles 16:7

Hanani

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

out of your hand

Here the king's "hand" refers to his control. This means that his army was unable to conquer the king of Aram's army. Alternate translation: "from you" or "from your control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [escaped](#)
- [from your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁷ And at that time Hanani the seer came to [Asa, the king of Judah](#), and he said to him, "Because you relied on [the king of Aram](#), and you did not rely on [Yahweh your God](#), therefore the army of [the king of Aram](#) [escaped from your hand](#)."

UST

⁷ At that time the prophet Hanani went to King Asa and said to him, "Because you relied on the king of Aram and not on Yahweh our God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped from you."

2 Chronicles 16:8

Were not the Cushites and the Libyans a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen?

Hanani uses this rhetorical question to remind Asa of a previous victory. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "The Cushites and the Libyans were a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Libyans

These are people from Libya. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he gave you victory

This means that king Asa's army was able to defeat the opposing army. Alternate translation: "he gave your army victory" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [into your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁸ Were not the Cushites and the Libyans an abundant army with very many chariots and horsemen? Yet, because you relied on [Yahweh](#), he gave them [into your hand](#).

UST

⁸ Remember that the huge armies from Ethiopia were very powerful. But when you relied on Yahweh, he enabled your army to defeat them.

2 Chronicles 16:9

the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth

This speaks of Yahweh seeing everything that happens everywhere as if his eyes were a person that ran all over the earth. Alternate translation: "Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

so that he might show himself strong on behalf of

This means that Yahweh shows people that he is strong by protecting his people. Alternate translation: "and Yahweh protects with his strength" or "so that he may show his strength by protecting" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

those whose hearts are perfect toward him

This speaks of a people's will and desires as their "hearts." To be "perfect toward" something means to be completely devoted to that person or thing. Alternate translation: "those who are completely committed to following him" or "those who are completely devoted to following him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [their heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

⁹ For [Yahweh](#), his eyes, are going quickly in all [the earth](#) to strengthen himself with [their heart](#) undivided to him. You have acted foolishly regarding this. For from now, there will be with you wars."

UST

⁹ That happened because Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth, and he strengthens those who completely trust him. You have done a very foolish thing, so from now on other armies will be fighting your army."

2 Chronicles 16:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Asa
- Asa
- in the house of
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- Asa
- house, household
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁰ And Asa was angry at the seer; and he put him in the house of the stocks, for in rage with him regarding this. And Asa oppressed some of the people at that time.

UST

¹⁰ Asa was very angry with the prophet because of what the prophet had said. So he commanded his officials to put Hanani in prison. At that same time, he started to treat some of his people very cruelly.

2 Chronicles 16:11

from first to last

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “from the first thing that he did to the last thing that he did” or “everything he did” (See: [Idiom](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [the kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

11 And behold, the matters of [Asa](#), the first things and the last things, behold, they are written on the scroll of [the kings of Judah](#) and Israel.

UST

11 All the things that Asa did while he was ruling, from the time he started to rule until he died, are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

2 Chronicles 16:12

the thirty-ninth year

“year 39” (See: [Numbers](#))

Asa was afflicted with a disease in his feet

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Asa had a disease in his feet” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [of his reign](#)
- [he did...seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹² And [Asa](#) became sick in the 39th year [of his reign](#), in his feet, until increasing his sickness. And yet, in his sickness, [he did](#) not [seek Yahweh](#), but among the healers.

UST

¹² When Asa had been ruling for almost thirty-nine years, he was afflicted with a disease in his feet. The disease was very severe, but in spite of that, he did not request help from Yahweh. Instead he sought help only from doctors.

2 Chronicles 16:13

Asa slept with his ancestors, dying in

The phrase “slept with his ancestors” is a euphemism for dying.
Alternate translation: “Asa died during” (See: [Euphemism](#))

in the forty-first year of his reign

“in year 41 of his reign” or “when he reigned almost 41 years” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asa](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [of his reign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asa](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹³ And [Asa](#) lied down with [his fathers](#),
[and he died](#) in the 41st year [of his reign](#).

UST

¹³ Asa had been ruling for about forty-one years when he died.

2 Chronicles 16:14

which he had dug out for himself

Asa would have had his workers prepare his tomb for him. Alternate translation: “which his workers had dug out for him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

bier

A bier is a table on which a dead body is placed at a funeral.

sweet odors and various kinds of spices prepared by skilled perfumers

Putting plants that smell good with the dead body was one of the burial customs of the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “sweet smelling plants prepared by people skilled in this custom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

prepared by skilled perfumers

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that skilled perfumers had prepared” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

14 And they buried him in his graves, which he hollowed out for himself in the city of [David](#). And they laid him on a bed which he filled with spices and kinds of mixtures with an ointment mixture of a work. And they burned for him a great burning until abundance.

16:4 ^[1]

UST

14 People buried him in the tomb that his workers had made for him in the part of Jerusalem called “the city of David.” They laid his corpse on a bed covered with spices and various perfumes that had been mixed together. They also lit a huge fire to honor him.

2 Chronicles 17

2 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Jehoshaphat.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jehoshaphat trusted and obeyed God. Because of this, God made him strong. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Chronicles 17:1

in his place

Alternate translation: "after his father"

strengthened himself against Israel

Jehoshaphat prepared the army for battle. Alternate translation: "prepared the army to be able to battle Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹ And [Jehoshaphat his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place, and he strengthened himself against [Israel](#).

UST

¹ Then Asa's son Jehoshaphat became the king of Judah, and he enabled his army to become very strong, with the result that they could resist attacks from the army of Israel.

2 Chronicles 17:2

He placed forces

Alternate translation: "He places soldiers"

garrisons

military encampments set up to protect the people

Translation Words - ULT

- a force
- Judah
- Judah
- Ephraim
- Asa
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- Asa
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

² And he placed a force in all the unassailable cities of Judah, and he placed garrisons in the land of Judah and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had captured.

UST

² He put soldiers in all the cities in Judah around which they had built walls, and he put soldiers in other places in Judah and in the towns in the tribe of Ephraim that soldiers of his father Asa had captured.

2 Chronicles 17:3

Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat

Here “was with” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “God supported him” or “God helped him” (See: [Idiom](#))

walked in the first ways of his father

Here the way a person lives and conducts himself is spoken of as if it were walking. For most of David’s life he lived righteously and followed Yahweh closely. Alternate translation: “lived in the first ways of his father David” or “lived righteously as his father David had done in his earlier years” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

did not seek the Baals

This means that he did not worship the Baal idols in order to seek help from them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

walked in

The word “walked” is used here as an idiom. Alternate translation: “followed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [he walked](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)
- [he did...seek](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

³ And [Yahweh](#) was with [Jehoshaphat](#) because [he walked](#) in the first ways of [David his father](#), and [he did](#) not [seek](#) the Baals. ^[1]

UST

³ Yahweh helped Jehoshaphat because in his earlier years, when he first began his rule, he did the things that pleased Yahweh just as his ancestor King David had done. Jehoshaphat did not worship Baal.

2 Chronicles 17:4

not after the behavior of Israel

“and did not behave in the ways of the people of Israel.” This refers to how most of the people of Israel did not follow Yahweh. Alternate translation: “and did not follow the evil practices that were common in Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- his father
- he sought
- he walked
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked

ULT

⁴ Instead, [the God of his father](#) he [sought](#), and in his commandments he [walked](#) and not according to the work of [Israel](#).

UST

⁴ Instead, he sought advice from the God whom his father had worshiped, and he obeyed God's commands and he did not do the evil things that the kings of Israel kept doing.

2 Chronicles 17:5

Yahweh established the rule in his hand

The phrase “his hand” represents Jehoshaphat’s control. Alternate translation: “Yahweh enabled him to completely control his kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

honor in abundance

The word “honor” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “was greatly honored” or “the people greatly honored him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- in his hand
- Judah
- tribute
- to Jehoshaphat

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- grain offering
- hand

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh established the kingdom in his hand, and all Judah gave tribute to Jehoshaphat. And there was to him wealth and glory in abundance.

UST

⁵ Yahweh enabled him to completely control his kingdom. All the people of Judah brought gifts to him, with the result that he became very rich and was greatly honored.

2 Chronicles 17:6

His heart

Here the king is represented by his “heart” to emphasize his will and desires. Alternate translation: “He” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

⁶ And [his heart](#) was high in the ways of [Yahweh](#). And also, he took away the high places and the Asherim [from Judah](#).

UST

⁶ He was completely devoted to doing what pleased Yahweh. His workers got rid of the places on hilltops where idols were worshiped and the places where poles were set up and used to worship the goddess Asherah all throughout Judah.

2 Chronicles 17:7

the third

“year 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ben-Hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of his reign](#)
- [his chiefs](#)
- [and Obadiah](#)
- [and Zechariah](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [chief, leader](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

⁷ And in the third year [of his reign](#) he sent [his chiefs](#), Ben-Hail, [and Obadiah](#), [and Zechariah](#), and Nethanel, and Micaiah, to teach in the cities of [Judah](#).

UST

⁷ When he had been ruling Judah for almost three years, he sent some of his officials—Ben-Hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah—to teach the people in various cities in Judah.

2 Chronicles 17:8

Shemaiah, Nathaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah ... Elishama and Jehoram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [and Adonijah](#)
- [the priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Adonijah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)

ULT

⁸ And with them [the Levites](#): Shemaiah, and Nathaniah, and Zebadiah, and Asahel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehonathan, [and Adonijah](#), and Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah, [the Levites](#); and with them, Elishama and Jehoram, [the priests](#).

UST

⁸ With them he sent several descendants of Levi—Shemaiah, Nathaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah, along with two priests, Elishama and Jehoram.

2 Chronicles 17:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Judah
- the law of
- Yahweh
- Judah
- among the people

Translation Words - UST

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- Yahweh
- Judah
- Judea, Judah
- people, people group

ULT

⁹ And they taught in Judah, and with them, the scroll of the law of Yahweh. And they went around in all the cities of Judah, and they taught among the people.

UST

⁹ They took with them a scroll on which was written the laws of Yahweh and they taught them to the people in all the towns throughout Judah.

2 Chronicles 17:10

Terror of Yahweh fell on all the kingdoms of the lands

The word “terror” can be expressed with the adjective “afraid.” Also, this speaks of the people becoming afraid as if the terror were something that fell upon them. Alternate translation: “The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

against Jehoshaphat

Here Jehoshaphat represents his army. Alternate translation: “against Jehoshaphat’s army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the dread of
- Yahweh
- the kingdoms of
- the lands
- Judah
- Jehoshaphat

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- earth, land
- kingdom

ULT

¹⁰ And the dread of Yahweh was on all the kingdoms of the lands that were around Judah, and they did not fight with Jehoshaphat.

UST

¹⁰ The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them if they fought against Judah, so they did not try to fight Jehoshaphat’s army.

2 Chronicles 17:11

7,700 rams, and 7,700 goats

The number can also be written as seven thousand seven hundred. This is a description of the flocks that the Arabians brought Jehoshaphat. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [to Jehoshaphat](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [and...silver](#)
- [a...load](#)
- [flocks](#)
- [rams](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

11 And some of [the Philistines](#) were bringing [to Jehoshaphat tribute](#), and a [silver load](#). Also, the Arabians were bringing to him [flocks](#), 7,700 [rams](#) and 7,700 goats.

UST

11 Some people from Philistia brought gifts to Jehoshaphat, and they also brought to him the silver that he demanded that they pay to him. Some Arabs brought to him 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats.

2 Chronicles 17:12

He built fortresses and store cities

Jehoshaphat did not build these things himself, rather he commanded his workers to build them. Alternate translation: “His workers built fortresses and store cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [was walking](#)
- [in Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹² And it happened [Jehoshaphat was walking](#) and becoming increasingly great. And he built [in Judah](#) palaces and cities of stores.

UST

¹² Jehoshaphat continued to become more powerful. His workers built forts and places to store supplies in various towns in Judah.

2 Chronicles 17:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- mighty ones of
- strength
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

¹³ And much work was to him in the cities of Judah, and men of battle, mighty ones of strength in Jerusalem.

UST

¹³ Then they put large amounts of supplies in those storehouses. Jehoshaphat also placed in Jerusalem soldiers who were experienced.

2 Chronicles 17:14

These were their divisions listed by the name of their fathers' houses

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The divisions by the name of their fathers' houses were as follows" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the commanders of thousands

The phrase "commander of thousands" is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word "thousands" represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers" or (2) the word translated as "thousands" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

Adnah

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

300,000

"three hundred thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [for Judah](#)
- [chiefs of](#)
- [the chief](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [chief, leader](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And these were their mustering [according to the house of their fathers: for Judah, chiefs of thousands, Adnah the chief, and with him mighty ones of strength, 300,000;](#)

UST

¹⁴ The leaders and numbers from each tribe were as follows: From the tribe of Judah, Adnah was the leader of the soldiers, and he commanded 300,000 soldiers.

2 Chronicles 17:15

Jehohanan

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

280,000

“two hundred and eighty thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)
- [the chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief, leader](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and on [his hand](#), Jehohanan [the chief](#) and with him 280,000;

UST

¹⁵ His assistant was Jehohanan, who commanded 280,000 soldiers.

2 Chronicles 17:16

Amasiah son of Zichri

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

200,000

“two hundred thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

¹⁶ and on [his hand](#) Amasiah [the son of](#) Zichri, who freely offered himself [to Yahweh](#), and with him 200,000 [mighty ones of strength](#).

UST

¹⁶ Next was Zicri's son Amasiah, who volunteered to serve Yahweh in this way; he commanded 200,000 courageous soldiers.

2 Chronicles 17:17

Eliada

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

200,000

“two hundred thousand men” or “200,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#)
- [a mighty one of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

17 And from [Benjamin: a mighty one of strength](#), Eliada, and with him, ones armed with bow and shield, 200,000;

UST

17 From the tribe of Benjamin, Eliada, who was a brave soldier, was the leader of the soldiers; he commanded 200,000 men who had bows, arrows, and shields.

2 Chronicles 17:18

Jehozabad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

180,000

“one hundred and eighty thousand men” or “180,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and on [his hand](#), Jehozabad and with him 180,000 equipped for war.

UST

¹⁸ Next was Jehozabad, who commanded 180,000 men who had weapons for fighting battles.

2 Chronicles 17:19

besides those

Alternate translation: "in addition to"

Translation Words - ULT

- ministered
- to the king
- the king
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- to minister, ministry
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁹ These ministered to the king, besides those whom the king placed in the cities of fortification in all Judah.

17:3 ^[1], and some modern versions leave it out.

UST

¹⁹ Those were the soldiers who served the king in Jerusalem, in addition to the men whom the king had placed in the other cities in Judah that had walls around them.

2 Chronicles 18

2 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The will of God is accomplished, even when people try to avoid it. Ahab tried to disguise himself to hide from the soldiers of Aram but an arrow still hit and killed him. (See: [will of God](#))

2 Chronicles 18:1

Now Jehoshaphat had great riches and honor; he allied himself with Ahab

The word “now” is used here to mark background information. This happened before Ahab went down to Samaria. (See: [Background Information](#))

he allied himself with Ahab

Alternate translation: “he aligned himself with Ahab” or “he made himself a friend of Ahab”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Jehoshaphat](#)
- [to Ahab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

¹ And it was [to Jehoshaphat](#) wealth and glory in abundance; and he became son-in-law [to Ahab](#).

UST

¹ Jehoshaphat became very wealthy and was greatly honored. But then he arranged for one of his family to marry someone from the family of King Ahab of Israel.

2 Chronicles 18:2

Ahab killed many sheep and oxen for him and the people

This means that he had these animals slaughtered to prepare a feast for the people. Also, Ahab himself would not have prepared the animals, but rather would have commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation: "Ahab commanded his workers to slaughter many sheep and oxen for a feast for Jehoshaphat and the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

² And he went down at the end of years to [Ahab](#) in Samaria, and [Ahab](#) sacrificed for him [sheep](#) and oxen in abundance and for the people who were with him. And he incited him to go up against Ramoth Gilead.

UST

² Several years later, he went down from Jerusalem to Samaria to visit Ahab. Ahab welcomed him, and the people who had come with him by slaughtering many sheep and cattle for a feast.

2 Chronicles 18:3

Will you go with me to Ramoth Gilead

Here Ahab is requesting for Jehoshaphat to join him with his army to make war against Ramoth Gilead. This can be written explicitly. Also, in this question each of the kings represents themselves accompanied by their armies. Alternate translation: "Will you and your army go with my army to attack the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

I am like you, and my people are like your people

Jehoshaphat is stating his allegiance to Ahab. Alternate translation: "I offer myself and my soldiers to you to use in any way you want" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³ And [Ahab, the king of Israel](#), said to [Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#), "Will you go with me to Ramoth Gilead?" And he said to him, "Like me, like you, and like your people, [my people](#), and with you in battle."

UST

³ Then he asked Jehoshaphat, "Will you and your army go with my army to attack the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead?" Jehoshaphat replied, "My soldiers and I are at your orders. We will go to war when you tell us to go."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [my people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

2 Chronicles 18:4

king of Israel

This refers to King Ahab.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Israel
- seek
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

⁴ And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "Please seek as the day the word of Yahweh."

UST

⁴ Then he added, "But we should ask Yahweh first, to find out what he wants us to do."

2 Chronicles 18:5

four hundred men

“400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

should I not

Here about refers to himself accompanied by his army as himself.
Alternate translation: “should we not” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

will give it into the hand of the king

Here the king’s “hand” refers to his control. This means that God will enable them to defeat the people at Ramoth Gilead. Alternate translation: “will enable your army to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- the prophets
- God
- into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

⁵ And the king of Israel gathered the prophets, 400 men. And he said to them, “Should we go against Ramoth Gilead in battle, or should I refrain?” And they said, “Go up, and God will give into the hand of the king.”

UST

⁵ So the king of Israel gathered all his four hundred prophets and asked them, “Should we go to fight the people of Ramoth, or should we not?” They replied, “Yes, go and attack them because God will enable your army to defeat them.”

2 Chronicles 18:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- prophet
- of Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat

ULT

⁶ And Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here another prophet of Yahweh, that we might seek from him?"

UST

⁶ But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there no prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?"

2 Chronicles 18:7

Micaiah son of Imlah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- to seek
- Yahweh
- that is good
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

⁷ And [the king of Israel](#) said to [Jehoshaphat](#), “Still one man [to seek Yahweh](#) from him. But I myself hate him for nothing does he prophesy about me [that is good](#), but all his days evil. He is Micaiah [the son of Imlah](#).” And [Jehoshaphat](#) said, “Let not [the king](#) say thus.”

UST

⁷ The king of Israel replied, “There is still one man here, whom we can ask to find out what Yahweh wants, His name is Micaiah son of Imlah. But I hate him because he never says that anything good about me. He always predicts that bad things will happen to me.”
Jehoshaphat replied, “King Ahab, you should not say that!”

2 Chronicles 18:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- And...called
- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- declare, proclaim, announce
- king, kingship

ULT

⁸ And the king of Israel called to one officer, and he said, "Hasten Micaiah the son of Imlah."

UST

⁸ So the king of Israel told one of his officials to summon Micaiah immediately.

2 Chronicles 18:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- and Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Judah
- his throne
- the gate of
- Samaria
- the prophets

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- Samaria, Samaritan
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingship
- throne, enthroned

ULT

⁹ And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting, each on his throne, clothed with robes. And they were sitting at a threshing floor at the entrance of the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were prophesying before them.

UST

⁹ Now the king of Israel and the king of Judah were sitting there on thrones, wearing their royal robes. They were sitting by the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were busy saying words of prophecy to them.

2 Chronicles 18:10

Kenaanah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

horns of iron

This is a reference to the horns of a bull but they made of metal.

you will push the Arameans until they are consumed

The prophet's actions are a symbolic metaphor that illustrates the way that Ahab would defeat the Arameans. Ahab's army will win with great strength, as a bull attacks another animal. Alternate translation: "With horns like these, your army will keep attacking the army of Aram like a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them" (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Metaphor](#))

until they are consumed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "until you consume them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [they are finished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [Zedekiah the son of](#) Kenaanah made for himself horns of iron, and he said, "Thus says [Yahweh](#): With these you will gore Aram until [they are finished](#)."

UST

¹⁰ One of them whose name was Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, had made from iron something that resembled the horns of a bull. He proclaimed to Ahab, "This is what Yahweh says: 'With horns like these, your army will keep attacking the army of Aram like a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them.'"

2 Chronicles 18:11

has given it into the hand of the king

Here the king's "hand" refers to his control. This means that God will enable them to defeat the people at Ramoth Gilead. Alternate translation: "has allowed the king to capture it" or "will allow your armies to capture it" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophets
- and succeed
- Yahweh
- into the hand of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand
- king, kingship
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

11 And all the prophets were prophesying thus, saying, "Go up to Ramoth Gilead and succeed. And Yahweh will give into the hand of the king."

UST

11 All the other prophets of Ahab agreed. They said, "Yes! If you attack Ramoth in Gilead, you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you to defeat them."

2 Chronicles 18:12

Micaiah

Translate this man's name the same as in [2 Chronicles 17:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Look

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

the words of the prophets with one mouth are favorable to the king

The prophets all saying the same thing is spoken of as if they all spoke with the same mouth. The phrase "the words of the prophets" represents the message that the prophets declare. Alternate translation: "the prophets all declare that good things will happen to the king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your words

Alternate translation: "what you say"

Translation Words - ULT

- [went](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [good](#)
- [good](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹² And the messenger who [went](#) to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, "Behold, the words of [the prophets](#), one mouth, [good](#) to [the king](#). And please let your word be as one from them, and speak [good](#)."

UST

¹² The messenger who went to summon Micaiah said to him, "Listen to me! All the other prophets are predicting the same thing. You had better do as they are doing!"

2 Chronicles 18:13

As Yahweh lives

“as surely as Yahweh is alive.” The people use this expression to show that what they say next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [As...lives](#)
- [my God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

13 And Micaiah said, “As [Yahweh lives](#), surely that which [my God](#) says, it I will speak.”

UST

13 But Micaiah said, “As surely as Yahweh lives, I will tell him only what he tells me to say.”

2 Chronicles 18:14

or not

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “or should we not go” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

should we go

The word “we” refers to Ahab, Jehoshaphat, and their armies but not to Micaiah. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Micaiah](#)
- [and succeed](#)
- [into your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Micah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

14 And he came to [the king](#), and [the king](#) said to him, “[Micaiah](#), should we go against Ramoth Gilead for battle, or should I refrain?” And he said, “Go up [and succeed](#). And they will be given [into your hand](#).”

UST

14 When Micaiah arrived, the king of Israel asked him, “Should we go to attack Ramoth, or not?” Micaiah replied, “Sure, go! Yahweh will enable your army to defeat them!”

2 Chronicles 18:15

How many times must I require ... in the name of Yahweh?

Ahab asks this question out of frustration to rebuke Micaiah.

Alternate translation: "Many times I have required ... in the name of Yahweh." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in the name of Yahweh

Here the word "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "as the representative of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [must I...make you swear](#)
- [truth](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [the king](#) said to him, "How many times [must I](#) myself [make you swear](#) that you will speak not to me, only [truth in the name of Yahweh](#)?"

UST

¹⁵ But King Ahab wished to appear reverent toward Yahweh in front of Jehoshaphat. He said to Micaiah, "I keep telling you to say only what Yahweh tells you to say!"

2 Chronicles 18:16

I saw all Israel

Here “all Israel” refers to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “I saw the entire army of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

like sheep who have no shepherd

The people of the army are compared to sheep that have no one to lead them because their shepherd, the king, has died. (See: [Simile](#))

These have no shepherd

Yahweh speaks of the king as if he were a shepherd. Just like a shepherd is responsible to care for and protect his sheep, the king is responsible to lead and protect his people. Alternate translation: “These people no longer have a leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [master](#)
- [they will turn](#)
- [to his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

16 And he said, “I saw all [Israel](#) scattered on the hills, like sheep which do not have to them one who shepherds. And [Yahweh](#) said, ‘No [master](#) to these; [they will turn](#), each [to his house](#) in peace.’”

UST

16 Then Micaiah replied, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all the troops of Israel scattered on the mountains. They seemed to be like sheep that did not have a shepherd. And Yahweh said, ‘Their master has been killed. So tell them all to go home peacefully.’”

2 Chronicles 18:17

Did I not tell you ... but only disaster?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that he had spoken the truth about Micaiah. Alternate translation: "I told you ... but only disaster!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat
- good

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁷ And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not say to you, he will not prophesy about me good, but only evil?"

UST

¹⁷ Ahab turned to Jehoshaphat and said, "I told you that Micaiah never says anything good will happen to me! He only predicts bad things for me."

2 Chronicles 18:18

on his right hand and on his left

This means that they were standing beside him on his left side and his right side. Alternate translation: “by his right side and by his left side” (See: [Idiom](#))

on his left

This implies his left hand. Alternate translation: “on his left hand” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [standing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

ULT

18 And he said, “Therefore, hear the word of [Yahweh](#): I saw [Yahweh](#) sitting on [his throne](#) and all the host of [heaven standing](#) on his right and his left.

UST

18 But Micaiah continued, saying, “Listen to what Yahweh showed to me! In a vision I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, with all the armies of heaven standing around him, on his right side and on his left side.

2 Chronicles 18:19

entice

This means to attract someone by offering something appealing.

fall at Ramoth Gilead

Ahab dying in battle is spoken of as if he will fall. Alternate translation: “die at Ramoth Gilead” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

One said this and another that

This indicates that there was more than one opinion. The words “One ... and another” refer to two or more angels in the heavenly host who were responding to Yahweh’s question in the previous verse.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and he will fall](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Yahweh](#) said, ‘Who will entice [Ahab, the king of Israel](#), so he will go up, [and he will fall](#) at Ramoth Gilead?’ And this speaker said thus, and this speaker thus.

UST

¹⁹ And Yahweh said, ‘Who can persuade Ahab, the king of Israel, to go to fight against the people of Ramoth, in order that he may be killed there?’ Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

2 Chronicles 18:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...went out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁰ And the spirit went out, and he stood before Yahweh. And he said, 'I myself will entice him.' And Yahweh said to him, 'With what?'

UST

²⁰ Finally one spirit forward and said, 'I can do it!' Yahweh asked him, 'How will you do it?'

2 Chronicles 18:21

become a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets

Here the word “spirit” refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words “the mouth” represents what they will say. Alternate translation: “cause all his prophets to speak lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will go out](#)
- [Go out](#)
- [his prophets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²¹ And he said, ‘[I will go out](#) and I will become a spirit of deception in the mouth of all [his prophets](#).’ And he said, ‘You will entice, and also you will be able. [Go out](#) and do thus.’

UST

²¹ The spirit replied, ‘I will go and inspire all of Ahab’s prophets to tell lies.’ Yahweh said, ‘You will be successful; go and do it!’

2 Chronicles 18:22

Now see, Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Now pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: Yahweh"

has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours

Here the word "spirit" refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words "the mouth" represents what they will say. Alternate translation: "has caused your prophets to speak lies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [a spirit of](#)
- [your prophets](#)
- [disaster](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²² And now, behold, [Yahweh](#) placed [a spirit of](#) deception in the mouth of these [your prophets](#), and [Yahweh](#), he has spoken against you [disaster](#)."

UST

²² So now I tell you that Yahweh has caused your prophets to lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you."

2 Chronicles 18:23

Kenaanah

Translate this man's name the same as in [2 Chronicles 18:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?

Zedekiah asks this sarcastic question to insult and rebuke Micaiah. Alternate translation: "Do not think that Yahweh's Spirit left me to speak to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the Spirit of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

ULT

²³ And [Zedekiah the son of](#) Kenaanah, drew near, and he struck Micaiah on the cheek. And he said, "Where is this, the way [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) passed over from me to speak with you?"

UST

²³ Then Zedekiah walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, "Do you think that Yahweh's spirit left me in order to speak to you?"

2 Chronicles 18:24

Look

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

you will know that

"you will know the answer to your question." If Zedekiah's rhetorical question is translated as a statement, this phrase may be translated to supply implicit information. Alternate translation: "you will know that the Spirit of Yahweh has spoken to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

24 And Micaiah said, "Behold, you will see on that day, when you go chamber by chamber to hide yourself."

UST

24 Micaiah replied, "You will find out for yourself to which of us Yahweh's spirit has truly spoken on the day when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean soldiers!"

2 Chronicles 18:25

king of Israel

This refers to Ahab.

Amon

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and return him](#)
- [the chief of](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [the king of Israel](#) said, “Take Micaiah [and return him](#) to Amon, [the chief of](#) the city, and to Joash, [the son of the king](#),

UST

²⁵ King Ahab commanded his soldiers, “Arrest Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of this city, and to my son Joash.

2 Chronicles 18:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- in the house of
- and feed him
- bread of
- my returning

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- bread
- devour
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁶ and say, 'Thus says the king: Put this in the house of imprisonment and feed him bread of oppression and water of oppression, until my returning in peace.'

UST

²⁶ Tell them that I have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!

2 Chronicles 18:27

If you return safely

This describes something that would not happen. Yahweh had already told Micaiah that the king would not return safely. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [certainly](#)
- [you...return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [O peoples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²⁷ And Micaiah said, "If you [certainly return](#) in peace, [Yahweh](#) did not speak with me." And he said, "Hear, [O peoples](#), all of them!"

UST

²⁷ Micaiah replied, "If you return safely, it will be clear that it was not Yahweh who told me what to say to you!" Then he said to all those who were standing there, "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

2 Chronicles 18:28

Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up against

Here the kings represent themselves accompanied by their armies.
Alternate translation: "Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah led their armies up against" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

went up against

Alternate translation: "fought against"

Ramoth Gilead

Translate the name of this place as you did in [2 Chronicles 18:2](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#) (2)

ULT

²⁸ And [the king of Israel](#) went up, [and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#), against Ramoth Gilead.

UST

²⁸ So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to Ramoth in Gilead.

2 Chronicles 18:29

disguise

This means to change the usual appearance so as not to be identified.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Israel
- Jehoshaphat

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁹ And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and go into the battle, and now put on your garments." And the king of Israel disguised himself, and they went into the battle.

UST

²⁹ King Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "I will put on different clothes, in order that no one will recognize that I am the king. But you should wear your royal robe." So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they both went into the battle.

2 Chronicles 18:30

Do not attack the unimportant or the important soldiers

By mentioning both “the unimportant” and “the important soldiers,” the king meant all soldiers. Alternate translation: “Do not attack any of the soldiers” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [had commanded](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

³⁰ And the king of Aram [had commanded the chiefs of](#) the chariots which were to him, saying, “Do not fight the small or the great, but with [the king of Israel](#) alone.”

UST

³⁰ The king of Aram had told his soldiers who were driving the chariots, “Attack only the king of Israel! Do not attack anyone else.”

2 Chronicles 18:31

That is the king of Israel

Jehoshaphat was wrongly identified as the king of Israel because Ahab had insisted that he wear kingly robes.

God turned them away from him

Alternate translation: "God caused them to stop pursuing him"

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Israel
- And...cried out
- and Yahweh
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³¹ And it happened when the chiefs of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, and they said, "It is the king of Israel." And they turned against him to fight. And Jehoshaphat cried out, and Yahweh helped him, and God incited them from him.

UST

³¹ So when the soldiers who were driving the Aramean chariots saw Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes, they thought, "He must be the king of Israel!"

2 Chronicles 18:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- the king of
- Israel
- and they turned back

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- return, turn back

ULT

³² And it happened when the chiefs of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, and they turned back from after him.

UST

³² So they turned to attack him. But when Jehoshaphat cried out, Yahweh helped him, and they realized that he was not the king of Israel. And God caused them to stop pursuing him.

2 Chronicles 18:33

drew his bow at random

This could mean: (1) he took aim to shoot a soldier without knowing that it was Ahab or (2) he drew his bow to shoot without any specific target in mind.

between the joints of his armor

This is a place where two pieces of armor meet and is susceptible to arrows and swords.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- your hand
- and bring me out

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- king, kingship

ULT

33 And a man drew the bow in his innocence and struck the king of Israel between the joinings and between the armor. And he said to the charioteer, "Turn your hand and bring me out from the camp, for I have been seriously wounded."

UST

33 But one Aramean soldier shot an arrow at Ahab, without knowing who he was. The arrow struck Ahab between the places where the parts of his armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "Turn the chariot around and take me out of here! I have been severely wounded!"

2 Chronicles 18:34

the king of Israel was held up in his chariot

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone held the king of Israel up in his chariot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [set up](#)
- [And he died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

³⁴ And the battle went up that day, and the king of [Israel](#) was [set up](#) in the chariot opposite Aram until the evening. [And he died](#) at the time of the going of the sun.

UST

³⁴ The battle continued all the day. Ahab was sitting propped up in his chariot, facing the Aramean soldiers. And late in the afternoon, when the sun was setting, he died.

2 Chronicles 19

2 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Levite judges

Jehoshaphat appointed many Levites to be judges and told them to be very fair. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [judge](#), [judgment](#))

2 Chronicles 19:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Judah
- And...returned
- his house
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- house, household
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

ULT

¹ And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah returned to his house in peace, to Jerusalem.

UST

¹ When King Jehoshaphat returned safely to his palace in Jerusalem,

2 Chronicles 19:2

Hanani, the seer

"Hanani" is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 16:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

went out to meet him

Here the word "him" refers to Jehoshaphat.

Should you be helping the wicked? Should you be loving those who hate Yahweh?

These questions expect negative answers to make the point that Jehoshaphat should not have helped Ahab. Alternate translation: "You should not help the wicked! You should not love those who hate Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the wicked

This refers to wicked people in general. Alternate translation: "wicked people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

anger from Yahweh is on you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **anger**, you could express the same idea with the word "angry." This phrase can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is angry with you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But...went out
- Jehu
- the son of
- his face
- King
- Jehoshaphat
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- you love

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehu
- face, facial
- king, kingship

ULT

² But Jehu, the son of Hanani the seer, went out to his face, and he said to King Jehoshaphat, "Should the wicked you help and the ones who hate Yahweh you love? And because of this, upon you is wrath from before Yahweh."

UST

² the prophet Jehu son of the prophet Hanani, went out of the city to meet the king, and said to him, "It was not right for you to help a wicked man and to love those who hate Yahweh. Because of what you have done, Yahweh is angry with you."

2 Chronicles 19:3

there is some good to be found in you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **good**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. This phrase can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "you have done some good things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

you have taken the Asherah poles out of the land

Since Jehoshaphat was king, he may have told his officials to do these things for him. Alternate translation: "you have had your people take the Asherah poles out of the land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Asherah poles

See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:3](#).

fixed your heart

Here the heart represents the will. Jehoshaphat's will is spoken of as being fixed or immovable, which means having an unchanging intention to seek God. Alternate translation: "firmly decided" (See: [Idiom](#))

seek God

Wanting to do what pleases God is spoken of as if Jehoshaphat were seeking him. Alternate translation: "do what pleases God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [the land](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [heart](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

³ However, [good](#) things have been found with you, for you removed the Asherah from [the land](#), and you established [your heart to seek God](#)."

UST

³ But you have done some good things; you got rid of the poles in this country for worshiping the goddess Asherah, and you have been determined to do what pleases God."

2 Chronicles 19:4

from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim

This is a merism that means the whole land over which Jehoshaphat reigned, from the most southern part to the most northern part, and is intended to include the whole land in between. Alternate translation: “of all the land of Judah” (See: [Merism](#))

brought them back to Yahweh

The author speaks of Jehoshaphat’s leading the people back to serving Yahweh as if he were carrying them back to where they were at an earlier time. Alternate translation: “convinced them to return to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

their fathers

Alternate translation: “their ancestors” or “their forefathers”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [And he turned](#)
- [And he brought them back](#)
- [and he went out](#)
- [among the people](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Jehoshaphat](#) dwelt [in Jerusalem](#). [And he turned and he went out among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim. And he brought them back to Yahweh, the God of their fathers.](#)

UST

⁴ Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem. But one time, like he had done once previously, he went out among all the people in the country, from the city of Beersheba in the far south to the hill country of the tribe of Ephraim in the far north, and he convinced them to return to worshiping Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 19:5

fortified cities

cities with walls around them for protection

city by city

Alternate translation: "for every city"

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Judea, Judah

ULT

⁵ And he appointed judges in the land in all the fortified cities of Judah, for city and city.

UST

⁵ He appointed judges throughout Judah, in each of the cities that had walls around them.

2 Chronicles 19:6

He said to the judges

Alternate translation: "Jehoshaphat said to the judges"

he is with you

This could mean: (1) Yahweh was aware of what the judges decided or (2) Yahweh would hold the judges accountable for their decisions or (3) Yahweh would help and guide them in their decisions. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the judges](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [for man](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [judge, judgment](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Adam](#)

ULT

⁶ And he said to [the judges](#), "See what you all are doing. For not [for man](#) do you all judge but [for Yahweh](#); and with you all in the matter of [judgment](#)."

UST

⁶ He told them, "Make your decisions carefully, because you are judging cases not in order to please people, but to please Yahweh. And he will be watching you whenever you make a decision."

2 Chronicles 19:7

let the fear of Yahweh be upon you

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "you should remember to fear Yahweh when you judge"

there is no iniquity with Yahweh our God, nor is there any favoritism or bribe taking

The abstract nouns "iniquity," "favoritism," and "bribe" can be translated using the verbs "sin," "favor," and "bribe." Alternate translation: "Yahweh our God will not sin or favor one person over another in judgment or be bribed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the dread of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Watch
- our God
- faces

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

⁷ And now, let [the dread of Yahweh](#) be upon you all. [Watch](#) and act for there is not with [Yahweh our God](#) injustice or lifting of [faces](#) or taking a bribe."

UST

⁷ So now revere Yahweh and judge cases carefully and do not forget that Yahweh our God never acts unjustly, and that he never does what people want because they offer him money."

2 Chronicles 19:8

heads of the ancestral houses

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the most important part, and “houses” represents families. Alternate translation: “leaders of the ancient families” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

for carrying out judgment for Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **judgment**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “to judge.” Alternate translation: “for judging the people for Yahweh” or “for judging on Yahweh’s behalf” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for the sake of disputes

Alternate translation: “for settling disputes” or “for resolving arguments”

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [appointed](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [and the priests](#)
- [and from the heads of](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [for Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And they returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁸ And also [in Jerusalem Jehoshaphat appointed](#) from [the Levites and the priests, and from the heads of fathers for Israel](#), for the judgment of [Yahweh](#), and for dispute. [And they returned to Jerusalem.](#)

UST

⁸ In Jerusalem, Jehoshaphat also appointed some priests and other descendants of Levi and some leaders of Israelite families to be judges. He told them to do what Yahweh’s laws said was right when they settled disputes. Those men lived in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 19:9

You must serve in reverence for Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **reverence**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “You must serve while fearing Yahweh” or “You must serve while respecting Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

with your whole heart

Here “heart” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “with your whole being” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he commanded](#)
- [in the fear of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ [And he commanded](#) them, saying, “Thus you will do [in the fear of Yahweh](#) in trustworthiness and with a complete heart.

UST

⁹ He told them this: “You must always do your work faithfully, honoring Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 19:10

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to those persons Jehoshaphat appointed to be judges.

Connecting Statement:

Jehoshaphat continues to instruct some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, who he appointed to be judges.

Whenever any dispute comes to you from your brothers who live in their cities

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Whenever your brothers who live in their cities bring you a dispute” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from your brothers

Here “brothers” is a general reference to fellow Israelites.

bloodshed

Here the killing of people is spoken of as shedding their blood, where “blood” represents their lives. Alternate translation: “the killing of people” or “murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

anger will come toward you and toward your brothers

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **anger**, you could express the same idea with the adjective “angry.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God will be angry with you and your brothers” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from your brothers](#)
- [your brothers](#)
- [blood](#)
- [to blood](#)
- [law](#)
- [to command](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [blood](#)
- [brother](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And any dispute that comes to you all [from your brothers](#), the ones dwelling in their cities, between [blood to blood](#), between [law to command](#), to statutes, and to judgments, and you all must caution them, so they will not be guilty [to Yahweh](#), and there will be wrath on you all and on [your brothers](#). Thus you will do, and you all will not be guilty.

UST

¹⁰ In every dispute that your fellow Israelites who live in the cities want you to settle, you must warn them to not sin against Yahweh by telling lies during the trial—regardless of whether the trial is about murder, or about various laws, or about various royal decrees. If you do not warn them, God will punish you. Do this so that he does not become angry with you or your fellow Israelites.

- brother
- command, commandment
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- Yahweh

2 Chronicles 19:11

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to those persons Jehoshaphat appointed to be judges.

Connecting Statement:

Jehoshaphat continues to instruct some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, who he appointed to be judges.

See, Amariah

Alternate translation: “Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: Amariah”

Amariah ... Zebadiah ... Ishmael

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

is over you

Alternate translation: “is in charge of you”

of all the matters of the king

Here Jehoshaphat speaks of himself in the third person. This can be translated in the first person. Alternate translation: “of all my royal matters” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- the...priest
- the good
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the son of
- of the house of
- Judah
- the king
- the Levites
- Be strong

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- priest, priesthood
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

¹¹ And behold, Amariah the [head priest](#) is over you all for any matter of [Yahweh](#). And Zebadiah, [the son of](#) Ishmael, is the leader [of the house of](#) Judah for any matter of [the king](#). And officials of [the Levites](#) are before you all. [Be strong](#) and act! And let [Yahweh](#) be with [the good](#)!”

UST

¹¹ Amariah, the high priest, will supervise you in any matter that Yahweh is concerned about, and Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the tribe of Judah, will supervise you in any matter that I am concerned about. And the descendants of Levi will assist you. Act courageously, and I pray that Yahweh will help those who do their work well.”

- Judea, Judah
- Levi, Levite
- chief, leader
- house, household
- king, kingship
- strength, strengthen, strong

2 Chronicles 20

2 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Jehoshaphat is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Deliverance and trust

God rescues those who trust him. An enormous army came against Jehoshaphat but God promised that he would defeat them without Judah having to fight. Then the enemy fought among themselves and when the army of Judah arrived there were dead bodies. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

2 Chronicles 20:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Meunites

This was a people group from the region of Meun which was near Edom, east of the Jordan River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came against Jehoshaphat to do battle

Here “Jehoshaphat” represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “came against Jehoshaphat’s army to do battle” or “came to fight against Jehoshaphat and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [and the sons of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)

ULT

¹ And it happened after this, [the sons of Moab and the sons of Ammon](#), and with them some Meunites came against [Jehoshaphat](#) for battle. ^[1]

UST

¹ Later armies from Moab and Ammon and some soldiers from region of Meun, near Edom, came to fight against Jehoshaphat’s army.

2 Chronicles 20:2

See, they are in Hazezon Tamar

The word “see” is used here as an idiom to add emphasis to what is said next. They could not see the army in Hazezon Tamar from where they were speaking. Alternate translation: “They are already in Hazezon Tamar” (See: [Idiom](#))

Hazezon Tamar

This is the name of a place. It is another name for Engedi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Engedi](#)
- [Engedi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [En Gedi](#)
- [En Gedi](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

² And they came and told [Jehoshaphat](#), saying, “A great multitude is coming against you from beyond the sea, from Aram. And behold, they are in Hazezon Tamar,” that is, [Engedi](#). ^[2]

UST

² Some men came and told Jehoshaphat, “A huge army is coming to attack your army. They are coming from the region of Edom, from the other side of the Dead Sea. They have already come to Hazezon Tamar!” Another name for that place is Engedi.

2 Chronicles 20:3

set himself to seek

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “determined himself to seek” or “devoted himself to seek” (See: [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

This speaks of seeking Yahweh’s advice as if he were looking for Yahweh. Alternate translation: “to seek Yahweh’s advice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He proclaimed a fast

The word “fast” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “He proclaimed that all the people should fast” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

³ [And he feared](#), and [Jehoshaphat](#) set [his face to seek Yahweh](#). [And he proclaimed a fast](#) over all [Judah](#).

UST

³ Jehoshaphat became very afraid, so he decided to ask Yahweh what he should do. He also proclaimed that all the people of Judah should fast.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he feared](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his face](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And he proclaimed](#)
- [a fast](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [fast, fasting](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

2 Chronicles 20:4

Judah gathered

This refers to the people of Judah. Alternate translation: "The people of Judah gathered" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah (2)
- to seek
- to seek
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah (2)
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

ULT

⁴ And Judah gathered to seek from Yahweh; also from all the cities of Judah, they came to seek Yahweh.

UST

⁴ The people of Judah gathered together to request Yahweh to help them. They came to Jerusalem from every town in Judah to seek help from Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 20:5

of Judah and Jerusalem

This refers to the people from these places. Alternate translation: “of the people from Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- in the assembly of
- Judah
- and Jerusalem
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- the...court

Translation Words - UST

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- court, courtyard

ULT

⁵ And Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem, in the house of Yahweh, before the new court.

UST

⁵ Then Jehoshaphat stood up in front of the people of Judah in front of the new courtyard of the temple,

2 Chronicles 20:6

are you not God in heaven? Are you not the ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations?

Jehoshaphat uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God is in heaven and his authority over all things. This question can be written as statement. Alternate translation: “you are indeed God in heaven and the ruler over all the kings of the earth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Power and might are in your hand

The words “Power” and “might” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. The word “hand” refers to possession. Alternate translation: “You possess great power” or “You have great power and might” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [the God](#)
- [our fathers](#)
- [in the heavens](#)
- [rule](#)
- [the kingdoms of](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [And in your hand](#)
- [are power](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dominion](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [nation](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

⁶ And he said, “[Yahweh, the God of our fathers](#), are you not he, [the God in the heavens](#)? And you [rule](#) in all [the kingdoms of the nations](#). And in your [hand are power](#) and might and none stands himself with you.

UST

⁶ and he prayed this: “Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors belonged to, you rule from heaven. You rule over all the kings and nations on earth. You can do anything; no one can successfully oppose you.

2 Chronicles 20:7

Our God, did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land ... to the descendants of Abraham?

Jehoshaphat uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God drove their enemies from their land and gave it to the Israelites. This question can be written as statement. Alternate translation: "It was you who drove out those who lived in this land for the sake of your people Israel and who gave it permanently to the descendants of Abraham." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our God](#)
- [land](#)
- [your people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [the one who loved you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁷ Did you yourself [our God](#) not drive out the inhabitants of this [land](#) from before [your people Israel](#), and give it to the seed of [Abraham, the one who loved you](#), forever?

UST

⁷ Our God, you drove out the people who lived in this land while your Israelite people advanced into it, and you certainly gave it to us who are descendants of Abraham, so that the land would belong to us forever.

2 Chronicles 20:8

for your name

Here Yahweh is represented by his “name.” Alternate translation: “for you” or “to honor you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a sanctuary](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sanctuary](#)

ULT

⁸ And they have dwelled in it, and they built for you in it [a sanctuary](#) for your name, saying,

UST

⁸ Our ancestors lived here and built a temple at which to worship you. At that time they prayed:

2 Chronicles 20:9

the sword

The “sword” represents war. Alternate translation: “war” or “battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

before this house

This refers to the temple.

your name is in this house

Here Yahweh's presence is represented by his “name.” Alternate translation: “your presence is here in this house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disaster](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [we will stand](#)
- [house](#)
- [your name](#)
- [is in...house](#)
- [And we will cry](#)
- [and deliver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [name](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

⁹ ‘If [disaster](#) comes on us—the [sword](#), judgment, or pestilence, or famine—we [will stand](#) before this [house](#), and before you for [your name is in](#) this [house](#). [And we will cry](#) to you from our distress, and you will hear [and deliver](#).’ ^[3]

UST

⁹ ‘If we experience disasters, either from our enemies attacking us, or from disease or hunger, we will assemble at this temple in your presence, for you agreed to be present here. We will plead with you because of the things we are suffering, and you will hear us and will rescue us.’

2 Chronicles 20:10

Mount Seir

This was a place where the Edomites lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- to Israel
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

10 And now behold the sons of Ammon and Moab and Mount Seir whom you did not give to Israel to enter against them when they were coming from the land of Egypt, for they turned from against them, and they did not destroy them.

UST

10 You would not allow our Israelite ancestors to enter the countries of Ammon, Moab, or Edom when they were traveling from Egypt to Canaan. So our ancestors turned away from those areas and did not attack the people there and did not destroy them. But now they are coming here to attack us.

2 Chronicles 20:11

See how they are rewarding us; they are coming to drive us out of your land

Here Jehoshaphat speaks of the ironic situation. Alternate translation: "This is how they 'repay' us for the mercy we showed to them; they are coming to drive us out of your land" (See: [Irony](#))

See how

The word "see" here is used as an idiom to emphasize what is said next. (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

¹¹ And behold they are repaying us, to come to drive us out from your possession which you caused us to possess.

UST

¹¹ We did good things for them. But now look at how they are repaying us by trying to drive out us from the land that you gave to our ancestors to belong to them and their descendants forever!

2 Chronicles 20:12

will you not judge them?

This rhetorical question is used as a request. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement.
Alternate translation: “please judge them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

our eyes are on you

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize that they are directing their attention to God. Alternate translation: “we are looking to you for help” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Our God](#)
- [strength](#)
- [we...do...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

¹² [Our God](#), will you not judge them, for there is not in us [strength](#) before this great multitude coming against us. And we ourselves do not [know](#) what we should do, but on you are our eyes.”

UST

¹² So, our God, please punish them. We cannot defeat the enormous army that is coming to attack us. We do not know what to do, but we are depending on you to help us.”

2 Chronicles 20:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- was standing
- Yahweh
- and their sons

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- son
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah

ULT

¹³ And all Judah was standing before Yahweh, even their children, their wives, and their sons.

UST

¹³ All the men of Judah and their wives, children, and babies were standing there in the presence of Yahweh while Jehoshaphat prayed.

2 Chronicles 20:14

the Spirit of Yahweh came on

This is an idiom which means that the spirit of God influenced Jahaziel and enabled him to prophesy. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 15:1](#) (See: [Idiom](#))

Jahaziel ... Zechariah ... Benaiah ... Jeiel ... Mattaniah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [the son of](#) (4)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [the Levite](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [the Spirit of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [son](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And Jahaziel, [the son of Zechariah](#), [the son of Benaiah](#), [the son of Jeiel](#), [the son of Mattaniah](#), [the Levite](#) from [the sons of Asaph](#), [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) was on him in the midst of [the assembly](#).

UST

¹⁴ Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jahaziel son of Zechariah, who was son of Benaiah, who was son of Jeiel, who was son of Mattaniah. He was a descendant of Levi and a descendant of Asaph. He stood up in front of the whole group that was gathered there,

2 Chronicles 20:15

all Judah and you inhabitants of Jerusalem

Here "Judah" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "all you who live in Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the battle does not belong to you, but to God

This means that God is in control of the battle and of what happens.

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Jerusalem
- and King
- Jehoshaphat
- Yahweh
- You...do...fear
- do...be dismayed
- to God

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁵ And he said, "Give attention, all [Judah](#) and inhabitants of [Jerusalem and King Jehoshaphat](#). Thus says [Yahweh](#) to you all, 'You yourselves, do not [fear](#); and do not [be dismayed](#) from before this great multitude, for not to you all is the battle but [to God](#)."

UST

¹⁵ and said, "King Jehoshaphat and all you who live in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah, listen! This is what Yahweh says to you: 'Do not be afraid or discouraged because of this huge army that is coming to attack you, because it is not you who will win this battle. It is God who will win it.'"

2 Chronicles 20:16

go down against

This is an idiom that means to go and meet the enemy army for battle. Alternate translation: “march against” or “go to battle against” (See: [Idiom](#))

See

Alternate translation: “Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

pass of Ziz

This is a narrow valley between two mountains southeast of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [before](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face, facial](#)

ULT

16 Tomorrow, go down against them. Behold, they are coming up by the Ascent of Ziz. And you will find them at the end of the valley, [before](#) the wilderness of Jeruel.

UST

16 Tomorrow march down toward them. They will be climbing up through the pass of Ziz north of En Gedi. You will meet them at the end of the gorge near wilderness of Jeruel.

2 Chronicles 20:17

Go out against

This is an idiom that means to go and meet the enemy army for battle. Alternate translation: "March out against" or "Go to battle against" (See: [Idiom](#))

the rescue of Yahweh with you

The word "rescue" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Yahweh rescue you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Judah and Jerusalem

Here these places represent the people from them. Alternate translation: "people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [stand](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)
- [Do...fear](#)
- [do...be dismayed](#)
- [go out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

17 Not to you all is it to fight in this. Station yourselves, [stand](#) and see the deliverance of [Yahweh](#) with you all, [Judah and Jerusalem](#). Do not [fear](#) and do not [be dismayed](#). Tomorrow, [go out](#) before them, [and Yahweh](#) is with you all."

UST

17 But you will not need to fight this battle. You soldiers from Jerusalem and other places in Judah, just take your positions, and then stand still and watch what will happen. You will see Yahweh rescue you. Do not be afraid or discouraged. March toward them tomorrow, and Yahweh will be with you."

2 Chronicles 20:18

bowed his head with his face to the ground ... fell down before Yahweh

These acts of worship that express humility and submission to God.
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

All Judah

Here "Judah" refers to the people from Judah. Alternate translation:
"All the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- And...bowed down
- to the earth
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- earth, land

ULT

¹⁸ And [Jehoshaphat bowed down](#), face [to the earth](#). And all [Judah](#) and the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#) fell before [Yahweh](#) to worship [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁸ Jehoshaphat prostrated himself with his face touching the ground, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah who were there knelt down to worship Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 20:19

Kohathites and Korahites

These are the names of people groups descending from Kohath and Korah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with a very loud voice

This speaks of all the people praising Yahweh as if they together had one voice. Alternate translation: “with very loud voices” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the sons of
- the sons of
- to praise
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- with a...voice

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- voice

ULT

¹⁹ And [the Levites](#), from [the sons of](#) the Kohathites and from [the sons of](#) the Korahites, stood up [to praise Yahweh](#), [the God of Israel](#), with a great [voice](#) upwards.

UST

¹⁹ Then some descendants of Levi who were descendants of Kohath and Korah stood up and loudly praised Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to.

2 Chronicles 20:20

Tekoa

Translate the name of this city the same as in [2 Chronicles 11:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

you will be supported

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he will support you” or “he will help you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Trust in his prophets, and you will succeed

Alternate translation: “If you trust in Yahweh’s prophets, then you will succeed”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they went out](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [stood](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Believe](#)
- [Believe](#)
- [in Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [and succeed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

²⁰ And they rose early in the morning, [and they went out](#) to the wilderness of Tekoa. And when they went, [Jehoshaphat stood](#) and said, “Hear me, [Judah](#) and inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#). [Believe in Yahweh your God](#), and be confirmed. [Believe](#) in his prophets [and succeed](#).”

UST

²⁰ Early the next morning the army left to go to the desert near the town of Tekoa. While they were leaving, Jehoshaphat stood up and said to them, “You people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, listen to me! Trust in Yahweh our God; if you do that, you will be strong. Trust in what his prophets have said; if you do that, you will be successful.”

2 Chronicles 20:21

his covenant faithfulness endures forever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully” or “faithful.” See how you translated “covenant faithfulness” in [2 Chronicles 7:3](#). Alternate translation: “he faithfully loves us forever” or “he is always faithful to his covenant with us” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he consulted](#)
- [the people](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [to Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [and ones who praise](#)
- [holy](#)
- [his covenant faithfulness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

21 [And he consulted](#) with [the people](#), and he appointed ones who sing [to Yahweh and ones who praise the holy](#) majesty as they went out before the equipped. And they were saying, “Give thanks [to Yahweh](#), for [his covenant faithfulness](#) is forever.”

UST

21 Then, after consulting with the people’s leaders, Jehoshaphat assigned some persons to sign praise of Yahweh for his greatness, and for these individuals to lead the entire army to the enemy. They were singing, “Thank Yahweh, because he faithfully loves us forever.”

2 Chronicles 20:22

to sing and to praise

They were singing to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “to sing and to praise Yahweh” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Yahweh set men

This means that Yahweh caused some of the enemy soldiers to ambush other enemy soldiers. Alternate translation: “Yahweh set some enemy soldiers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ambush

a surprise attack

Mount Seir

Translate the name of this place the same as in [2 Chronicles 20:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They were defeated

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They defeated them” or “They defeated those they had ambushed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and praise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [to Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

22 And at the time they began in cry of jubilation [and praise](#), [Yahweh](#) placed ambushers against [the sons of](#) Ammon, [Moab](#), and Mount Seir who were coming [to Judah](#). And they were struck.

UST

22 While they began to sing and praise Yahweh, Yahweh caused some enemy soldiers to unexpectedly attack the others from Ammon and Moab and Edom. They defeated the others in their army.

2 Chronicles 20:23

to completely kill them and destroy them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the first. Alternate translation: “to completely annihilate them” (See: [Doublet](#))

When they had finished with

This refers to after they had destroyed them. Alternate translation: “When they had finished killing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ And [the sons of](#) Ammon and Moab stood against the inhabitants of Mount Seir, to devote to destruction and to destroy. And when they finished with the inhabitants of Seir, they helped a man against his neighbor for destruction.

UST

²³ Then the soldiers from Ammon and Moab attacked the soldiers from Edom and completely annihilated them. After they finished slaughtering the men from Edom, they slaughtered each other.

2 Chronicles 20:24

Behold, they were dead

The word “behold” is used here to mark a surprising event.

they were dead, fallen to the ground

The phrase “fallen to the ground” is an idiomatic way to say that “they were dead.” Alternate translation: “they were all dead on the ground” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Judah](#)
- [to the earth](#)
- [who escaped](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

²⁴ [And Judah](#) came to the watchtower of the wilderness, and they turned toward the multitude. And behold, corpses fallen [to the earth](#)! And there none [who escaped](#).

UST

²⁴ When the soldiers from Judah came to the place where they could look down over the wilderness, they looked toward that huge army of their enemies, and they saw only corpses lying on the ground. No one had survived.

2 Chronicles 20:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- and his people
- And they took
- carrying away

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoshaphat
- burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- people, people group

ULT

²⁵ And Jehoshaphat and his people came to plunder the spoils, and they found among them in abundance goods, and corpses, and precious items. And they took for themselves, so there was no carrying away. And there were three days of plundering the spoils, for it was great. ^[4]

UST

²⁵ So Jehoshaphat and his soldiers went to take the possessions of their enemies, and they saw that there was a lot of equipment and clothing and other valuable things; there was more than they could carry away. There were very many things, with the result that it took three days for them to collect them all.

2 Chronicles 20:26

the fourth day

“day 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Valley of Berakah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- they assembled
- they blessed
- Yahweh
- they called
- the name of

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- call, call out
- name
- Yahweh
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

ULT

²⁶ And on the fourth day they assembled in the Valley of Berakah. For there they blessed Yahweh. Therefore they called the name of that place “Valley of Berakah” until today.

UST

²⁶ The following day they gathered in Berakah Valley and praised Yahweh there. That is why that valley is still called Berakah, which means praise.

2 Chronicles 20:27

every man of Judah and Jerusalem

This is a reference to every man in the army. Alternate translation: “every soldier of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jehoshaphat in their lead

“with Jehoshaphat leading them.” The phrase “in their lead” is an idiom. King Jehoshaphat was in front of the whole army as they went back to Jerusalem. (See: [Idiom](#))

rejoice over their enemies

They rejoiced because their enemies had been defeated. Alternate translation: “rejoice over their enemies’ defeat” or “rejoice because their enemies had been destroyed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they returned](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [over their enemies](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and Jehoshaphat](#)
- [at their head](#)
- [to return](#)
- [with joy](#)
- [had made them rejoice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [head](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

²⁷ [And they returned](#), every man of [Judah and Jerusalem and Jehoshaphat](#) [at their head](#), [to return](#) to [Jerusalem](#) [with joy](#), for [Yahweh](#) had made them rejoice over their enemies.

UST

²⁷ Then while Jehoshaphat led them, all the soldiers who were from Jerusalem and other places in Judah returned to Jerusalem. They were happy because Yahweh had enabled them to defeat their enemies.

2 Chronicles 20:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Jerusalem
- and with lyres
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- harp, harpist
- house, household

ULT

²⁸ And they came to Jerusalem with harps and with lyres and with trumpets to the house of Yahweh.

UST

²⁸ When they arrived at Jerusalem, they went to the temple, playing harps, lutes, and trumpets.

2 Chronicles 20:29

The terror of God was on all the kingdoms of the nations

The word “terror” can be expressed with the verb “feared.” Alternate translation: “All the kingdoms of the nations greatly feared God”

kingdoms of the nations

Alternate translation: “kingdoms in the nearby nations”

Translation Words - ULT

- the dread of
- God
- the kingdoms of
- the lands
- Yahweh
- the enemies of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy
- earth, land
- kingdom

ULT

²⁹ And the dread of God was on all the kingdoms of the lands when they heard that Yahweh had fought with the enemies of Israel.

UST

²⁹ People in the kingdoms of the nearby countries became very afraid when they heard how Yahweh had fought against the enemies of the Israelites.

2 Chronicles 20:30

Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet

This speaks of the kingdom having peace as the kingdom being quiet. Alternate translation: "Jehoshaphat's kingdom was at peace"

Translation Words - ULT

- the kingdom of
- Jehoshaphat
- his God
- and...gave rest

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Jehoshaphat
- kingdom
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

³⁰ And the kingdom of Jehoshaphat was quiet, and his God gave rest to him all around.

UST

³⁰ Then there was peace in the kingdom that Jehoshaphat ruled, because God had enabled him to have peace throughout the country.

2 Chronicles 20:31

thirty-five years old ... twenty-five years

“35 years old...25 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi

“Azubah” was the name of Jehoshaphat’s mother. Shilhi was the name of Azubah’s father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [And...reigned](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [The son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

³¹ And [Jehoshaphat](#) [reigned](#) over [Judah](#). [The son of](#) 35 years when he became king, and 25 years he [reigned in](#) [Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother, Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

UST

³¹ Jehoshaphat continued to rule Judah. He was thirty-five years old when he became king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother’s name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

2 Chronicles 20:32

He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them

This means that he lived in a way that pleased Yahweh as his father had done. Here “walking” is an idiom for the way a person lives and behaves. Alternate translation: “He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, like his father Asa had done, and he did not stop doing those things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))

he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Jehoshaphat’s actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: “he did what Yahweh judged to be right” or “he did what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³² And he walked in the way of [his father Asa](#), and he did not turn aside from it, doing what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

UST

³² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, like his father Asa had done, and he did not stop doing those things.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

2 Chronicles 20:33

the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he did not get rid of the high places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The people still had not directed their hearts to the God

This means that the people did not desire to obey God and were not devoted to him. Here people’s “hearts” represent their will and their desires. Alternate translation: “The people were still not devoted to the God” or “The people still were not committed to following the God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [their heart](#)
- [to the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

³³ However, the high places did not turn aside. And still [the people](#) did not establish [their heart to the God of their fathers](#).

UST

³³ But he did not get rid of the places where idols were worshiped on the hills in the countryside, and most of the people still not erious about obeying the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

2 Chronicles 20:34

first and last

These two opposites are given to refer to everything concerning Jehoshaphat during his reign as king. Alternate translation: “from the beginning of his reign until he died” (See: [Merism](#))

behold, they are written in the history ... Israel

The word “behold” is used here to add emphasis to the important information that follows. Alternate translation: “anyone can look in the history ... Israel and see that they are written there”

they are written in ... which is recorded in

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they are in ... which is in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Hanani

Translate this man’s name as you did in [2 Chronicles 16:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the history of Jehu son of Hanani

This is a historical account that was written by Jehu.

the book of the kings of Israel

This is a book that no longer exists. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 16:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

³⁴ And the remainder of the matters of [Jehoshaphat](#), the first things and the last things, behold, they are written in the words of [Jehu the son of Hanani](#), which is taken up on the scroll of [the kings of Israel](#).

UST

³⁴ A record of the other things that Jehoshaphat did while he ruled, from the beginning until he died, is in the scrolls written by the prophet Jehu son of Hanani. They are also in the scroll on which was written a record of the activities of the kings of Israel.

2 Chronicles 20:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Judah
- Ahaziah
- Israel
- made himself guilty

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- Ahaziah
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)

ULT

³⁵ And after this Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, allied himself with Ahaziah, the king of Israel; he made himself guilty in so doing.

UST

³⁵ Later, Jehoshaphat made a treaty with Ahaziah, the king of Israel, who was a very wicked king.

2 Chronicles 20:36

ships

These are ships capable of traveling on large bodies of water.

Tarshish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They built the ships

Jehoshaphat and Ahaziah did not build the ships, rather, their workers built them. Alternate translation: "Their workers built the ships" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ezion Geber

Translate the name of this place as you did in [2 Chronicles 8:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Tarshish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tarshish](#)

ULT

³⁶ And he allied himself with him to make ships to go [to Tarshish](#). And they made ships at Ezion Geber.

UST

³⁶ They agreed that their workers would build a fleet of ships to use to buy and sell things with other countries. After those ships were built at Ezion Geber,

2 Chronicles 20:37

Eliezer ... Dodavahu

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mareshah

Translate this man's name as you did in [2 Chronicles 11:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The ships were wrecked so that

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The ships became ruined and" or "The ships wrecked so that" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they were not able to sail

Alternate translation: "no one was able to sail them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [And...prophesied](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

ULT

37 And Eliezer [the son of](#) Dodavahu from Mareshah [prophesied](#) against [Jehoshaphat](#), saying, "When you allied yourself with [Ahaziah](#), [Yahweh](#) broke through your works." And the ships were broken, and they were not able to go to [Tarshish](#).

20:1 ^[1] represents a correction to the Hebrew text, which reads, . It is thought that was original, and that a copyist changed it to . But this last reading makes no sense, because Ammonites have already been mentioned in this verse. However, different versions deal with this problem in different ways.

20:2 ^[2] , some ancient and modern versions have .

20:9 ^[3] , some ancient and modern versions read .

20:25 ^[4] , some ancient and modern versions read . Instead of , some ancient manuscripts and most modern versions read .

UST

37 Eliezer son of Dodavahu of the city of Mareshah, prophesied against Jehoshaphat. He said, "You have made an alliance with Ahaziah, who is a wicked king. Therefore, Yahweh will destroy the ships that your workers have made." And the ships were wrecked, and were never able to sail to other countries.

2 Chronicles 21

2 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Evil

Doing evil causes the country to decline. Jehoshaphat's son was evil. Edom and Libna successfully revolted against him, the Arabs plundered him and he died of an intestinal disease. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The author compares worship of Baal to being a prostitute: "to act like a prostitute." Idolatry by the people of God is often pictured as prostitution. (See: [Simile](#) and [people of God](#))

2 Chronicles 21:1

slept with his ancestors

Jehoshaphat dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

city of David

This is the city of Jerusalem. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹ And [Jehoshaphat](#) laid down with [his fathers](#) and was buried with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David](#). And Jehoram, [his son](#), [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

¹ Then Jehoshaphat died and was buried where his ancestors were buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Jehoram became the next king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 21:2

Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoshaphat, king of Israel

The southern kingdom was technically called "Judah," but the writer of this book apparently wanted to make the point that the southern kingdom was, in its obedience to God, the true Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- and Zechariah
- and Michael
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- son
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- Michael
- Zechariah (OT)
- king, kingship

ULT

² And to him [brothers](#), [the sons of Jehoshaphat](#): Azariah, and Jehiel, [and Zechariah](#), and Azariah, [and Michael](#), and Shephatiah. All these, [the sons of Jehoshaphat](#), [the king of Israel](#).

UST

² Jehoram's younger brothers were Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah.

2 Chronicles 21:3

large gifts

Alternate translation: "gifts of large amounts"

he gave the kingdom to Jehoram

The kingdom is spoken of as if it were a physical object that Jehoshaphat gave to Jehoram. Alternate translation: "he made Jehoram king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their father](#)
- [in Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

³ And [their father](#) gave to them many gifts of silver and of gold and of precious things with fortified cities [in Judah](#). And the kingdom he gave to Jehoram for he was the firstborn.

UST

³ Before Jehoshaphat died, he had given them large gifts of silver and gold and other valuable things. He also appointed them to rule various cities in Judah that had walls around them. But he appointed Jehoram to be the king of Judah, because Jehoram was his oldest son.

2 Chronicles 21:4

risen up over his father's kingdom

To “rise up over” something is an idiom that means to control it. Alternate translation: “taken complete control over his father’s kingdom” (See: [Idiom](#))

he killed all his brothers with the sword

Jehoram probably did not kill them personally, but had other people do it for him. Alternate translation: “he caused all of his younger brothers to be killed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kingdom of
- his father
- his brothers
- with the sword
- some of the chiefs of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- chief, leader
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- kingdom
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

⁴ And Jehoram rose over [the kingdom of his father](#) and he strengthened himself. And he killed all [his brothers with the sword](#), and also [some of the chiefs of Israel](#).

UST

⁴ After Jehoram was completely in control of his father's kingdom, he caused all of his younger brothers to be killed, along with some of the leaders of the nation.

2 Chronicles 21:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- A son of
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem

ULT

⁵ A son of 32 years Jehoram was when he became king, and eight years he reigned in Jerusalem.

UST

⁵ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years.

2 Chronicles 21:6

walked in the ways

This is an idiom that means he followed their example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). Alternate translation: “followed the example” (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab was doing

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Ahab were doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife

Alternate translation: “he had married a daughter of Ahab”

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh judged” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁶ And he walked in the way of [the kings of Israel](#), just as [the house of Ahab](#) did, for the daughter of Ahab was to him a wife, and he did [evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁶ But he did many of the evil things that the kings of Israel had done. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, things that the family of Ahab had done, because he married one of Ahab's daughters.

2 Chronicles 21:7

the house of David

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the kingdom of Judah. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 10:19](#). Alternate translation: “the kingdom of Judah” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had promised that he would always give life to him and his descendants

“he had promised that David’s descendants would always be the ones who ruled Judah.” This was the covenant that Yahweh made with David.

always give life to him and his descendants

Alternate translation: “always cause him and his descendants to live” or “never destroy him and his descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the house of
- David
- the covenant
- he had cut
- and to his sons

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- cut off, cut down
- house, household

ULT

⁷ But Yahweh was not willing to destroy the house of David on account of the covenant which he had cut with David; and just as he said to give to him a lamp and to his sons all the days.

UST

⁷ However, because of the covenant that Yahweh had made with King David, Yahweh did not want to get rid of the descendants Judah.

2 Chronicles 21:8

In Jehoram's days

Alternate translation: "While Jehoram was king"

from the control of Judah

Alternate translation: "against Judah's control"

set a king over themselves

The word "set" is a metonym for choosing, and the words "over themselves" is a metonym for "to rule them." Alternate translation: "chose a king to rule over them" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the hand of
- Judah
- and they caused to reign
- a king

Translation Words - UST

- Judea, Judah
- hand
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

⁸ In his days, Edom rebelled from under the hand of Judah, and they caused to reign over themselves a king.

UST

⁸ While Jehoram was ruling, the people in the region of Edom rebelled against the king of Judah and appointed their own king.

2 Chronicles 21:9

crossed over

Alternate translation: "crossed the border into Edom" or "went to Edom"

It was night when he rose up ... surrounded him and his chariot commanders

It may be helpful to reorder this sentence and to add implicit information. Alternate translation: "The Edomites surrounded him and his chariot commanders, but Jehoram and his army fought against them and escaped during the night" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And...passed over
- his chiefs
- the chiefs of

Translation Words - UST

- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁹ And Jehoram [passed over](#) with [his chiefs](#) and all his chariots with him. And it happened he rose at night and he struck Edom surrounding him and [the chiefs of](#) the chariots.

UST

⁹ So Jehoram and his officers and his men in chariots went to Edom. There, the army of Edom surrounded them. However, Jerhoram and his army attacked them and broke free from them; then they escaped during the night.

2 Chronicles 21:10

to this present day

This refers to the time when the book of 2 Chronicles was written. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

Libnah

This was a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the hand of](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [he abandoned](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

10 And Edom rebelled from under [the hand of Judah](#) until this day. Then Libnah rebelled at that time from under [his hand](#), for [he abandoned Yahweh](#), [the God of his fathers](#).

UST

10 But the king of Judah was never able to regain control of Edom, and Edom is still not controlled by Judah. The people in the city of Libnah between Judah and Philistia also rebelled against Judah. Those things happened because Jehoram stopped obeying Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors belonged to.

2 Chronicles 21:11

Jehoram had also built high places

Other people helped Jehoram build these high places all over the mountains of Judah. Alternate translation: “Jehoram and the people had also built high places” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he made the inhabitants of Jerusalem to live like prostitutes

Jehoram caused the people to serve idols instead of Yahweh. People who serve other gods in order to receive something from them are spoken of as spiritual prostitutes. Alternate translation: “he caused the people of Jerusalem to leave Yahweh and serve other gods, as prostitutes serve men who are not their husbands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he led Judah astray

Not following Yahweh is spoken of as not following the correct path. Alternate translation: “he caused Judah to no longer follow Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

11 Also, he himself made the high places in the hills of [Judah](#), and he caused the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#) to commit adultery, and he drove [Judah](#) away.

UST

11 On the hilltops in Judah he had also built high places, where they worshiped idols. He caused the people of Judah to stray away from Yahweh by worshiping foreign gods.

2 Chronicles 21:12

A letter from the prophet Elijah came to Jehoram

Alternate translation: "Jehoram received a letter from the prophet Elijah" or "The prophet Elijah sent a letter to Jehoram"

walked in the ways

This is an idiom that means he followed their example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). Alternate translation: "followed the example" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from Elijah
- the prophet
- Asa
- the king of
- Judah
- Yahweh
- the God of
- David
- your father
- your father (2)
- you did...walk
- Jehoshaphat

Translation Words - UST

- God
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Asa
- David
- Elijah
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- king, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

¹² And a writing came to him from Elijah the prophet, saying, "Thus says Yahweh, the God of David your father: 'Because you did not walk in the ways of Jehoshaphat your father and in the ways of Asa, the king of Judah,

UST

¹² One day, Jehoram received a letter from the prophet Elijah. Elijah had written this:

"This is what Yahweh, the God whom your ancestor King David worshiped, says: 'You have not done things that please me like your father Jehoshaphat did or what King Asa did.

2 Chronicles 21:13

act like a prostitute

Jehoram caused the people to serve idols instead of Yahweh. People who serve other gods in order to receive something from them are spoken of as spiritual prostitutes. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 21:11](#). Alternate translation: “leave Yahweh and serve other gods, as a prostitute serves men who are not her husband” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- Israel
- you have killed
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- the house of
- the house of
- Ahab
- your brothers
- your father
- the ones better

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- Ahab
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

13 but you walked in the way of [the kings of Israel](#), and he caused [Judah](#) to commit adultery and the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#), like [the house of Ahab](#) committed adultery, and also [your brothers, the house of your father, the ones better](#) than you, [you have killed](#).

UST

13 Instead, you have continually done the evil things that the kings of Israel have done. You have encouraged the people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah to stop worshiping Yahweh and to be unfaithful to him. And you have killed your brothers, men who were better than you are.’

2 Chronicles 21:14

see

This tells Jehoram to pay attention to the message that follows.

strike with a great plague

Alternate translation: "cause a great plague to happen to"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- among your people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁴ Behold, Yahweh is striking a great striking among your people, and among your sons, and among your wives, and among all your goods,

UST

¹⁴ So now Yahweh is about to cause disasters to strike very severely the people in your kingdom and even your own children and your wives, and everything that you own.

2 Chronicles 21:15

You yourself

The use of the reflexive “yourself” emphasizes that this is a personal judgment on Jehoram. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

until your intestines fall out because of the sickness

This could mean: (1) his intestines will literally fall out or (2) this is a metaphor that describes intestinal problems that will result in his death. Alternate translation: “until this disease causes your death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [come out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and you with many sicknesses, with a disease of your intestines, until your intestines [come out](#) from the sickness, days upon days.”

UST

¹⁵ And you yourself will have an intestinal disease that will continue to become worse, and you will suffer from it until you die.”

2 Chronicles 21:16

stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines and of the Arabians

Stirring the spirit is a metonym for making someone want to act. Here “spirit” is singular and refers to the Philistines as a group and to the Arabians as a group. Alternate translation: “provoked against Jehoram the Philistines and the Arabians” (See: [Metonymy](#))

against Jehoram

Here Jehoram refers to Jehoram and the people of Judah that he ruled. Alternate translation: “against Jehoram and the people of Judah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the spirit of the Philistines and of the Arabians who were near the Cushites

The Philistines and the Arabians were two different nations. The Arabians lived southeast of Judah near the Cushites, and the Philistines lived west of Judah. These nations were stirred up separately. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the spirit of the Philistines and the spirit of the Arabians who were near the Cushites” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁶ And Yahweh stirred up against Jehoram [the spirit of](#) the Philistines and the Arabians who were at [the hand of](#) the Cushites.

UST

¹⁶ Then Yahweh stirred up some men from the Philistia people group and some Arabs who lived near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, where people from Ethiopia had settled, to come against Jehoram.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the spirit of](#)
- [the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

2 Chronicles 21:17

No son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest son

Alternate translation: "They took away all of his sons except Jehoahaz, his youngest son" or "The only son they left to him was Jehoahaz, his youngest son"

Jehoahaz, his youngest son

This same son is called "Ahaziah" in [2 Chronicles 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [against Judah](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [a son](#)
- [his sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And they came up [against Judah](#), and they broke it up. And they captured all the goods that were found [in the house of the king](#), and also [his sons](#) and his wives, and there was not left to him [a son](#) except Jehoahaz, the youngest of [his sons](#).

UST

¹⁷ Their army invaded Judah and took away from Jerusalem all the valuable things that they found in the king's palace; they also took away his sons and wives. His youngest son, Jehoahaz, was the only one of his sons whom they did not take away.

2 Chronicles 21:18

Yahweh struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease

Here "struck" is an idiom that means Yahweh caused him to be sick.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused him to suffer from an incurable disease in his intestines" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And after all this, [Yahweh](#) struck him in his intestines with a sickness for which there is no cure.

UST

¹⁸ After that happened, Yahweh caused Jehoram to be afflicted with an intestinal disease that no doctor could cure.

2 Chronicles 21:19

It came about

This phrase marks an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in due time

This is an idiom that refers to a set or appointed time. Alternate translation: “in the proper time” or “when the time was right” (See: [Idiom](#))

made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors

The custom of the Israelites was to make a bonfire to honor the king who had died. They did not do this for Jehoram to express their contempt for him. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “did not make a bonfire to honor him as they normally did to honor kings when they died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁹ And it happened from days to days, and at the time of [the going out](#) for the end of days, two, his intestines [came out](#) with his sickness, [and he died](#) with [evil](#) diseases. And [his people](#) did not make for him a burning like the burning of [his fathers](#).

UST

¹⁹ About two years later, while he had great pain, he died because of that disease. The people of Judah had made bonfires to honor his ancestors when they died, but they did not make a bonfire for Jehoram.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the going out](#)
- [came out](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his people](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [people, people group](#)

2 Chronicles 21:20

when he departed no one mourned him

Alternate translation: "no one was sad that he died"

Translation Words - ULT

- A son of
- in Jerusalem
- David
- the kings

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁰ A son of 32 he was when he became king; and eight years he reigned in Jerusalem, and he went with no delight. And they buried him in the city of David, but not in the grave of the kings.

UST

²⁰ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years. No one regretted it when he died. His corpse was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but he was not buried where the other kings of Judah had been buried.

2 Chronicles 22

2 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of Queen Athaliah.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The author compares Athaliah's evil deeds to Ahab's family's evil lives: "walked in the ways of the house of Ahab." Ahab is pictured as the epitome of evil. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#) and [work, works, deeds](#))

2 Chronicles 22:1

for the band of men ... had killed all his older sons

This is background information about the events of [2 Chronicles 21:16](#) and [2 Chronicles 21:17](#). Ahaziah was called "Jehoahaz" in that earlier account. It is possible he changed his name when he became king. (See: [Background Information](#))

all his older sons

Alternate translation: "all Jehoram's older sons"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [And...made...king](#)
- [And...reigned](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [his...son](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the band](#)
- [the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹ And the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#) made [Ahaziah](#), [his](#) youngest son, king in his place, for all the older [the band](#) had killed coming with the Arabians to the camp. And [Ahaziah the son of](#) Jehoram, [the king of Judah](#), reigned.

UST

¹ The people of Jerusalem appointed Jehoram's youngest son Ahaziah to be their king, because the men from Philistia who had invaded Judah with some Arabs had killed all of Jehoram's other sons. So Ahaziah started to rule Judah.

2 Chronicles 22:2

twenty-two years old

"22 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Athaliah

This is the name of Ahaziah's mother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Ahaziah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [was Athaliah](#)
- [Omri](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Omri](#)

ULT

² [A son of](#) 42 years [was Ahaziah](#) when he became king, and one year he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother [was Athaliah](#), the daughter of [Omri](#).

UST

² Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king. He ruled in Jerusalem for one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, a granddaughter of King Omri of Israel.

2 Chronicles 22:3

He also walked in the ways

Here “walked in the ways” is an idiom that means he followed Ahab’s example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). Alternate translation: “He also followed the example” (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he...walked](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [his advisor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahab](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

³ Also [he](#) himself [walked](#) in the ways of [the house of Ahab](#), for his mother was [his advisor](#) to do wickedly.

UST

³ King Ahab conducted his life just like the members of Ahab’s family had done, because his mother encouraged him to do things that are wrong.

2 Chronicles 22:4

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: “as Yahweh judged” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab was doing

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Ahab were doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they were his advisors

Alternate translation: “descendants of Ahab advised him”

to his destruction

Alternate translation: “and this caused his destruction”

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [like the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [advisors](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁴ And he did [evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), [like the house of Ahab](#), for they themselves were to him [advisors](#) after the death of [his father](#), for destruction to him.

UST

⁴ He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, like the descendants of Ahab had done, because after Ahaziah's father died, they became his advisors. And Ahaziah died as a result of heeding their bad advice.

2 Chronicles 22:5

He also followed their advice; he went

Alternate translation: "He also followed their advice and went" or "He also followed their advice to go"

to fight against Hazael, king of Aram

The reader should understand that Hazael did not fight alone, but that he took his army with him. Alternate translation: "to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, and his army" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he walked](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁵ Also, with their counsel [he walked](#), and he went with Jehoram [the son of Ahab, the king of Israel](#), for battle against Hazael, [the king of](#) Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. And the Arameans struck Joram.

UST

⁵ Before he died, he did what they encourage him to do by going with Joram son of King Ahab of Israel, to fight against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. Joram was wounded there by the Arameans.

2 Chronicles 22:6

of the wounds that they had given him

Alternate translation: "from the wounds that he received at the battle"

went down to Jezreel

Jezreel was lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he returned
- at Ramah
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- the son of
- the son of
- Judah
- Ahab

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Ahab
- Judea, Judah
- Ramah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- return, turn back

ULT

⁶ And he returned to get healed in Jezreel because of the strikings that they struck him at Ramah when he fought Hazael, the king of Aram. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram, the king of Judah, went down to see Jehoram, the son of Ahab, in Jezreel because he was wounded.

UST

⁶ After he was wounded, Joram went back to the city of Jezreel to recover from his battle wounds. Then King Ahaziah went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of King Ahab, because he had been wounded.

2 Chronicles 22:7

Now the destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **destruction**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God caused Ahaziah to die" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

visit to Joram ... went with Jehoram

"Joram" and "Jehoram" are two names for the same person.

Nimshi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the house of Ahab

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). Alternate translation: "the descendants of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- he went out
- Jehu
- the son of
- Yahweh
- to cut off
- the house of
- Ahab

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Jehu
- cut off, cut down
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁷ And from God was the downfall of [Ahaziah](#) for going to Joram. And when he came, [he went out](#) with Jehoram against [Jehu the son of](#) Nimshi, whom [Yahweh](#) anointed him [to cut off the house of Ahab](#).

UST

⁷ God caused Ahaziah to die as a result of his going to visit Joram. When Ahaziah arrived, he went with Joram to meet Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had appointed to kill all the descendants of Ahab.

2 Chronicles 22:8

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

carrying out God's judgment on the house of Ahab

This refers to killing the descendants of Ahab. Alternate translation: "killing all the descendants of Ahab as God had commanded"

the sons of Ahaziah's brothers

This could mean: (1) Ahaziah's nephews or (2) the sons of Ahaziah's relatives .

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- the house of
- Ahab
- the chiefs of
- Judah
- and the sons of
- the brothers of
- Ahaziah
- to Ahaziah
- ones ministering

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- Jehu
- Judea, Judah
- house, household
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁸ And it happened when Jehu was judging on the house of Ahab, and he found the chiefs of Judah and the sons of the brothers of Ahaziah, ones ministering to Ahaziah, and he killed them.

UST

⁸ While Jehu and the men who were with him were killing Ahab's descendants, they found the leaders of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's relatives who had been working for Ahaziah, and they killed all of them also.

2 Chronicles 22:9

they caught him ... killed him

Alternate translation: "they caught Ahaziah ... killed Ahaziah"

they buried him, for they said, "He is a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart."

They honored him enough to bury his body because he was the descendant of Jehoshaphat, who was a good king. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: they buried his corpse, because they said, "He deserves to be buried, because he was a descendant of Jehoshaphat, who tried hard to please Yahweh." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of Ahaziah had no more power to rule the kingdom

Here "house of Ahaziah" is a metonym that refers to Ahaziah's descendants. Here "power to rule" is a metonym for a king. Since all the adult descendants of Ahaziah were dead, there was no one left to rule Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he sought](#)
- [sought](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [power](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [and they killed him](#)
- [The son of](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [belonging to the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

⁹ [And he sought Ahaziah](#); and they captured him, and he was hiding himself in Samaria. And they brought him to [Jehu](#), [and they killed him](#). And they buried him, for they said, "[The son of Jehoshaphat](#) is he, who [sought Yahweh](#) with all [his heart](#)." And there was none [belonging to the house of Ahaziah](#) to retain [power](#) for the kingdom.

UST

⁹ Then Jehu went to find Ahaziah, and his soldiers found Ahaziah while he was hiding in the city of Samaria. They brought him to Jehu and executed him. Then they buried his corpse, because they said, "He deserves to be buried, because he was a descendant of Jehoshaphat, who tried hard to please Yahweh." After that, there were no descendants of Ahaziah who were powerful enough to become the kings of Judah.

- seek, search, look for
- strength, strengthen, strong

2 Chronicles 22:10

she arose and killed all the royal children

Here the writer speaks of Athaliah as if she killed the children herself, but the reader should understand that she would have ordered her servants to kill them. Alternate translation: “she commanded her servants to kill all the royal children” (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the royal children

This refers only to the males, because they could become king. Verse 11 confirms that the sons were the ones who were killed. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case, it refers to the kingdom of Judah. Alternate translation: “Judah” or “the kingdom of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son died, and she arose, and she destroyed all the seed of the kingdom of the house of Judah.

UST

¹⁰ When Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son had been killed, she commanded that all the members of Ahaziah's family who might become king must be executed.

Translation Words - ULT

- And Athaliah
- Ahaziah
- her son
- the seed of
- of the house of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ahaziah
- Athaliah
- Judea, Judah
- house, household
- seed, semen

2 Chronicles 22:11

a daughter of the king ... a daughter of King Jehoram

Here "the king" refers to Jehoram, the father of Ahaziah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his nurse

This refers to a person who cares for a child, not to a medical person.

into a bedroom

Verse 12 makes it clear that this bedroom was located in the temple. Jehosheba could access that room because she was married to Jehoiada who was a priest.

Jehoiada

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- the king
- the son of
- the sons of
- Athaliah
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- who were being killed
- Jehoida
- the priest

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- son
- son
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- Athaliah
- Jehoiada
- die, dead, deadly, death
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

11 But Jehoshabeath, ^[1] the daughter of the king, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and she stole him from the midst of the sons of the king who were being killed, and she placed him and his nurse in the room of beds. And Jehoshabeath the daughter of the king Jehoram, the wife of Jehoida the priest (for she was the sister of Ahaziah) hid him from the face of Athaliah, and she did not kill him.

UST

11 But Jehosheba, the daughter of King Jehoram, took Joash, Ahaziah's very young son, away from the other sons of the king who were about to be murdered, and she hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. Because Jehosheba, who was the daughter of King Jehoram and the wife of the high priest Jehoiada, was Ahaziah's sister, she was able to hide the child, with the result that Athaliah could not kill him.

2 Chronicles 22:12

He was with them

Alternate translation: "Joash was with Jehosheba and Jehoiada"

Translation Words - ULT

- in the house of
- God
- And Athaliah
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- God
- temple, house, house of God
- Athaliah
- earth, land

ULT

¹² And he was with them in the house of God, hiding himself six years. And Athaliah was reigning over the land.

22:11 ^[1] Jehoshaba in some versions.

UST

¹² He remained hidden there for six years while Athaliah ruled Judah.

2 Chronicles 23

2 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter ends the story of Queen Athaliah and begins the story of King Joash.

Special concepts in this chapter

Having a king

The high priest organized a coup and made seven-year-old Joash king. Athaliah objected, so the chief priest had her killed. This was an attempt by the priests to fulfill the covenant God made with David. (See: [high priest](#), [chief priests](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [covenant](#))

2 Chronicles 23:1

General Information:

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as “the king.” It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add “King Joash” or “Joash the king” to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Jehoiada

the chief priest who served in the temple and was faithful to God. He was an advisor to Joash. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

showed his strength

He decided it was time to challenge Athaliah's rule and reveal that Joash was alive and ready to be king. Alternate translation: “decided to act”

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

entered into a covenant

Alternate translation: “made an agreement”

Azariah ... Ishmael ... Azariah ... Maaseiah ... Elishaphat

These five men were the commanders of hundreds of soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeroham ... Jehohanan ... Obed ... Adaiah ... Zichri

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [strengthened himself](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#) (3)
- [the son of](#) (2)

ULT

¹ And in the seventh year, [Jehoiada strengthened himself](#) and took [the chiefs of](#) hundreds, [Azariah the son of](#) Jeroham, and [Ishmael the son of](#) Jehohanan, and [Azariah the son of](#) Obed, and [Maaseiah the son of](#) Adaiah, and [Elishaphat the son of](#) Zichri with him into the covenant.

UST

¹ The next year, Jehoiada decided that it was necessary to do something. So he made an agreement with the army commanders of groups of one hundred soldiers: [Azariah son of Jeroham](#), [Ishmael son of Jehohanan](#), [Azariah son of Obed](#), [Maaseiah son of Adaiah](#), and [Elishaphat son of Zicri](#).

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (2)
- Jehoiada
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- strength, strengthen, strong

2 Chronicles 23:2

the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the most important part. And “houses” represents the families. Alternate translation: “leaders of the founding families of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Judah](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

² And they went around [in Judah](#), and they gathered [the Levites](#) from all the cities of [Judah and the heads of the fathers of Israel](#). And they came to [Jerusalem](#).

UST

² They went throughout Judah and gathered the descendants of Levi and the leaders of Israelite families from all the cities. When they came to Jerusalem,

2 Chronicles 23:3

the king's son

Here, "king" refers to Joash's father. Alternate translation: "Joash, the son of the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- the assembly
- And...cut
- David
- a covenant
- in the house of
- God
- the king
- the king
- the son of
- the sons of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- God
- son
- son
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- David
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- cut off, cut down
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

³ And all the assembly cut a covenant in the house of God with the king. And he said to them, "Behold, the son of the king will reign, just as Yahweh spoke concerning the sons of David."

UST

³ the whole group went to the temple and made an agreement with the young king there. Jehoiada said to them, "This is the son of the previous king of Judah. So he is the one who must rule, like Yahweh promised that the descendants of King David must do."

2 Chronicles 23:4

A third

“One-third” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

will be guards at the doors

Alternate translation: “will be guards at the temple doors”

Translation Words - ULT

- [on the Sabbath](#)
- [of the priests](#)
- [at the threshold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)

ULT

⁴ This is the thing that you must do: A third from you all who come in [on the Sabbath](#), [of the priests](#) and of the Levites, will be gatekeepers [at the threshold](#).

UST

⁴ So this is what you must do: One-third of you priests and other descendants of Levi who are starting to work on the Sabbath day must guard the temple doors.

2 Chronicles 23:5

Another third ... the other third

“Another one-third ... the other one-third” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the Foundation Gate

This gate may have also been called the “Middle Gate” or the “Sur Gate.” It was apparently an inner gate that was near the king’s palace.

All the people

This is a generalization that refers to all the people who are present. Alternate translation: “All the other people who are present” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [at the house of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [at the Gate of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [will be in the courts of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁵ And a third [at the house of the king](#), and a third [at the Gate of](#) the Foundation. And all [the people will be in the courts of the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

⁵ One-third of you must guard the king’s palace, and one-third of you must guard the Foundation Gate. All the other people will be in the courtyard outside the temple.

2 Chronicles 23:6

Allow no one to come into the house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Do not allow anyone to come into the house of Yahweh"

But all the other people must obey the commands of Yahweh

It may be helpful to state that command. Alternate translation: "All the others must remain in the courtyard, obeying what Yahweh has commanded" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the priests
- from the Levites
- sacred
- the people
- must keep

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- house, household
- people, people group
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

⁶ And do not let one enter the house of Yahweh, except the priests and the ministering ones from the Levites; they are entering for sacred are they. And all the people must keep the charge of Yahweh.

UST

⁶ Only the priests and the descendants of Levi who work there are allowed to enter the temple, because they are set apart for that work. All the others must remain in the courtyard, obeying what Yahweh has commanded.

2 Chronicles 23:7

The Levites must surround the king on all sides

Alternate translation: "The Levites must surround the king on all sides in order to protect him"

all sides, every man with his weapons in his hand

Alternate translation: "all sides, and every temple guard should have his weapons and be ready to fight"

Whoever comes into the house, let him be killed

This did not include the temple guards and the priests. This can be stated explicitly and in active form. Alternate translation: "You must kill anyone except the temple guards and the priests who come into the temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

when he comes in and when he goes out

This could mean: (1) "at all times" or (2) "wherever he goes." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the king
- the king
- in his hand
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- Levi, Levite
- hand
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

⁷ And the Levites will surround the king all around, each and his weapon in his hand. And the one going into the house will be killed. And they will be with the king in his coming in and his going out."

UST

⁷ You descendants of Levi must stand around the young king, each of you with your weapon in your hand. You must kill anyone else who tries to enter the temple. And stay close to the king, wherever he goes."

2 Chronicles 23:8

all Judah

This is a generalization to refer to all the people of Judah who were present in the courtyard that day. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded

Alternate translation: “did exactly what Jehoiada the priest commanded” or “obeyed everything that Jehoiada the priest commanded”

Each one took his men ... any of their divisions

The priests and guards served in divisions, with each group working for two weeks. This refers to the point in time when two divisions were present—the one ending their service and the one starting their service. Thus there were twice as many men as usual.

were to leave off serving on the Sabbath

Alternate translation: “were finishing their work on that Sabbath day”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [on the Sabbath](#)
- [on the Sabbath](#)
- [those going out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁸ And [the Levites](#) and all [Judah](#) did according to all that [Jehoiada the priest commanded](#). And each took his men, those coming in [on the Sabbath](#), with [those going out on the Sabbath](#), for [Jehoiada the priest](#) did not release the divisions.

UST

⁸ So the descendants of Levi and all the men of Judah did what Jehoiada had told them. He did not allow anyone to go home after he finished his work on that day. Each commander took his men, the ones who were finishing their work on that Sabbath day and those who were starting their work on that day.

2 Chronicles 23:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- the priest
- to the chiefs of
- the shields
- belonged to King
- David
- in the house of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- priest, priesthood
- David
- Jehoiada
- chief, leader
- house, household
- king, kingship
- shield

ULT

⁹ And Jehoiada the priest gave to the chiefs of the hundreds the spears and the shields and the large shields which belonged to King David which were in the house of God.

UST

⁹ Then Jehoiada gave each of the commanders the spears and the large and small shields that had been put there in the temple by King David.

2 Chronicles 23:10

General Information:

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as “the king.” It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add “King Joash” or “Joash the king” to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with his weapon in his hand

This means they were ready to fight. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 23:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- in his hand
- the house
- the house
- at the altar
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- hand
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- people, people group

ULT

10 And he stationed all [the people](#), and each, his weapon [in his hand](#), from the right side of [the house](#) to the left side of [the house](#), [at the altar](#) and at the house, about [the king](#) all around.

UST

10 He commanded all the guards to stand in their positions, each with his sword in his hand, all around the king—near the altar and near the temple, from the north side to the south side.

2 Chronicles 23:11

the king's son

Here "king" refers to Joash's father. Alternate translation: "Joash, the son of the king"

put the crown on him

This is a symbolic act to show that they are making him king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

gave him the covenant decrees

The symbolic act of giving him a scroll with the decrees shows that they expect him to obey them. It is unclear if these decrees were a portion of the law of Moses, or a separate set of rules for kings to obey. Alternate translation: "presented to him the covenant decrees that he should obey" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

anointed him

This was a symbolic act to show that he was chosen by God to be the king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Long live the king

Alternate translation: "May the king live a long life"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they brought out](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [And they made...king](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [May...live](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

11 [And they brought out the son of the king](#), and they placed on him the crown and the testimony. [And they made](#) him [king](#). And [Jehoiada and his sons](#) anointed him. And they said, "May [the king live!](#)"

UST

11 Then Jehoiada and his sons brought Joash out. They put a crown on his head and gave him a scroll on which were written the rules that the kings needed to obey, and they proclaimed that he was now the king. They anointed him with olive oil and shouted, "We desire that the king will live for many years!"

2 Chronicles 23:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Athaliah
- the people
- the people
- the king
- at the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Athaliah
- house, household
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group

ULT

¹² And Athaliah heard the sound of the people running and praising the king, and she came to the people at the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹² When Athaliah heard the noise being made by the people running toward the king and cheering, she ran to the temple.

2 Chronicles 23:13

behold

This alerts the reader that the following information is very important.

standing by his pillar at the entrance

The relationship between the king and this particular pillar at the temple entrance is unclear.

All the people of the land

This is a generalization to show that many people participated in the event. Alternate translation: "A very large number of the people of the land" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Athaliah tore her clothes

This was a symbolic action to show her great distress. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Treason! Treason!

Treason is acting to overthrow the government. Athaliah had killed the legitimate heirs of the king and made herself ruler in [2 Chronicles 22:10](#). She was angry that Joash became king in her place. The exclamation is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You are committing treason!"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- was standing
- the praising
- Athaliah
- his pillar
- and the chiefs
- the people of
- the land
- were joyful
- trumpets
- and leading

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Athaliah
- earth, land
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship

ULT

¹³ And she looked, and, behold, the king was standing by his pillar at the entrance, and the chiefs and the trumpets were by the king. And all the people of the land were joyful and blowing trumpets, and the singers with the articles of the song and leading the praising. And Athaliah ripped to pieces her clothes, and she said, "Conspiracy! Conspiracy!"

UST

¹³ She saw the young king there standing alongside the pillar at the entrance of the temple, which is the place at the temple where the kings usually stood. The army commanders and trumpet players were standing beside the king, and all the people of Judah were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and singers with their musical instruments were leading the people while they praised God. Then Athaliah tore her robes and started screaming, "You are committing treason!"

- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- people, people group
- column, pillar
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- trumpet, trumpeters

2 Chronicles 23:14

Jehoiada

Translate this man's name as in [2 Chronicles 22:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase "commander of hundreds" is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word "hundreds" represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the word translated as "hundreds" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 23:1](#). Alternate translation: "the commanders of military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

who were over the army

Alternate translation: "who were leaders in the army"

Bring her out between the ranks

This could mean: (1) "Surround her and bring her out of the temple courtyard" or (2) "Remove her from the people in the temple courtyard"

anyone who follows her, let him be killed with the sword

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It is implied that people who followed her would be trying to help her. Alternate translation: "Use your sword to kill anyone who comes to help her" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

For the priest had said

Alternate translation: "For Jehoiada the priest had said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...brought out](#)
- [who were appointed over](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [Bring her out](#)
- [before the house of](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [with the sword](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And Jehoiada the priest brought out the chiefs of the hundreds who were appointed over the army, and he said to them, "Bring her out to before the house of the ranks; and the one who goes after her, let him be killed with the sword." For the priest had said, "Do not kill her in the house of Yahweh."

UST

¹⁴ Jehoiada the high priest said to the army commanders, "Kill her, but do not kill her at the temple of Yahweh!" Then he said to them, "Bring Athaliah out between your ranks and kill anyone who tries to follow her!"

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- house, household
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- sword, swordsmen

2 Chronicles 23:15

as she went into the entrance of the Horse Gate of the king's house

Some versions have "and took her to the Horse Gate near the entrance of the kings' house"

the king's house

Alternate translation: "the royal palace"

Translation Words - ULT

- And they laid
- hands
- Horse
- the...Gate of
- the house of
- the king
- And they put her to death

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- die, dead, deadly, death
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- hand
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁵ And they laid hands on her, and she went into the entrance of the Horse Gate of the house of the king. And they put her to death there.

UST

¹⁵ She tried to flee, but they seized her as she reached the Horse Gate, before the palace, and they killed her there.

2 Chronicles 23:16

General Information:

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as “the king.” It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add “King Joash” or “Joash the king” to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- And...cut
- a covenant
- the people
- a people
- the king
- for Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- cut off, cut down
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group

ULT

16 And Jehoiada cut a covenant between himself, and between all the people, and between the king, to become a people for Yahweh.

UST

16 Then Jehoiada made an agreement that he and the king and all the other people would be Yahweh's people.

2 Chronicles 23:17

all the people went to the house of Baal

This is a generalization that means a large group of the people did this. Alternate translation: “a very large group of the people went to the temple of Baal” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Mattan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the house of
- its altars
- the altars
- the priest of
- they killed

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- priest, priesthood
- die, dead, deadly, death
- house, household
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁷ And all the people entered the house of Baal, and they tore it down, and its altars and its images they smashed, and Mattan, the priest of Baal, they killed before the altars.

UST

¹⁷ Then all the people who were there went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed the altars of Baal. They also killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars.

2 Chronicles 23:18

under the hand of the priests

Here “hand” represents control. Alternate translation: “under the direction of the priests” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- And...set
- the burnt offerings of
- in the law of
- Moses
- with joy
- the house of
- the house of (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- by the hand of
- the hands of
- the priests
- the Levites
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- David
- David
- Jehoiada
- Levi, Levite
- Moses
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- hand
- hand
- house, household
- house, household (2)
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

ULT

18 And [Jehoiada](#) [set](#) the musterings of [the house of Yahweh by the hand of the priests, the Levites](#) whom [David](#) assigned over [the house of Yahweh](#), to offer [the burnt offerings of Yahweh](#), as is written [in the law of Moses, with joy](#) and with song, by [the hands of David](#).

UST

18 Then Jehoiada appointed the priests, who were also descended from Levi, to take care of the temple. They were part of the group to whom King David had given various work at the temple, to sacrifice the animals that were to be completely burned on the altar, doing what was written in the laws that Moses had given to them. He also told them to rejoice and sing, which was also what David had commanded.

2 Chronicles 23:19

so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if they were physically unclean. Alternate translation: "so that no one that was unacceptable to God in any way should enter" (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "to make sure that only those who are clean could enter" or "to make sure only those who are acceptable to God could enter" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gatekeepers](#)
- [the gates of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And he stationed [gatekeepers](#) at [the gates of the house of Yahweh](#), and unclean in any way did not enter.

UST

¹⁹ He also put gatekeepers at the gates of the temple in order that anyone who was unacceptable to God would not be allowed to enter.

2 Chronicles 23:20

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 23:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

all the people of the land

This is a generalization that means he took very many people with him. Alternate translation: “a very large group of the people of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

He brought down the king from the house of Yahweh

The temple was built on the highest hill in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “He brought the king down from the temple to the palace”

the throne of the kingdom

Alternate translation: “the royal throne”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chiefs of](#)
- [among the people](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [from the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the...Gate of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁰ And he took [the chiefs of](#) the hundreds, and the majestic ones, and the rulers [among the people](#), and all [the people of the land](#). And he brought down [the king from the house of Yahweh](#); and they came into the midst of the Upper [Gate of the house of the king](#), and they sat [the king on the throne of](#) the kingdom. ^[1]

UST

²⁰ Jehoiada took with him the army commanders, the important men, the leaders and many others, and brought the king down from the temple. They went into the palace through the Upper Gate, and put the king on his throne.

- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- throne, enthroned

2 Chronicles 23:21

So all the people of the land

This is generalization to say that most of the people rejoiced. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the city was quiet

Here “the city” represents the people of the city, and “quiet” represents peace, since no one opposed Joash after Athaliah died. Alternate translation: “the people of the city were at peace” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the land
- And...rejoiced
- Athaliah
- with the sword

Translation Words - UST

- Athaliah
- earth, land
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- people, people group
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

21 And all [the people of the land rejoiced](#), and the city was quiet. And [Athaliah](#) they put to death [with the sword](#).
23:20 ^[1] .

UST

21 Then all the people of Judah rejoiced. And there was quiet throughout the city, because Athaliah had been killed.

2 Chronicles 24

2 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Joash is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Joash repairs the temple

Joash decided to repair the temple. The Levites collected money from people and gave it to the workmen to repair the temple. This was a sign of worship towards Yahweh. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Joash becomes evil

When Joash stopped worshiping Yahweh, he had many troubles. Joash remained loyal to Yahweh as long as the chief priest lived, but when the chief priest died Joash started following other gods. The chief priest's son warned him that he would have trouble, so he had him killed. The army of Aram defeated and plundered him and his servants murdered him. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Chronicles 24:1

began to reign

Alternate translation: "became king of Judah"

forty years

"40 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Zibiah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ [A son of](#) seven years was Joash when he became king; and 40 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother was Zibiah [from Beersheba](#).

UST

¹ Joash was seven years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for forty years. His mother's name was Zibiah; she was from the city of Beersheba.

2 Chronicles 24:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Joash’s actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:1](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judged to be right” or “what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all the days of Jehoiada, the priest

This idiom means “as long as Jehoiada, the priest, was alive.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- the priest

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada

ULT

² And Joash did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) all the days of [Jehoiada the priest](#).

UST

² Joash did what pleased Yahweh all during the years that Jehoiada was the high priest.

2 Chronicles 24:3

Jehoiada took for him two wives

Alternate translation: "Jehoiada chose two wives for Joash"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- sons

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jehoiada

ULT

³ And Jehoiada lifted up for him two wives, and he fathered sons and daughters.

UST

³ Jehoiada chose two women to be Joash's wives. And they bore Joash sons and daughters.

2 Chronicles 24:4

It came about after this

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the heart of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- house, household

ULT

⁴ And it happened after this, there was with the heart of Joash to restore the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁴ Some years later, Joash decided that the temple should be repaired.

2 Chronicles 24:5

right away

Alternate translation: "immediately"

The Levites did nothing at first

It may be helpful to add "but" to show that the Levites did not obey.

Alternate translation: "But the Levites did not do it immediately"

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- and the Levites
- the Levites
- Go out
- Judah
- Israel
- money
- the house of
- your God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Judea, Judah
- Levi, Levite
- Levi, Levite
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- silver

ULT

⁵ And he gathered the priests and the Levites, and he said to them, "Go out to the cities of Judah and gather from all Israel enough money to make strong the house of your God year by year. And you all yourselves, hasten to the matter." But the Levites did not hasten.

UST

⁵ He summoned the priests and other descendants of Levi and said to them, "Go to the cities of Judah and collect from the people the tax money that they are required to pay each year, and use that money to pay for repairing the temple. Do it immediately." But the descendants of Levi did not do it immediately.

2 Chronicles 24:6

Why have you not required the Levites ... covenant decrees?

King Joash asks this rhetorical question to accuse Jehoiada of not doing his duty. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have neglected your duty. I told you to require the Levites ... covenant decrees, but you have not done it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

for the tent of the covenant decrees

Although it refers to the temple that Solomon built, it is a reminder that this tax has been collected since the time of Moses and the "tent of meeting."

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...called
- Yahweh
- of Israel
- for Jehoiada
- the head
- did you...seek
- the Levites
- from Judah
- Moses
- the servant of

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- Judah
- Levi, Levite
- Moses
- chief, leader
- declare, proclaim, announce
- king, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ And the king called for Jehoiada the head, and he said to him, "Why did you not seek after the Levites to bring in from Judah and from Jerusalem the tribute of Moses, the servant of Yahweh, and of the assembly of Israel for the tent of the testimony?"

UST

⁶ So the king summoned Jehoiada and said to him, "Why have you not required the descendants of Levi to bring to Jerusalem from various places in Judah the annual tax that Moses said that the people of Judah must pay, for taking care of the sacred tent?"

2 Chronicles 24:7

holy things

This refers to the items used for worship in the temple.

to the Baals

Alternate translation: "to people to use for the worship of idols of Baal"

Translation Words - ULT

- Athaliah
- her sons
- the house of
- the house of
- God
- the sacred things of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- son
- Yahweh
- Athaliah
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

⁷ For wicked Athaliah, her sons had broken into the house of God and also, all the sacred things of the house of Yahweh, they used for the Baals.

UST

⁷ The temple needed to be repaired because the sons of that wicked woman Athaliah had entered into the temple and had wrecked some of the things, and had also used some of the sacred items that were in it for the worship of Baal.

2 Chronicles 24:8

a chest

a large wooden box

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- chest
- by the gate of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

⁸ And the king commanded, and they made one chest. And they placed it by the gate of the house of Yahweh outside.

UST

⁸ So, obeying what the king commanded, the descendants of Levi made a chest and placed it outside the temple, at one of the entrances.

2 Chronicles 24:9

they made a proclamation

Alternate translation: "they proclaimed" or "they announced"

Translation Words - ULT

- in Judah
- and in Jerusalem
- to Yahweh
- Moses
- the servant of
- God
- Israel
- in the wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judah
- Moses
- desert, wilderness
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁹ And they gave voice in Judah and in Jerusalem to bring in to Yahweh the tribute of Moses, the servant of God, over Israel in the wilderness.

UST

⁹ Then the king sent letters everywhere in Judah, requesting everyone to bring their tax money to the temple, as Moses had required the Israelite people to do when they were in the wilderness.

2 Chronicles 24:10

All the leaders and all the people

This is a generalization. Some people probably did not respond this way. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chiefs](#)
- [the people](#)
- [And...rejoiced](#)
- [into the chest](#)
- [completed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#)
- [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#)
- [chief, leader](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And all [the chiefs](#) and all [the people](#) [rejoiced](#). And they brought in and they threw [into the chest](#) until [completed](#).

UST

¹⁰ All the officials and the other people agreed, and they brought their contributions gladly. They put the money into the chest until it was full.

2 Chronicles 24:11

It happened that whenever

This phrase introduces a new, recurring action. If your language has a way to note this, you may use it here.

take it and carry it back to its place

Alternate translation: "take the chest and carry it back to its place"

Translation Words - ULT

- the chest
- the chest
- the king
- the king
- and they would return it
- by the hand of
- the Levites
- money
- money
- a scribe of
- and the officer of
- head
- the...priest

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- Levi, Levite
- chief, leader
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- oversee, overseer, keeper
- return, turn back
- silver
- silver

ULT

11 And it happened at the time one brings in **the chest** to the oversight of **the king by the hand of the Levites**, and when they saw that there was an abundance of **money**, then **a scribe of the king** would come, **and the officer of the head priest**. And they would empty **the chest**, and they would carry it, **and they would return it** to its place. Thus they did day by day, and they gathered **money** in abundance.

UST

11 Whenever the descendants of Levi brought the chest to the king's officials, and they saw that there was a lot of money in it, the king's secretary and the assistant to the high priest would take all the money from the chest and then put the chest back in its place. They did this frequently, and they collected a huge amount of money.

2 Chronicles 24:12

stonemasons and carpenters

Alternate translation: "men who built with stone and men who built with wood"

those who worked in iron and bronze

Alternate translation: "men who made things from iron and bronze"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- and Jehoiada
- the house of
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- house, household
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

¹² And the king and Jehoiada gave it to the ones doing the work of the service of the house of Yahweh. And they were hiring stonemasons and craftsmen to restore the house of Yahweh, and also for craftsmen of iron and bronze to make strong the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹² The king and Jehoiada gave the money to the men who were supervising the work of repairing the temple. Those men hired stoneworkers and carpenters to repair the temple. They also hired men who worked with iron and bronze to repair the things in the temple that were broken.

2 Chronicles 24:13

went forward in their hands

Here the word “forward” represents progress, and the word “hands” represents their control. Alternate translation: “made progress under their supervision” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the restoration](#)
- [by their hand](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [and they strengthened it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discouragement, discouragement](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

13 And the doers of the work did, and [the restoration](#) of the work went up [by their hand](#). And they made stand [the house of God](#) according to its measurement, [and they strengthened it](#).

UST

13 The men who did the repair work worked hard, and the work of repairing the temple progressed. They rebuilt the temple to make it as it was originally, and they made it stronger.

2 Chronicles 24:14

the rest of the money

This is money that was collected in the chest but not needed for repairs.

furnishings

This refers to the “utensils” and “spoons” listed later in the verse.

for all the days of Jehoiada

This idiom refers to the lifespan of Jehoiada. Alternate translation: “for as long as Jehoiada lived” or “throughout the lifetime of Jehoiada” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [and Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the money](#)
- [and silver](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [gold](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)
- [at the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

14 And when they finished, they brought in before [the king and Jehoiada](#) the remainder of [the money](#). And they made items [for the house of Yahweh](#), items of ministry and of burnt offerings and pans and items of [gold and silver](#). And they were offering up [burnt offerings at the house of Yahweh](#) regularly all the days of [Jehoiada](#).

UST

14 When they had finished the repair work, they brought to the king and to Jehoiada the money that they had not used for the repairs. That money was used to make things to use for performing the sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar, and to make bowls and other gold and silver things for the temple. As long as Joash lived, the people continually brought to the temple sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar.

2 Chronicles 24:15

grew old and was full of days

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize how long he lived. Alternate translation: “became very old” (See: [Doublet](#))

was full of days

This idiom means he lived a long time. (See: [Idiom](#))

130 years old

“one hundred and thirty years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [a son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [Jehoiada](#) grew old and was full of days, [and he died, a son of](#) 130 years at his death.

UST

¹⁵ Jehoiada became very old. He died when he was 130 years old.

2 Chronicles 24:16

among the kings

Alternate translation: “among the tombs of the kings” or “among the graves of the kings”

because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God’s house

The nominal adjective “good” can be translated as an adjective.
Alternate translation: “because he had done good things in Judah for God and for God’s temple” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the kings
- good
- in Israel
- God
- and his house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

16 And they buried him in the city of David with the kings, because he did good in Israel and toward God and his house.

UST

16 He was buried where the kings had been buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. He was buried there because of the good things that he had done in Judah for God and for God’s temple.

2 Chronicles 24:17

did honor to the king

Alternate translation: “gave honor to King Joash” or “honored the king”

Then the king listened to them

The following verse indicates that they wanted the king to serve idols instead of Yahweh, and he agreed. Alternate translation: “Then they persuaded the king to do what they wanted” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- the chiefs of
- Judah
- and bowed down
- to the king
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Jehoiada
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

17 And after the death of [Jehoiada](#), the [chiefs of Judah](#) came and bowed down to the king. Then the king listened to them.

UST

17 After Jehoiada died, the leaders of Judah went to Joash, bowed in front of him, and persuaded him to do what they wanted.

2 Chronicles 24:18

God's anger came on Judah and Jerusalem

God's anger is spoken of as something that covered over Judah and Jerusalem. Here the words "Judah" and "Jerusalem" are metonyms for the people who lived there. Alternate translation: "God became very angry with the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

this wrongdoing of theirs

Alternate translation: "their sin"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)
- [on account of...their guilt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

18 And they abandoned [the house of Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#), and they served the Asherim and the idols. And there was wrath on [Judah and Jerusalem on account of](#) this, [their guilt](#).

UST

18 So they and the other people stopped worshiping at the temple, and they started worshiping the poles dedicated to the goddess Asherah and other idols. Because they were doing those sinful things, God was very angry with the people of Jerusalem and with the people in other places in Judah.

2 Chronicles 24:19

Yet he sent

Here the word “yet” indicates a contrast between God’s anger and his sending of the prophets to give them a chance to repent and avoid judgment.

to himself, Yahweh

The reflexive pronoun emphasizes that Yahweh was the one to whom they should turn. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

they refused to listen

Alternate translation: “the people refused to obey”

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- to bring them back
- Yahweh
- And they testified

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Yahweh

ULT

19 And he sent among them [prophets to bring them back](#) to Yahweh. And they [testified](#) against them, but they did not listen.

UST

19 Although Yahweh sent prophets to persuade them to return to him, and although the prophets testified about the evil things that they had done, the people would not pay attention.

2 Chronicles 24:20

The Spirit of God came on Zechariah

This is an idiom which means that the Spirit of God influenced Zechariah and enabled him to prophesy. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 15:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Zechariah son of Jehoiada

This was not the same man as Zechariah son of Berechiah who wrote the Book of Zechariah.

Why do you transgress the commandments of Yahweh, so that you cannot prosper?

Zechariah asked this rhetorical question to rebuke the people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are transgressing the commandments of Yahweh, so that is why you cannot prosper." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the Spirit of
- God
- God
- you do...prosper
- you all abandoned
- Zechariah
- the son of
- Jehoiada
- the priest
- the people
- the commands of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- God
- priest, priesthood
- son
- spirit, wind, breath
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- Zechariah (OT)
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- people, people group
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

²⁰ And the Spirit of God clothed Zechariah the son of Jehoiada the priest. And he stood above the people, and he said to them, "Thus says God: Why are you passing over the commands of Yahweh, and you do not prosper? Because you all abandoned Yahweh, then he has abandoned you all."

UST

²⁰ Then God's Spirit came upon Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. He stood up front of the people and said, "This is what God says: Why are you violating Yahweh's commandments? You will not be able prosper if you do that. Since you have stopped obeying Yahweh, he will stop taking care of you."

2 Chronicles 24:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- by the command of
- the king
- in the court of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- court, courtyard
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

²¹ But they conspired against him, and they stoned him with stones **by the command of the king in the court of the house of Yahweh.**

UST

²¹ But the people planned to kill Zechariah. And the king permitted them to kill him. They killed him by throwing stones at him in the temple courtyard.

2 Chronicles 24:22

ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him

Joash did not pay attention to the way that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had been kind to Joash.

call you to account

Alternate translation: "make you pay for the wrong you have done"

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- Jehoiada
- his father
- his son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship

ULT

²² And **King** Joash did not remember the covenant faithfulness that **Jehoiada, his father** did with him, and he killed **his son**. And when he died, he said, "May **Yahweh** see and seek."

UST

²² King Joash forgot about how Zechariah's father Jehoiada had been kind to him. So he commanded them to kill Jehoiada's son Zechariah, who said as he was dying, "I hope that Yahweh will see what you are doing to me and punish you for doing it."

2 Chronicles 24:23

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

sent all the plunder from them

Alternate translation: "sent all the plunder from Judah and Jerusalem"

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- and Jerusalem
- the chiefs of
- the people
- the people from
- to the king of

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

²³ And it happened at the turn of the year, the army of Aram came up against him, and they came to Judah and Jerusalem. And they destroyed all the chiefs of the people from the people. And all the plunder they sent to the king of Damascus.

UST

²³ Near the end of that year, the army of Aram marched to attack the army of Joash. They invaded Judah and attacked Jerusalem and killed all the leaders of the people. They seized many valuable things and sent them to their king in Damascus, their capital city.

2 Chronicles 24:24

victory over a very great army

Alternate translation: "victory over the much larger army of Judah"

In this way the Arameans brought judgment on Joash

This refers to God's judgment. This can be stated as an action.
Alternate translation: "In this way God used the Arameans to judge Joash" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- yet Yahweh
- Yahweh
- into their hand
- a...army
- they abandoned
- the God of
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

²⁴ Indeed with a small amount of men the army of Aram came, yet Yahweh gave into their hand a very large army because they abandoned Yahweh, the God of their fathers. And they did judgment on Joash.

UST

²⁴ The army of Aram that came to Judah was very small, but Yahweh allowed them to defeat the large army of Judah, because he was punishing Joash and the other people of Judah for having abandoned him, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 24:25

Joash had been severely wounded

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they had severely wounded Joash" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada

Alternate translation: "because he had murdered the sons of Jehoiada"

They killed him in his bed

Alternate translation: "The servants killed Joash in his bed"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they left](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [David](#)
- [they did...bury him](#)
- [the kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁵ And when they went from him, for [they left](#) him with many wounds, [his servants](#) conspired against him on account of the blood of [the sons of Jehoiada the priest](#). And they killed him on his bed, [and he died](#). And they buried him in the city of [David](#), but [they did](#) not [bury him](#) in the graves of [the kings](#).

UST

²⁵ Before the battle ended, Joash was severely wounded. Then his officials decided to kill him for murdering Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. They killed him while he was in his bed. They buried him in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but they did not bury him in the place where the other kings had been buried.

2 Chronicles 24:26

Zabad ... Jehozabad

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shimeath, an Ammonite woman ... Shimrith, a Moabite woman

“Shimeath, from the country of Ammon ... Shimrith, from the country of Moab.” These are the names of two women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [the Moabite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)

ULT

²⁶ And these were the ones who conspired against him: Zabad [the son of](#) Shimeath, the Ammonitess, and Jehozabad [the son of](#) Shimrith, [the Moabite](#).

UST

²⁶ Those who conspired to kill him were Zabad son of Shimeath, who was a woman from the Ammon people group, and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, who was a woman from the Moab people group.

2 Chronicles 24:27

the accounts about his sons

Alternate translation: "the record of what his sons did"

the important prophecies that were spoken about him

Alternate translation: "the important things the prophets spoke about him"

see, they are written

Here "see" alerts the reader to pay special attention to the information that follows.

the commentary on the book of the kings

This is a book which no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- And his sons
- his son
- the house of
- God
- the Kings
- Amaziah
- And...became king

Translation Words - UST

- God
- son
- son
- Amaziah
- house, household
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

²⁷ And his sons, and many oracles against him, and the establishing of the house of God, behold, they are written in the exposition of the scroll of the Kings. And Amaziah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁷ An account of the things that were done by the sons of Joash and the many prophecies about Joash and what he did to repair the temple are written in the commentary on the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. Then after Joash died, Amaziah his son became the king.

2 Chronicles 25

2 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping other gods

When Amaziah trusted God he was successful against Edom. But when he started worshiping the idols of Edom he was badly defeated. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Chronicles 25:1

twenty-five years ... twenty-nine years

"25 years...29 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoaddan

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ [A son of](#) 25 years, [Amaziah](#) became king. And 29 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother was Jehoaddan [from Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹ Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Jehoaddan. She was from Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 25:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here the word “eyes” represents sight, and sight represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judged to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but not with a whole heart

Here the phrase “whole heart” is an idiom that means “completely.” Alternate translation: “but not completely” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

² And he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), only not with a complete heart.

UST

² Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not want to do them very much.

2 Chronicles 25:3

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- was strong
- his servants
- the king
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

³ And it happened when the kingdom was strong upon him, then he killed his servants, the ones who struck down the king, his father.

UST

³ As soon as he was in complete control of his kingdom, he caused others to execute the officials who had murdered his father.

2 Chronicles 25:4

the book of Moses

This is a reference to the books of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

Translation Words - ULT

- their sons
- their sons
- and sons
- in the law
- Moses
- Yahweh
- commanded
- Fathers
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴ But **their sons** he did not put to death for as it is written **in the law**, in the scroll of **Moses**, whom **Yahweh commanded** saying, "**Fathers** must not die on account of **their sons**, and **sons** must not die on account of **their fathers**, but each for his sin, they must die."

UST

⁴ But he did not order their sons to be executed; he obeyed what was in the laws that Moses had written. In those laws Yahweh had commanded, "People must not be executed because of what their children have done, and children must not be executed for what their parents have done. People must be executed only for the sins that they themselves have committed."

2 Chronicles 25:5

gathered Judah together

Here "Judah" refers to the people who lived in Judah. Alternate translation: "gathered the people of Judah together" (See: [Metonymy](#))

registered them ... numbered them

He had someone write their names on an official list.

by their ancestors' houses

Here the word "houses" is a metonym for the families that lived in them. Alternate translation: "by their ancestors' families" (See: [Metonymy](#))

commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "commanders of 1,000 soldiers and commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "commanders of large military divisions and commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 1:2](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

all of Judah and Benjamin

Here "Judah" and "Benjamin" refer to the people who lived in the wider kingdom of Judah. Alternate translation: "all the people of Judah and Benjamin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty years old and upward

Here numbers that were larger than twenty are spoken of as if they were higher. Alternate translation: "20 years old and older" (See: [Metaphor](#))

found them to be

Alternate translation: "learned that there were"

300,000

"three hundred thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁵ And [Amaziah](#) gathered [Judah](#), and he appointed them [according to the house of the fathers, for chiefs of thousands](#) and for chiefs of hundreds for all of [Judah and Benjamin](#). And he mustered [them](#) from a son of 20 years and upward. And he found them, 300,000 chosen, [going out to war grasping spear](#) and large shield.

UST

⁵ Amaziah summoned the men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin to come to Jerusalem, and there he put them into groups, each clan in a group by themselves. Then he appointed officers to command each group. Some officers commanded one hundred men, and some commanded one thousand men. They counted the men who were at least twenty years old; altogether there were 300,000 men. They were all men who were ready to be in the army, and able to fight well, using spears and shields.

chosen men

Alternate translation: “capable soldiers” or “skilled warriors”

Translation Words - ULT

- Amaziah
- Judah
- Judah
- according to the house of
- the fathers
- for chiefs of
- and Benjamin
- And he mustered them
- going out to
- spear

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Amaziah
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- chief, leader
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- spear, spearmen

2 Chronicles 25:6

100,000

“one hundred thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

one hundred talents of silver

“100 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver” or “about 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from Israel](#)
- [mighty ones of](#)
- [strength](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

⁶ And he hired [from Israel](#) 100,000 [mighty ones of strength](#) for 100 talents of [silver](#).

UST

⁶ Amaziah also hired 100,000 capable soldiers from Israel; he paid almost 3,300 kilograms (or about three and one-third metric tons) of silver for them.

2 Chronicles 25:7

a man of God

Alternate translation: "a prophet of God"

Israel ... the people of Ephraim

These are two names for the same group people.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- O King
- Israel
- Israel
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- king, kingship

ULT

⁷ But a man of God came to him, saying, "O King, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for Yahweh is not with Israel, all the sons of Ephraim.

UST

⁷ But a prophet came to him and said, "Your Majesty, you must not allow those soldiers from Israel to march with your soldiers, because Yahweh does not help the people of the tribe of Ephraim or from anywhere else in Israel.

2 Chronicles 25:8

throw you down before the enemy ... throw down

Here the prophet speaks of military defeat as if the king would be thrown down on the ground. Alternate translation: "enable your enemy to defeat you ... defeat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be strong](#)
- [power](#)
- [God](#)
- [in God](#)
- [the enemy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

⁸ But if you go, act, [be strong](#) in battle; [God](#) will cause you to fall before [the enemy](#), for there is [power in God](#) to help and to cause to fall."

UST

⁸ Even if your soldiers go and fight courageously in battles, God will cause your enemies to defeat you; do not forget that God has the power to help armies or to cause them to be defeated."

2 Chronicles 25:9

about the one hundred talents

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “about the thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver” or “about the 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

ULT

⁹ And [Amaziah](#) said to the man of [God](#), “And what will we do with the 100 talents that I have given to the troop of [Israel](#)?” And the man of [God](#) said, “There is [to Yahweh](#) to give to you much more than this.”

UST

⁹ Amaziah asked that prophet, “If I do that, what about 3,300 kilograms of silver that I paid to hire those soldiers from Israel?” The prophet replied, “Yahweh is able to pay you back more money than you paid to hire those soldiers.”

2 Chronicles 25:10

the army that had come to him from Ephraim

These words refer to “the army of Israel” (verse 9).

So their anger was greatly kindled

Here the increase in their anger is spoken of as if it were a growing fire inside them. Alternate translation: “So their anger began to burn within them like a fire” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in fierce anger

Alternate translation: “very angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [And...separated them](#)
- [against Judah](#)
- [and they returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [set apart](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [Amaziah separated them](#), the troop that had come to him from Ephraim to go to their place. And their anger burned greatly [against Judah](#), [and they returned](#) to their place in the burning of anger.

UST

¹⁰ So Amaziah told those soldiers from Israel to return home. They left to go home, but they were very angry with the king of Judah for not allowing them to stay and fight.

2 Chronicles 25:11

took courage

Alternate translation: "became brave"

Valley of Salt

This is an area near the Dead Sea.

ten thousand men

"10,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Amaziah](#)
- [he strengthened himself](#)
- [his people](#)
- [the sons of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

¹¹ [And Amaziah](#), [he strengthened himself](#), and he led out [his people](#). And he went to the Valley of Salt. And he struck down [the sons of](#) Seir, 10,000.

UST

¹¹ Then Amaziah became brave, and he led his army to the Valley of Salt. There they killed ten thousand soldiers from the Edom people group.

2 Chronicles 25:12

another ten thousand

“another 10,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

so that they were all broken in pieces

This is an exaggeration to emphasize the thoroughness of the slaughter. Alternate translation: “so that they were all completely destroyed” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [alive](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [took captive](#)
- [from the head of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

¹² And 10,000 [alive the sons of Judah](#) [took captive](#). And they brought them to the head of the cliff, and they threw them [from the head of](#) the cliff. And all of them were dashed to pieces.

UST

¹² The army of Judah also captured ten thousand other soldiers, took them to the top of a cliff, and threw them all down over the cliff, with the result that their bodies were all smashed to pieces.

2 Chronicles 25:13

the men of the army which Amaziah sent back

Alternate translation: "the men of the army of Israel which Amaziah sent back to Israel"

Beth Horon

This was a village near Jerusalem in Ephraim. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

struck down

Here "struck down" is an idiom that means they killed them.
Alternate translation: "killed" (See: [Idiom](#))

three thousand of the people

Alternate translation: "3,000 people"

took much plunder

Alternate translation: "took away a great amount of valuable things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But the sons of](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [sent back](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

¹³ [But the sons of](#) the troop that [Amaziah sent back](#) from going with him to battle, and they raided against the cities of [Judah](#) from Samaria and until Beth Horon. And they struck down from them 3,000 and they plundered much plunder.

UST

¹³ While that was happening, the soldiers from Israel whom Amaziah had sent home raided cities and towns in Judea, from the city of Samaria to the city of Beth Horon. They killed three thousand people and took away a great amount of valuable things.

2 Chronicles 25:14

Now it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the slaughter of the Edomites

Alternate translation: “slaughtering the Edomites” or “killing the Edomites”

the gods of the people of Seir

Alternate translation: “the gods that the people of Seir worshiped”

bowed down ... burned incense

These are symbolic acts of worship. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the gods

This expresses the popular opinion of the day that the gods determined who won battles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the gods of](#)
- [to be gods](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [he bowed down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

ULT

14 And it happened after [Amaziah](#) had come from striking the Edomites, and he brought [the gods of the sons of Seir](#), and set them up for himself [to be gods](#). And before them [he bowed down](#) and to them he made sacrifices.

UST

14 When Amaziah returned to Jerusalem after his army had slaughtered the soldiers from Edom, he brought the idols that his enemies had worshiped. He set them up to be his own gods. Then he bowed down to worship them and offered sacrifices to them.

2 Chronicles 25:15

Yahweh's anger was kindled against Amaziah

Here the increase in Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a growing fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh's anger grew like a fire against Amaziah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why have you sought after the gods of a people who did not even save their own people from your hand?

The prophet uses this rhetorical question to rebuke Amaziah for worshipping the powerless gods of the people he had defeated. Here the word "hand" is a metonym for power. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have worshiped the gods of a people that did not even save their own people from your power, King Amaziah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁵ And the anger of [Yahweh](#) burned against [Amaziah](#). And he sent to him a [prophet](#), and he said to him, "Why [do you seek the gods of the people](#) who did not deliver [their people from your hand](#)?"

UST

¹⁵ Because of that, Yahweh was very angry with Amaziah. He sent a prophet to him, who said, "Why do you worship these foreign gods who were not even able to save their own people when your army attacked them?"

the gods ... who did not even save their own people

This expresses the popular opinion of the day that the gods determined who won battles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [against Amaziah](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [do you seek](#)
- [the gods of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [their people](#)
- [from your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

2 Chronicles 25:16

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the next important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Have we made you an advisor to the king? Stop! Why should you be killed?

The king used these rhetorical questions to rebuke the prophet for speaking against him. The questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you have done this deed

This refers back to Amaziah worshiping the gods of the Edomites in [2 Chronicles 25:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the king](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [I know](#)
- [God](#)
- [has counselled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

16 And it happened when he was speaking with him, and he said to him, “For a counselor [to the king](#) have we placed you? Stop yourself! Why should they strike you down?” And [the prophet](#) stopped. And he said, “[I know](#) that [God has counselled](#) to destroy you because you have done this and you did not listen to my counsel.”

UST

16 While he was still speaking, the king said to him, “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!” So the prophet said, “I know that God has determined to get rid of you, because you have begun to worship idols, and have not heeded my advice.” Then the prophet said nothing more.

2 Chronicles 25:17

Jehoash ... Jehoahaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

meet each other face to face

This idiom means they would both be there in person, rather than communicating through messages or other people. Alternate translation: "meet each other in person" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [And...took counsel](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [face to face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And [Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), took [counsel](#) and sent to Joash, [the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, the king of Israel](#), saying, "Come, let us meet each other [face to face](#)."

UST

¹⁷ Some time later Amaziah, the king of Judah, consulted his advisors. Then he sent a message to Jehoash, the king of Israel. He wrote, "Come and meet me face to face in battle."

2 Chronicles 25:18

A thistle that was in Lebanon ... trampled down the thistle

This message is in the form of a parable. The worthless thistle represents Amaziah, and the cedar represents Jehoash. The trampling of the thistle by the beast expresses that something bad will happen to the thistle, and it will be powerless to stop it. The point of the parable is that Amaziah was foolish to challenge Jehoash. (See: [Parables](#))

thistle

This is a small, worthless plant with small, sharp thorns.

cedar

a very large type of tree

Judah

Here "Judah" is a metonym for the people who lived in Judah. Alternate translation: "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Israel
- Amaziah
- Judah
- in Lebanon
- in Lebanon
- in Lebanon
- to my son
- but...passed over

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- Lebanon
- Lebanon
- Lebanon
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

¹⁸ And Joash [the king of Israel](#) sent to [Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), saying, "A bramble that was [in Lebanon](#) sent to a cedar that was [in Lebanon](#), saying, 'Give your daughter [to my son](#) for a wife,' [but](#) an animal [passed over](#) the field that was [in Lebanon](#) and trampled the bramble.

UST

¹⁸ But Jehoash replied this to King Amaziah: "One time a thistle growing in the mountains in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar tree, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in order that he can marry her.' But a wild animal in Lebanon came along and trampled the thistle under his feet.

2 Chronicles 25:19

your heart has lifted you up

This is an idiom that means he had become proud. Alternate translation: “you have become proud” (See: [Idiom](#))

why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?

Jehoash used this rhetorical question to warn Amaziah not to fight with him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “you should not cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

fall

Here “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- in your house
- in evil
- and fall
- and Judah

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- heart
- temple, house, house of God
- Judah
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

ULT

¹⁹ You have said, Behold, you have struck down Edom, and [your heart](#) has lifted you to boast. Now, sit [in your house](#). Why excite yourself [in evil and fall](#), you [and Judah](#) with you?”

UST

¹⁹ What I mean is that you are saying to yourself that your army has defeated the army of Edom, so you have become very proud. You can be proud of your victory, but you should not fight me. If you do, you will only make trouble for yourself. I will defeat you, and Judah with you.”

2 Chronicles 25:20

this event was from God

Alternate translation: "God wanted this event to happen"

into the hand of their enemies

Here "hand" refers to power to defeat. Alternate translation: "into the power of their enemies" or "so their enemies could defeat them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [into the hand](#)
- [they sought](#)
- [the gods of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

²⁰ But [Amaziah](#) did not listen, because from God it was, in order to give them [into the hand](#) because [they sought the gods of](#) Edom.

UST

²⁰ But Amaziah paid no attention to Jehoash's message. This happened because God wanted Jehoash's army to defeat them, because they were worshiping the gods of Edom.

2 Chronicles 25:21

met each other face to face

This idiom means they were both at the battle in person, rather than only sending other people to fight. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 25:17](#). Alternate translation: “met each other in person” (See: [Idiom](#))

Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah

The city of Beth Shemesh was located in Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Israel
- and Amaziah
- Judah
- face to face
- at Beth Shemesh
- at Beth Shemesh
- belonged to Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Amaziah
- Beth Shemesh
- Beth Shemesh
- Judah
- Judea, Judah
- face, facial
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)

ULT

²¹ And Joash, [the king of Israel](#), went up, and he [and Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), looked at each other [face to face at Beth Shemesh](#), which [belonged to Judah](#).

UST

²¹ So Jehoash's army attacked. Their two armies faced each other at the city of Beth Shemesh in Judah.

2 Chronicles 25:22

Judah was struck down before Israel

Here “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the soldiers of Judah and Israel, and “struck down” is an idiom that means “defeated.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The soldiers of Israel defeated the soldiers of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

every man

This is a generalization that refers to the soldiers of Judah who survived the battle. Alternate translation: “the surviving soldiers of Judah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

²² And [Judah](#) was struck down before [Israel](#), and each fled to his tent.

UST

²² The army of Judah was badly defeated by the army of Israel, and all the soldiers of Judah fled to their homes.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

2 Chronicles 25:23

four hundred cubits in distance

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “400 cubits in distance” or “a length of 180 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [the gate of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [Israel](#)
- [at Beth Shemesh](#)
- [at Beth Shemesh](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#) (2)

ULT

²³ And [Amaziah, the king of Judah, the son of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz](#), Joash, [the king of Israel](#), seized [at Beth Shemesh](#). And he brought him [to Jerusalem](#), and he broke through the wall of [Jerusalem](#) from the gate of [Ephraim](#) until [the gate of](#) the Corner, 400 cubits.

UST

²³ King Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah there. Then he brought Amaziah to Jerusalem, and his soldiers tore down the wall that was around the city, from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate. That was a section that was one-hundred and eighty meters long.

2 Chronicles 25:24

with Obed Edom

Here “Obed Edom” refers to this man’s descendants. Alternate translation: “under the care of the descendants of Obed Edom” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

the king’s house

Alternate translation: “the royal palace”

Translation Words - ULT

- the gold
- and the silver
- in the house of
- God
- the treasures
- in the house of
- the king
- the sons of
- he returned
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- God
- son
- temple, house, house of God
- Samaria, Samaritan
- gold, golden
- house, household
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- silver
- storehouse

ULT

²⁴ And with all the gold and the silver and all the items that were found in the house of God with Obed Edom, and the treasures in the house of the king, and the sons of the hostages, he returned to Samaria.

UST

²⁴ His soldiers also carried away the gold, silver, and other valuable objects from the temple that the descendants of Obed Edom had been guarding. They also took away the valuable things in the palace, and they took to Samaria some prisoners whom they had captured.

2 Chronicles 25:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Amaziah
- the son of
- the son of
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Judah
- And...lived
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)

ULT

²⁵ And Amaziah the son of Joash, the king of Judah, lived after the death of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz, the king of Israel, 15 years.

UST

²⁵ King Jehoash of Israel died, and King Amaziah of Judah lived for fifteen years after that.

2 Chronicles 25:26

As for the other matters ... are they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?

This rhetorical question is used to remind the reader that what happened to Amaziah is well-known. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "All of the matters concerning Amaziah, behold, are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the other matters concerning Amaziah, first and last

Here the phrase "first and last" refers to those extremes and everything in between. Alternate translation: "all the matters concerning Amaziah" (See: [Merism](#))

behold

This alerts the reader to pay special attention to the truth of what follows.

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁶ And the remainder of the matters of [Amaziah](#), the first things and the last things, behold, are they not written on the scroll of [the kings of Judah](#) and Israel?

UST

²⁶ An account of all the other things that Amaziah did while he was the king of Judah is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

2 Chronicles 25:27

turned away from following Yahweh

Here “turn away” is an idiom that means he no longer obeyed Yahweh. Alternate translation: “stopped obeying Yahweh” or “started to disobey Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

they began to make a conspiracy ... they sent

The text does not state to whom “they” refers. Retain the generic “they” in your translation if possible.

make a conspiracy against him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **conspiracy**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “conspire against him” or “plot against him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Lachish

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and they put him to death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

²⁷ And from the time that [Amaziah](#) turned from after [Yahweh](#), and they bound against him a conspiracy [in Jerusalem](#). And he fled to Lachish. And they sent after him to Lachish, [and they put him to death](#) there.

UST

²⁷ From the time that Amaziah started to disobey Yahweh, some men in Jerusalem planned to kill him. He was able to escape to the city of Lachish, but those who wanted to kill him sent another group of people to Lachish and killed him there.

2 Chronicles 25:28

They brought

The text does not state to whom the word “They” refers. Retain the generic “they” in your translation if possible.

brought him back

Alternate translation: “brought back his body”

city of Judah

This was another name for Jerusalem, which was also called the city of David.

Translation Words - ULT

- horses
- his fathers
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT

28 And they carried him on horses, and they buried him with his fathers in a city of Judah.

UST

28 They put his corpse on a horse and brought it back to Jerusalem and buried it where his ancestors had been buried in what is called the city of Judah.

2 Chronicles 26

2 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Uzzah the leper

Uzzah was powerful when he followed Yahweh. When he entered the temple to burn incense like a priest, God made him a leper. Lepers could not properly worship Yahweh because they were always unclean. (See: [temple, house, house of God](#) and [priest, priesthood](#) and [clean, wash](#))

2 Chronicles 26:1

All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah

The word "All" is a generalization. Some people may not have wanted him to be king. Alternate translation: "The people of Judah took the 16 year-old Uzziah and made him king after his father, Amaziah" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

sixteen

"16" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- Judah
- a son of
- And they made...king
- his father
- Amaziah

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group
- reign, rule

ULT

¹ And all [the people of Judah](#) took Uzziah, and he was [a son of](#) 16 years. [And they made](#) him [king](#) in the place of [his father Amaziah](#).

UST

¹ All the people took Uzziah and made him their king, in the place of his father Amaziah. Uzziah was sixteen years old at that time.

2 Chronicles 26:2

It was he who rebuilt Elath

Uzziah did not do this alone. Alternate translation: “It was he who ordered Elath to be rebuilt” or “It was he who supervised the rebuilding of Elath” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Elath

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

restored it to Judah

“returned it to Judah.” This means that his army captured the city so that now it belonged to Judah again.

slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way to say he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he restored it](#)
- [to Judah](#)
- [the king](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

² He himself built Eloth, [and he restored it to Judah](#) after the lying down of [the king](#) with [his fathers](#).

UST

² While he was the king, after his father King Amaziah had died, he had his workers rebuild the city of Elath and brought that city under the protection of Judah.

2 Chronicles 26:3

sixteen ... fifty-two

"16...52" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

³ [A son of](#) 16 years was Uzziah when he became king. And 52 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother was Jekoliah from [Jerusalem](#).

UST

³ Uzziah ruled in Jerusalem for fifty-two years. His mother was Jecoliah; she was from Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 26:4

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

following the example of his father, Amaziah, in everything

This implies that his father had done what was right in God’s eyes. Alternate translation: “just as his father, Amaziah, had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in everything

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “in the same way” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Amaziah
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Amaziah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴ And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, according to all that Amaziah his father had done.

UST

⁴ Uzziah did the things that Yahweh said were good, like his father Amaziah had done.

2 Chronicles 26:5

He set himself to seek God

Here “set himself” is a metaphor for being determined to do something. Seeking God represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. Alternate translation: “He was determined to obey God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the days of Zechariah

Here “the days of Zechariah” is a metonym referring to the time period during which Zechariah was priest. Alternate translation: “when Zechariah was priest” (See: [Metonymy](#))

As long as he sought Yahweh

Alternate translation: “During the whole time that he sought Yahweh”

sought Yahweh

Seeking Yahweh represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. Alternate translation: “chose to obey Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seeking](#)
- [his seeking](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Zechariah](#)
- [the one instructing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [caused him to prosper](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [teach, teaching, untaught](#)

ULT

⁵ And he was [seeking God](#) in the days of [Zechariah, the one instructing](#) to see [God ^{\[1\]}](#). And in the days of [his seeking Yahweh](#), [God caused him to prosper](#).

UST

⁵ He set himself to seek God in the days of Zechariah. Zechariah is the one who taught him to give honor to God. For as long as he sought Yahweh, God made him successful.

2 Chronicles 26:6

Uzziah went out and fought against the Philistines

Here “Uzziah” represents himself and his army that he led. Alternate translation: “Uzziah led his army out to fight against the Philistines” or “Uzziah and his army went out and fought against the Philistines” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

He broke down ... he built cities

Here the pronouns “He” and “him” represent Uzziah and his army. Alternate translation: “Uzziah and his army broke down ... they built cities” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jabneh

This was a town in northern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the country of Ashdod

Alternate translation: “the country surrounding Ashdod” or “near Ashdod”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he went out](#)
- [Ashdod](#)
- [in Ashdod](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)

ULT

⁶ [And he went out](#), and he fought against the Philistines. And he broke through the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of [Ashdod](#). And he built cities [in Ashdod](#) and among the Philistines.

UST

⁶ Uzziah and his army went to attack the army of Philistia. They tore down the walls of the cities of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod. Then they rebuilt the cities near Ashdod and in other places in Philistia.

2 Chronicles 26:7

God helped him

Here the pronouns “He” and “him” represent Uzziah and his army.
Alternate translation: “God helped them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Gurbaal

This was a town in Arabia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meunites

This is likely people who moved to that area from the kingdom of Maon near Mount Seir. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)

ULT

⁷ And [God](#) helped him against [the Philistines](#), and against the Arabians who dwelled in Gurbaal, and the Meunites.

UST

⁷ God helped them to fight the army of Philistia and the Arabs who lived in the city of Gur Baal, and the descendants of Meun who had come to that area from Edom.

2 Chronicles 26:8

his fame spread, even to the entrance of Egypt

His fame spreading is a metaphor for people in various places learning about him. Alternate translation: "people who lived even as far away as the border of Egypt learned about the things he was doing"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Ammonites
- tribute
- his name
- Egypt
- he was becoming strong

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Ammon, Ammonite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- grain offering
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁸ And the Ammonites gave tribute to Uzziah. And his name went as far as the border of Egypt because he was becoming strong increasingly.

UST

⁸ Even the Ammon people group paid taxes to Uzziah each year. So Uzziah became famous as far as the border of Egypt, because he had become very powerful.

2 Chronicles 26:9

Uzziah built towers

Here “Uzziah” represents the workers he had commanded to build the towers. Alternate translation: “Uzziah had his workers build towers” or “Uzziah’s workers built towers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the...Gate](#)
- [the...Gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

ULT

⁹ And Uzziah built towers [in Jerusalem](#) at the Corner [Gate](#), and at the Valley [Gate](#), and at the Angle, and he made them strong.

UST

⁹ Uzziah’s workers built watchtowers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, at the Valley Gate, and at the place where the wall turns, and they placed weapons in those towers.

2 Chronicles 26:10

He built watchtowers ... and dug many cisterns

Uzziah commanded his workers, and they did these things. Alternate translation: “He had his workers build watchtowers ... and dig many cisterns” or “They built watchtowers ... and dug many cisterns” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had much cattle ... He had farmers ... he loved farming

The word “he” refers to Uzziah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness](#)
- [and plowmen](#)
- [a lover of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And he built towers [in the wilderness](#), and he dug out many cisterns, for much cattle was to him, both in the lowlands and in the plains, [and plowmen](#) and vinedressers in the hills and in Carmel, for [a lover of](#) the ground he was.

UST

¹⁰ They also built watchtowers in the wilderness and dug many wells. They did that to provide water for a lot of the king's cattle that were in the foothills and in the plains. Uzziah was very interested in farming, so he also stationed workers to take care of his fields, vineyards in the hills, and in the fertile areas.

2 Chronicles 26:11

Jeiel ... Maaseiah, the officer ... Hananiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an army of
- who went out
- by the hand of
- the hand of
- the scribe
- Hananiah
- from the chiefs of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- scribe
- Hananiah
- chief, leader
- hand
- hand
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

11 And there was to Uzziah [an army of](#) doers of battle [who went out](#) for war according to the troop by the numbering of the mustering [by the hand of](#) Jeiel, [the scribe](#), and Maaseiah, the official, under [the hand of Hananiah](#), [from the chiefs of the king](#).

UST

11 Uzziah's army was trained for fighting battles. They were in groups that were always ready to go into battles. Jeiel, the king's secretary, and Maaseiah, one of the army officers, counted the men and placed them in groups. Hananiah, one of the king's officials, was their commander.

2 Chronicles 26:12

the leaders of the families who led the mighty men

Alternate translation: "the family leaders who led the mighty men"

2,600

"two thousand six hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heads of](#)
- [the fathers](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

¹² All the number of [the heads of the fathers](#) according to the mighty ones of [strength](#), 2,600.

UST

¹² The total number of the family leaders who led the strongest soldiers in battle was 2,600 in number.

2 Chronicles 26:13

307,500

“three hundred seven thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Under their hand was an army

Here “their hand” represents their authority. Alternate translation: “Under their authority was an army” or “They commanded an army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their hand](#)
- [strength](#)
- [with...of power](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

13 And under [their hand](#), an army of war 307,500 doers of battle with [strength of power](#) to help [the king](#) against the enemy.

UST

13 In the groups that those leaders commanded there was a total of 307,500 well-trained soldiers. It was a very powerful army, ready to fight the king's enemies.

2 Chronicles 26:14

helmets

A helmet is a protective head covering.

coats of mail

This is a covering for the body made of metal links or chains.

Translation Words - ULT

- and bows
- slings

Translation Words - UST

- bow and arrow, a bow
- curtain

ULT

¹⁴ And Uzziah prepared for them—for all the army—shields, and spears, and helmets, and armor, and bows, and stones of slings.

UST

¹⁴ Uzziah gave to each soldier a shield, a spear, a helmet, a vest made of iron plates, a bow and arrows, and a sling for throwing stones.

2 Chronicles 26:15

he built machines that were designed by skillful men

Here “he built machines” represents Uzziah commanding his workers to build them. Alternate translation: “his workers built machines that were designed by skillful men” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the battlements

These were the corners of the city walls where soldiers could fight from.

he was greatly helped

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God greatly helped him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [his name](#)
- [And...went out](#)
- [he did wondrously](#)
- [he was strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he made [in Jerusalem](#) war machines, invention of an inventor, to be on the towers and on the corners to shoot arrows and great stones. And [his name went out](#) as far as a distance, for [he did wondrously](#) to be helped until when [he was strong](#).

UST

¹⁵ In Jerusalem his skilled workers made machines to put on the watchtowers and on the corners of the walls, to shoot arrows and to hurl large stones. He became very famous even in distant places, because God helped him very much and enabled him to become very powerful.

2 Chronicles 26:16

his heart was lifted up

Here the heart being lifted up represents pride. Alternate translation: "he became proud" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his heart
- against Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his God
- the temple of
- the altar of

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- God
- heart
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

16 But at his strength, his heart was high until destroying, and he acted unfaithfully against Yahweh, his God, and he went into the temple of Yahweh to sacrifice on the altar of incense.

UST

16 But because Uzziah was very powerful, he became very proud, and that caused him to be punished. He disobeyed what Yahweh his God had commanded. He went into the temple to burn incense on the altar where God had said that only the priests should burn incense.

2 Chronicles 26:17

with him eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men

The verb “went” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “with him went eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men” or “eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men, went with him” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [the priests of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [strength](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And Azariah, [the priest](#), went in after him, and with him [the priests of Yahweh](#), 80 [sons of strength](#).

UST

¹⁷ Azariah, the high priest, and eighty other brave priests followed him into the temple.

2 Chronicles 26:18

It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh

Alternate translation: "It is not right for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh" or "Uzziah, you do not have the right to burn incense to Yahweh"

the sons of Aaron

Here "sons" represents descendants. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Aaron" (See: [Metonymy](#))

who are consecrated to burn incense

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom God has consecrated to burn incense" or "whom God has chosen to burn incense"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [for the priests](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the ones consecrated](#)
- [Go out](#)
- [the sanctuary](#)
- [you acted unfaithfully](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And they stood against Uzziah [the king](#), and they said to him, "Not for you, Uzziah, to sacrifice [to Yahweh](#), but [for the priests, the sons of Aaron, the ones consecrated](#) to sacrifice. [Go out](#) from [the sanctuary](#), for [you acted unfaithfully](#), and not for you for honor from Yahweh [God](#)."

UST

¹⁸ They rebuked him and said to him, "Uzziah, it is not right for you to burn incense to Yahweh because you are not set apart to serve as a priest, and only a priest can burn incense to Yahweh. The priests are the descendants of Aaron our first high priest, and you are not one of them! You must leave immediately, because you have disobeyed Yahweh our God, and he will not honor you for what you have done!"

2 Chronicles 26:19

censer

This is a special pan or bowl used for burning incense.

Translation Words - ULT

- and in his hand
- the priests
- the priests
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- hand

ULT

19 And Uzziah raged, and in his hand was a censer to sacrifice. And when he raged against the priests, and the leprosy, it appeared on his forehead before the priests in the house of Yahweh from beside the altar of incense.

UST

19 Now Uzziah was holding in his hand a pan for burning incense, and he became very angry with the priests. While he was expressing his anger, while he stood beside the altar of incense in front of the priests, suddenly spots of leprosy appeared on his forehead.

2 Chronicles 26:20

behold, he had become leprous

The word “behold” here shows that the priests were surprised by what they saw.

They quickly drove him out of there

Alternate translation: “They quickly forced him out of there” or “They quickly made him leave”

Yahweh had struck him

This speaks of Yahweh making him sick as if Yahweh had hit him.
Alternate translation: “Yahweh had made him ill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [the...priest](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [chief, leader](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Azariah the [head priest](#) turned to him, and all [the priests](#), and, behold, he was leprous on his forehead. And they hastened him from there. And also, he himself hastened to go out, for [Yahweh](#) afflicted him.

UST

²⁰ When Azariah the high priest and all the other priests who were there looked at him, they saw the leprosy on his forehead, so they quickly took him outside. And truly the king was eager to leave the temple, because he knew that it was Yahweh who had caused him to have that leprosy, and he did not want it to become worse.

2 Chronicles 26:21

to the day of his death

Alternate translation: “until he died” or “the rest of his life”

lived in a separate house

This indicates that he lived away from other houses and other people.

he was cut off from the house of Yahweh

Here being “cut off” from Yahweh’s house represents being excluded from the temple. Alternate translation: “he was excluded from the house of Yahweh” or “he was not allowed to go to the temple” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jotham, his son, was over the king’s house

Here being over something represents having responsibility or authority for it. Alternate translation: “Jotham, his son, was responsible for the king’s house” or “Jotham, his son, was in charge of the palace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the king’s house

This refers to the king’s palace, which the king was no longer living in.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- in the house of
- from the house of
- the house of
- the land
- he was cut off
- Yahweh
- And Jotham
- his son
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Jotham
- decree, decreed
- earth, land
- house, household
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

²¹ And Uzziah [the king](#) was leprous until the day of his death. And he dwelled [in the house of](#) separation, being leprous, for [he was cut off from the house of Yahweh](#). And [Jotham his son](#) was over [the house of the king](#), judging [the people of the land](#).

UST

²¹ King Uzziah had leprosy until he died. Because he had leprosy, he lived in a house that was not near other houses, and he was not allowed to enter the courtyard of the temple. His son Jotham supervised the palace and ruled the people of Judah.

- people, people group

2 Chronicles 26:22

The other matters concerning Uzziah, from first to last, were recorded by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “As for the other matters concerning Uzziah, from first to last, the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz recorded them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from first to last

This phrase represents the whole time of Uzziah’s reign. Alternate translation: “from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign” (See: [Merism](#))

Amoz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Amoz](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amoz](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

ULT

²² And the remainder of the matters of Uzziah, the first things and the last things, [Isaiah, the son of Amoz, the prophet](#) wrote.

UST

²² A record of all the other things that Uzziah did while he was the king of Judah was written by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz.

2 Chronicles 26:23

So Uzziah slept with his ancestors

This is polite way to say that he died. Alternate translation: "So Uzziah died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

they buried him with his ancestors

Alternate translation: "the people buried him near his ancestors" or "they buried him where his ancestors were buried"

Jotham, his son, became king in his place

Alternate translation: "Jotham, his son, became king after Uzziah"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [belonged to the kings](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

²³ And Uzziah laid down with [his fathers](#). And they buried him with [his fathers](#) in the field of the grave that [belonged to the kings](#), for they said, "Leprous is he." And [Jotham his son became king](#) in his place.
26:5 ^[1], or or . Scholars are divided.

UST

²³ Because Uzziah was a leper, when he died they would not bury him in the royal tombs. Instead, they buried him in a nearby cemetery that the kings owned. Then his son Jotham became the king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 27

2 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jotham was able to conquer the people of Ammon because he obeyed the Lord. For Yahweh, trust in Yahweh is the key to victory in battle. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Chronicles 27:1

twenty-five years old ... sixteen years

"25 years old...16 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jerushah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Jotham](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Zadok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [Zadok](#)

ULT

¹ [A son of](#) 25 years [was Jotham](#) when he became king. And 16 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother was Jerushah, the daughter of [Zadok](#).

UST

¹ Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His mother was Jerushah, the daughter of the priest Zadok.

2 Chronicles 27:2

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Jotham's actions. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: "He did what Yahweh judged to be right" or "He did what Yahweh considered to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in everything

Alternate translation: "in everything he did"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his father
- the temple of
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group

ULT

² And he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), according to all that Uzziah [his father](#) did, except he did not go into [the temple of Yahweh](#). And yet [the people](#) were acting corruptly.

UST

² Jotham obeyed Yahweh and did what Yahweh approved. He followed the example of his father Uzziah in everything he did. (He did not, however, go into the Temple of Yahweh to burn incense as his father had done.) Yet the people of Judah continued to do the things that showed how sinful they had become.

2 Chronicles 27:3

He built the upper gate ... he built much

Since Jotham was king, he may have had his workers build these things. Alternate translation: "He had his workers build the upper gate ... he had his workers build many things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the hill of Ophel

This is a hill in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...gate of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

³ He himself built the upper [gate of the house of Yahweh](#), and on the wall of Ophel he built in abundance.

UST

³ Jotham's workers rebuilt the Upper Gate of the temple, and they did a lot of work to repair the wall near the hill of Ophel.

2 Chronicles 27:4

he built cities ... he built castles and towers

Since Jotham was king, he may have had his workers build these things. Alternate translation: "he had his workers build cities ... he had his workers build castles and towers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

⁴ And cities he built in the hill country of [Judah](#), and in the forests he built fortresses and towers.

UST

⁴ They built cities in the hills of Judah, and they built forts and towers for defense in the forests.

2 Chronicles 27:5

He fought also with the king of the people of Ammon

You may need to translate so that the reader understands that Jothan led his army to fight. Alternate translation: “He also led his army to fight with the king of the people of Ammon” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

with the king of the people of Ammon

You may need to translate so that the reader understands that the king of Ammon led his army to fight. Alternate translation: “with the king of Ammon and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

one hundred talents of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. A “talent” is equivalent to 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “100 talents of silver” or “3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ten thousand measures of wheat

You may convert this to a modern measure. The word translated here as “measure” is “cor” and is equivalent to 220 liters. Alternate translation: “10,000 measures of wheat” or “2,200 kiloliters of wheat” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Numbers](#))

ten thousand measures of barley

You may convert this to a modern measure. The word translated here as “measure” is “cor” and is equivalent to 220 liters. Alternate translation: “10,000 measures of barley” or “2,200 kiloliters of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Numbers](#))

in the second and third years

Alternate translation: “in the second and third years after he defeated them”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the sons of
- the sons of
- the sons of
- silver
- wheat
- brought back

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- son

ULT

⁵ And he himself fought with the king of the sons of Ammon, and he was strong over them. And the sons of Ammon gave to him in that year 100 talents of silver, 10,000 kors of wheat, and 10,000 barley. This the sons of Ammon brought back to him, and in the second year and the third.

UST

⁵ During the time that he was the king of Judah, his army attacked and defeated the army of the Ammon people group. Then, every year during the next three years, he required them to pay to him about three and one-third metric tons of silver, 2,200 kiloliters of wheat, and 2,200 kiloliters of barley.

- son
- son
- king, kingship
- silver
- wheat

2 Chronicles 27:6

he walked firmly before Yahweh his God

Jotham's actions and lifestyle are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. That he walked firmly means that he was devoted to living in this way. Alternate translation: "he faithfully obeyed Yahweh his God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jotham](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jotham](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Jotham](#) strengthened himself for he established his ways before [Yahweh his God](#).

UST

⁶ Jotham faithfully obeyed Yahweh his God, and as a result he became a very powerful king.

2 Chronicles 27:7

his ways

Jotham's actions are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. Alternate translation: "the things that he did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

see, they are written in the book ... Judah

Alternate translation: "anyone can look in the book ... Judah and see that they are written there"

they are written in the book

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they are in the book" or "you can read of them in the book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Israel and Judah

This is a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jotham](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁷ And the remainder of the matters of [Jotham](#), and all his battles and his ways, behold, they are written on the scroll of [the king of Israel and Judah](#).

UST

⁷ A record of everything else that Jotham did during the time that he was the king, including the wars that his army fought, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

2 Chronicles 27:8

twenty-five years old ... sixteen years

"25 years old...16 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁸ [A son of](#) 25 years he was when he became king; and 16 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁸ After he had ruled Judah for sixteen years, he died when he was forty-one years old.

2 Chronicles 27:9

Jotham slept with his ancestors

Jotham dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "Jotham died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

Alternate translation: "people buried him"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Jotham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁹ And [Jotham](#) laid down with [his fathers](#), and they buried him in the city of [David](#). And [Ahaz his son reigned](#) in his place.

UST

⁹ He was buried in Jerusalem, and his son Ahaz became the next king of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jotham](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

2 Chronicles 28

2 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Ahaz's idolatry

Judah was defeated by all of the neighboring countries because King Ahaz was worshiping all sorts of foreign gods.
(See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Chronicles 28:1

twenty years old ... sixteen years

"20 years old...16 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Ahaz's actions. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: "what Yahweh judged to be right" or "what Yahweh considered to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Ahaz](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

¹ [A son of](#) 20 years [was Ahaz](#) when he became king, and 16 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And he did not do what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like David [his father](#).

UST

¹ Ahaz was twenty years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His ancestor King David had been a good king, but Ahaz was not like David. He constantly disobeyed Yahweh

2 Chronicles 28:2

he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel

Walking represents behavior and actions. Alternate translation: “he acted the same way that the kings of Israel had acted” or “he did the things that the kings of Israel had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

² And he walked in the ways of [the kings of Israel](#); and also metal images he made for the Baals.

UST

² and was as sinful as the kings of Israel had been. He made idols of the god Baal by having craftsmen cast them in metal.

2 Chronicles 28:3

the Valley of Ben Hinnom

This is a valley in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

before the people of Israel

The people of those nations fled as the people of Israel moved into the land. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “before the people of Israel who moved into the land” or “as the people of Israel moved into the land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ben
- his sons
- the sons of
- in fire
- according to the abominations of
- the nations
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- abomination, abominable
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- nation

ULT

³ And he himself offered incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. And he caused his sons to burn in fire, according to the abominations of the nations that Yahweh drove away from before the sons of Israel.

UST

³ He burned incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He even killed some of his own sons in fires as sacrifices. That imitated the disgusting customs that the people groups who previously lived there had done, people whom Yahweh had drive out when the Israelites were advancing through the land.

2 Chronicles 28:4

the high places and on the hills and under every green tree

These are places where the people of the other nations worshiped their false gods.

under every green tree

God wanted his people to offer sacrifices to him in Jerusalem. The word “every” here is an exaggeration to show how determined King Ahaz was to disobey God by offering sacrifices in many other places instead. Alternate translation: “under many green trees” or “under many green trees around the country” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

⁴ And he sacrificed and offered incense at the high places and on the hills and under every leafy tree.

UST

⁴ He offered sacrifices to idols at the houses built upon hilltops and under every big green tree.

2 Chronicles 28:5

Yahweh the God of Ahaz gave him into the hand of the king of Aram

Here the metonym “hand” represents power. God enabling the army of the king of Aram to defeat Ahaz and his army is spoken of as if God had put Ahaz in the hand of the king of Aram. Alternate translation: “Yahweh the God of Ahaz enabled the king of Aram to defeat Ahaz” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

carried away from him

“carried away from Ahaz.” Here “him” represents Ahaz’s army. Alternate translation: “carried away from Ahaz’s army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ahaz was also given into the hand of the king of Israel who defeated him

Here the metonym “hand” represents power. God enabling the army of the king of Israel to defeat Ahaz and his army is spoken of as if God had put Ahaz in the hand of the king of Israel. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh also enabled the king of Israel to defeat Ahaz” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁵ And [Yahweh his God](#) gave him [into the hand of the king of Aram](#). And he struck him, and they took captive from him many [captives](#). And they brought to Damascus. And also [into the hand of the king of Israel](#) he gave, and he struck him a great striking.

UST

⁵ Therefore Yahweh his God allowed his army to be defeated by the army of the king of Aram. They captured many soldiers of Judah and took them as prisoners to Damascus. The army of the king of Israel also defeated the army of Judah and killed very many of their soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [captives](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

2 Chronicles 28:6

Pekah son of Remaliah

This was the king of Israel. Both “Pekah” and “Remaliah” are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

120,000 soldiers

“one hundred twenty thousand soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [in Judah](#)
- [strength](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

⁶ And Pekah [the son of](#) Remaliah killed [in Judah](#) 120,000 in one day, all [sons of strength](#), when they abandoned [Yahweh the God of their fathers](#).

UST

⁶ In one day the army of Remaliah's son, King Pekah of Israel, killed 120,000 fine soldiers in Judah. That happened because the people of Judah had abandoned Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 28:7

Zicri ... Maaseiah ... Azrikam ... Elkanah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a powerful man

This is an idiom that refers to a mighty warrior. Alternate translation: “a mighty warrior” (See: [Idiom](#))

who was next to the king

This idiom means that this man was the king’s assistant who was second in command. Alternate translation: “who was the king’s second in command” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a mighty one of
- Ephraim
- the son of
- the king
- the king
- of the house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

⁷ And Zicri, a mighty one of Ephraim, killed Maaseiah, the son of the king, and Azrikam, the leader of the house, and Elkanah, the second of the king.

UST

⁷ Zicri, a warrior from the tribe of Ephraim, killed King Ahaz’s son Maaseiah, Azrikam, who was in charge of the palace, and Elkanah, the king’s assistant.

2 Chronicles 28:8

The army of Israel took captive from their relatives

"From their own relatives, the army of Israel took captive." The word "their" refers to the army of Israel. The narrator speaks of the people of Judah as the relatives of the people of Israel.

200,000 wives, sons, and daughters

"two hundred thousand wives, sons, and daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [sons](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [from their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁸ And [the sons of Israel](#) took captive [from their brothers](#) 200,000 wives, [sons](#), and daughters. And also much plunder they plundered from them. And they brought the plunder back to Samaria.

UST

⁸ The soldiers of Israel captured 200,000 of the people of Judah, including many wives and sons and daughters of the soldiers of Judah. They also seized and took back to Samaria many valuable things.

2 Chronicles 28:9

Oded

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he gave them into your hand

Here the word “hand” represents power. God enabling the army of Israel to defeat the army of Judah is spoken of as if God had put the army of Judah in the hand of the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “God enabled you to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

you have slaughtered them in a rage that reached up to heaven

Oded speaks of Yahweh knowing how severely the army of Israel slaughtered the army of Judah as if the rage with which the army of Israel slaughtered them were an object so large that it reached into heaven. That Yahweh knows what they have done implies that he will respond. Alternate translation: “you have slaughtered them in such great rage that Yahweh himself has noticed and will take vengeance” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a prophet](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [his name](#)
- [And he went out](#)
- [in wrath](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [your fathers](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [into your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁹ And there, [a prophet of Yahweh](#) was, Oded [his name](#). [And he went out](#) before the army coming to Samaria. And he said to them, “Behold, [in wrath](#), [Yahweh](#), [the God of your fathers](#) was against [Judah](#); he gave them [into your hand](#). But you all killed them in rage; up to [the heavens](#) it reached.

UST

⁹ But a prophet of Yahweh, whose name was Oded, was in Samaria. He went out of the city to meet the army as it was returning. He said to them, “Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belonged, was angry with the people of Judah, so he has handed them over to you, and you have slaughtered so many in a towering rage.

2 Chronicles 28:10

But are you not guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God?

Oded asks this rhetorical question to rebuke the army of Israel and to emphasize the positive answer that the question anticipates. Alternate translation: "But you yourselves are guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)
- [as male slaves](#)
- [wrongdoings](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And now [the sons of Judah and Jerusalem](#) you all are saying to subjugate [as male slaves](#) and as female slaves for yourselves. Are you surely not with [wrongdoings](#) of your own [against Yahweh your God](#)?

UST

¹⁰ And now you want to sin by causing men and women from Judah to become your slaves, but you have certainly offended Yahweh, our God, in this matter.

2 Chronicles 28:11

Yahweh's fierce wrath is on you

Oded speaks of Yahweh being extremely angry with the Israelite army as if Yahweh's wrath were an object that were upon them. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is extremely angry with you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and bring back](#)
- [you all took captive](#)
- [from your brothers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

11 And now, hear me [and bring back](#) the captives whom [you all took captive from your brothers](#). For the burning anger of [Yahweh](#) is upon you all."

UST

11 So listen to me! Send back to Judah your fellow countrymen whom you have captured, because Yahweh is extremely angry with you for what you did to them."

2 Chronicles 28:12

Azariah son of Jehohanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

stood up against those who came back from the war

The phrase “stood up against” is an idiom that means to confront or to oppose. Alternate translation: “confronted those who came back from the war” or “opposed those who came back from the war” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from the heads of
- the sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (2)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- head

ULT

¹² And men rose from the heads of the sons of Ephraim—Azariah the son of Jehohanan, Berechiah the son of Meshillemoth, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai—against the ones coming from the army.

UST

¹² Then some of the leaders of the tribe of Ephraim—Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai—rebuked those who were returning from the battle.

2 Chronicles 28:13

something that will bring on us sin

The leaders speak of doing something that will cause them to be guilty of sin as if it were sin were an object that the action brings upon them. Alternate translation: “something that will cause us to be guilty of sinning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there is fierce wrath against Israel

This phrase implies that it is Yahweh’s fierce wrath that is against Israel. The words “fierce wrath” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “Yahweh is extremely angry with the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [our sins](#)
- [our wrongdoings](#)
- [is the guilt](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

13 And they said to them, “Do not bring the captives here, for wrongdoing of [Yahweh](#) against us you all are saying to add upon [our sins](#) and upon [our wrongdoings](#). For much [is the guilt](#) to us and the burning anger upon [Israel](#).”

UST

13 They said to them, “You must not bring those prisoners here! If you do that, Yahweh will consider that we are guilty of sinning. We are already guilty of committing many sins; do you want to cause us to be even more guilty by committing another sin? God is already very angry with us people of Israel!”

2 Chronicles 28:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs
- the assembly

Translation Words - UST

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- chief, leader

ULT

¹⁴ And the armed ones released the captives and the spoils before the chiefs and all the assembly.

UST

¹⁴ So, while their leaders and others were watching, the soldiers released the prisoners, and also gave back to them the valuable things that they had captured.

2 Chronicles 28:15

The men who were assigned by name

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The men whom the leaders assigned by name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sandals

This is a type of shoe.

put the weak ones on donkeys

Alternate translation: "put the weak ones who were too weak to walk on donkeys"

Translation Words - ULT

- [by names](#)
- [And they fed them](#)
- [And they poured on them](#)
- [to Jericho](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [And they returned](#)
- [to Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [devour](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

15 And the men who were marked [by names](#) rose and they grasped among the captives, and all their naked persons they clothed from the plunder. And they clothed them, and they gave them sandals. [And they fed them](#), and they gave them drink. [And they poured on them](#), and they led them on donkeys all who stumble. And they brought them [to Jericho](#), the City of Palms, near [their brothers](#). [And they returned to Samaria](#).

UST

15 The leaders assigned some men to take care of the prisoners. These men took some of the clothes that the soldiers had taken from the people of Judah and gave those clothes to the people who were naked. They also gave to the prisoners sandals and other clothes, as well as things to eat and drink, and they gave them olive oil to rub on their wounds. They gave donkeys to those who were very weak, in order that they could ride on them. Then they led them all to Jericho, the city that had many palm trees. Finally those men returned to Samaria.

2 Chronicles 28:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- the kings of
- Ahaz
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaz
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁶ At that time, King Ahaz sent to the kings of Assyria to help him.

UST

¹⁶ About that time, King Ahaz sent a message to the king of Assyria requesting help.

2 Chronicles 28:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Judah

ULT

¹⁷ And again the Edomites had come, and they struck Judah. And they took captive captives.

UST

¹⁷ He did that because the army from the Edom people group had come again and attacked Judah and taken away many of the people of Judah as prisoners.

2 Chronicles 28:18

They took Beth Shemesh

Taking a city is an idiom that means to conquer or to capture the city. Alternate translation: “The Philistines captured Beth Shemesh” (See: [Idiom](#))

Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soko ... Timnah ... Gimzo

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Judah](#)
- [Beth](#)
- [Shemesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

18 And the Philistines had raided among the cities of the lowlands and the Negev [of Judah](#). And they captured [Beth Shemesh](#), and Aijalon, and Gederoth, and Soko and its daughters, and Timnah and its daughters, and Gimzo and its daughters. And they dwelled there.

UST

18 At the same time, men from Philistia raided towns in the foothills and in the southern Judean wilderness. They captured the cities of Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, and Gederoth, as well as those of Soko, Timnah, and Gimzo with its nearby villages.

2 Chronicles 28:19

Yahweh brought Judah low because of Ahaz

The metonym "Judah" represents the people of Judah. Yahweh humiliating the people is spoken of as if he physically brought Judah low to the ground. Alternate translation: "Yahweh humiliated the people of Judah because of Ahaz" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

sinned against Yahweh very heavily

Ahaz sinning very much is spoken of as if sin were a very heavy object. Alternate translation: "sinned very greatly against Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- against Yahweh
- Judah
- Ahaz
- the king of
- Israel
- in Judah
- in faithlessness

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- transgress, transgression
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- Judah
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁹ For Yahweh humbled Judah because of Ahaz, the king of Israel; for he caused to break loose in Judah and to act faithlessly in faithlessness against Yahweh.

UST

¹⁹ Yahweh allowed those things to happen in order to humble King Ahaz, because he had encouraged the people of Judah to do wicked things and had disobeyed Yahweh very much.

2 Chronicles 28:20

Tiglath-Pileser

This is Tiglath-Pileser III, also known as Pul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

troubled him instead of strengthening him

Helping Ahaz against his enemies is spoken of as if it were strengthening Ahaz. Alternate translation: “caused him trouble instead of helping him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- he did...strengthen him

Translation Words - UST

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

²⁰ And Tiglath-Pileser, the king of Assyria, came against him. And he harassed him, and he did not strengthen him.

UST

²⁰ Tiglath-Pileser, the king of Assyria, sent his army saying that they would help Ahaz, but instead of helping him, they caused him trouble.

2 Chronicles 28:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaz
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the king
- to the king of
- and the chiefs
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

²¹ For Ahaz divided up the house of Yahweh and the house of the king and the chiefs. And he gave to the king of Assyria, but it was not a help to him.

UST

²¹ Ahaz's soldiers took some of the valuable things from the temple and from the king's palace and from other leaders of Judah, and sent them to the king of Assyria to pay him to help them, but the king of Assyria refused to help Ahaz.

2 Chronicles 28:22

in his time of suffering

Alternate translation: "when he was suffering"

Translation Words - ULT

- against Yahweh
- King
- Ahaz

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- king, kingship

ULT

²² And in the time of his harassment, and he added to act faithlessly against Yahweh, this King Ahaz.

UST

²² While King Ahaz was experiencing those troubles, he disobeyed Yahweh even more.

2 Chronicles 28:23

the gods of Damascus

The Syrians believed Damascus to be the city where their gods dwelt, much like Yahweh dwelt in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “the gods whom the Syrians worshiped in Damascus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

gods that had defeated him

This expresses Ahaz’s opinion. Because the Syrians had defeated him and his army, Ahaz attributed his defeat to the gods whom the Syrians worshiped. Alternate translation: “gods whom he believed had enabled the Syrian army to defeat him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they were the ruin of him and of all Israel

The word “ruin” can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “those gods ruined him and all Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all Israel

Here “Israel” represents the southern kingdom of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- to the gods of
- the gods of
- the kings of
- I will sacrifice
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingship
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

23 And he sacrificed to the gods of Damascus, those striking him, and he said, “Because the gods of the kings of Aram, they were helping them, to them I will sacrifice, and they will help me.” But they themselves were to him a cause to fall and to all Israel.

UST

23 He offered sacrifices to the gods that were worshiped in Damascus, whose army had defeated his army. He thought, “The gods that are worshiped by the kings of Aram have helped them, so I will offer sacrifices to those gods in order that they will help me.” But worshiping those gods caused Ahaz and all of Israel to be ruined.

2 Chronicles 28:24

the house of God ... the house of Yahweh

Here the word "house" represents the temple. Alternate translation: "the temple of God ... the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in every corner of Jerusalem

This could mean: (1) the word "corner" refers to street corners, or places where streets intersect. Alternate translation: "on every street corner in Jerusalem" or (2) the various parts of Jerusalem are spoken of as if they were the corners of the city. Alternate translation: "in every part of Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he made for himself altars

Since Ahaz was king, he may have had his workers make these high places. Alternate translation: "he had his workers make altars for him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaz](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#) (2)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [the doors of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [altars](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#) (2)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [Ahaz](#) gathered the items of [the house of God](#) and cut up the items of [the house of God](#). And he shut [the doors of the house of Yahweh](#). And he made for himself [altars](#) in every corner [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

²⁴ Ahaz gathered all the furnishings that were used in the temple and broke them into pieces. He locked the doors of the temple and set up altars for worshiping idols at every street corner in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 28:25

he made high places to burn sacrifices

Since Ahaz was king, he may have had his workers make these high places. Alternate translation: "he had his workers make high places to burn sacrifices" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Judah](#)
- [to...gods](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁵ And in every city and city [of Judah](#) he made high places to make sacrifices to other [gods](#). And he provoked to anger [Yahweh, the God of his fathers](#).

UST

²⁵ In every city in Judah, his workers built houses on the hilltops, and there they burned sacrifices to other gods, and that caused Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, to be very angry with them.

2 Chronicles 28:26

all his ways, first and last

Ahaz's actions are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. The phrase "first and last" refers to those extremes and everything in between. Alternate translation: "all that he did from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))

see, they are written in the book ... Israel

Alternate translation: "anyone can look at the book ... Israel and see that they are written there"

they are written in the book

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone has written them in the book" or "you can read of them in the book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁶ And the remainder of his matters and all his ways, the first things and the last things, behold, they are written on the scroll of [the kings of Judah](#) and Israel.

UST

²⁶ A record of the other things that Ahaz did while he was the king, from when he started to rule until he died, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

2 Chronicles 28:27

Ahaz slept with his ancestors

Ahaz dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "Ahaz died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

Alternate translation: "people buried him"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Ahaz" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Ahaz](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

²⁷ [And Ahaz](#) laid down with [his fathers](#), and they buried him in the city, [in Jerusalem](#), but they did not bring him to the graves of [the kings of Israel](#). And Hezekiah [his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

UST

²⁷ Ahaz died and was buried in Jerusalem, but he was not buried in the tombs where the other kings of Israel had been buried. Then his son Hezekiah became the king.

2 Chronicles 29

2 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Hezekiah. (2 Chronicles 29-32)

Special concepts in this chapter

Cleansing the temple

King Hezekiah was a great king. He cleaned and rededicated the temple. This was a sign that he wanted the people to return to worshiping Yahweh. (See: [clean, wash](#) and [temple, house, house of God](#) and [sign, proof, reminder](#))

2 Chronicles 29:1

twenty-five years old ... twenty-nine years

"25 years old...29 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Abijah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [as a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [was Abijah](#)
- [Zechariah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abijah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)

ULT

¹ Hezekiah became king [as a son of](#) 25 years, and 29 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And the name of his mother [was Abijah](#), the daughter of [Zechariah](#).

UST

¹ Hezekiah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Abijah, the daughter of a man whose name was Zechariah.

2 Chronicles 29:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Hezekiah's actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:1](#). Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judged to be right” or “what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

² And he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like all that [David his father](#) did.

UST

² Hezekiah did things that Yahweh considered to be right, like his ancestor King David had done.

2 Chronicles 29:3

in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hezekiah opened the doors ... and repaired them

Since Hezekiah was king, he may have had his workers do these things. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah ordered his workers to open the doors ... and to repair them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ He, in the first year [of his reigning](#), in the first month, himself opened [the doors of the house of Yahweh](#), and he made them strong.

UST

³ During the first month of the first year that Hezekiah was ruling Judah, he unlocked the doors of the temple, and his workers repaired them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of his reigning](#)
- [the doors of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

2 Chronicles 29:4

on the east side

This refers to the east side of the temple. Alternate translation: “on the east side of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)

ULT

⁴ And he brought in [the priests](#) and [the Levites](#), and he gathered them into the plaza to the east.

UST

⁴ Then he gathered the priests and other descendants of Levi in the courtyard on the east side of the temple,

2 Chronicles 29:5

carry away the filthiness from the holy place

The word “filthiness” refers to things that the people had used to worship other gods. The narrator speaks of these things making the temple unacceptable to Yahweh as if they were physically dirty. Alternate translation: “remove the things that defile the holy place” or “remove the things that make the holy place unacceptable to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levites](#)
- [consecrate yourselves](#)
- [and consecrate](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [your fathers](#)
- [and bring out](#)
- [the holy place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [God](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁵ And he said to them, “Hear me, [Levites](#)! Now, [consecrate yourselves and consecrate the house of Yahweh, the God of your fathers, and bring out](#) the defilement from [the holy place](#).”

UST

⁵ and he said to them, “You descendants of Levi, listen to me! Set yourselves apart, and prepare the house of Yahweh so it is a place that honors Yahweh, whom your ancestors worshiped; carry out all the filthiness that is in the holy place.”

2 Chronicles 29:6

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh our God

The word “sight” here represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of their ancestors’ actions. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh our God judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh our God considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it

These two phrases share similar meanings. The words “faces” and “backs” represent the people who turned so that their faces were away from the temple and their backs were towards it. Alternate translation: “turned away from the place where Yahweh lives” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it

Rejecting Yahweh and no longer worshiping him is spoken of as if the people had turned away from the temple. Alternate translation: “abandoned Yahweh’s temple and stopped worshiping him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the place where Yahweh lives

This refers to the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple where Yahweh lives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our fathers](#)
- [acted unfaithfully](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [from the tabernacle of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁶ For [our fathers acted unfaithfully](#), and they did [evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh our God](#). And they have abandoned him. And they turned [their faces from the tabernacle of Yahweh](#), and they turned the back.

UST

⁶ Our ancestors disobeyed God; they did many things that he says are evil, and they did things that are not pleasing to him. They abandoned this place where Yahweh lives, and they have stopped worshiping him.

2 Chronicles 29:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the doors of
- and burnt offerings
- of the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

⁷ Also, they shut the doors of the porch. And they extinguished the lamps, and incense they did not offer and burnt offerings they did not offer in the holy place of the God of Israel.

UST

⁷ They locked the doors of the temple and extinguished the lamps. They did not burn any incense, and they did not offer any sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar in the holy place.

2 Chronicles 29:8

the wrath of Yahweh had fallen on Judah and Jerusalem

Here the words “Judah and Jerusalem” refer to the people who live there. Hezekiah speaks of Yahweh being angry with the people and punishing them as if his wrath were an object that fell upon them. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh was angry, he had punished the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

an object of terror, of horror, and of scorn

This can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “something that terrifies and horrifies people, and something that people scorn” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

as you can see with your own eyes

The phrase “with your own eyes” emphasizes that the people can see this for themselves without others having to tell them about it. Alternate translation: “as you can see for yourselves”

ULT

⁸ And the wrath of [Yahweh](#) was on [Judah and Jerusalem](#). And he gave them to be a terror, to be a horror, and to be a hissing, just as you all are seeing with your eyes.

UST

⁸ Therefore, Yahweh has become very angry with us people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, and he has caused other people to become frightened and horrified of us. And they ridicule us. You know this very well.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

2 Chronicles 29:9

our fathers have fallen by the sword

The idiom “fallen by the sword” means to die in battle. The word “sword” represents the soldiers, who used swords as their primary weapons. Alternate translation: “our fathers have died in battle” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our fathers](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [and our sons](#)
- [are in captivity](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

⁹ And behold, [our fathers](#) fell [by the sword](#), [and our sons](#), and our daughters, and our wives [are in captivity](#) on account of this.

UST

⁹ That is why our fathers have been killed in battles, and our sons and daughters and our wives have been captured and taken to other countries.

2 Chronicles 29:10

it is in my heart

Here the word "heart" represents the thoughts and intentions. Hezekiah speaks of deciding to do something as if that thing were in his heart. Alternate translation: "it is my intention" or "I have decided" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

his fierce anger may turn away from us

Hezekiah speaks of Yahweh no longer being angry with them as if Yahweh's anger were a person who turns away from them Alternate translation: "he may no longer be angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my heart](#)
- [to cut](#)
- [a covenant](#)
- [with Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [so that...may turn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now with [my heart to cut a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that](#) his burning anger [may turn](#) from us.

UST

¹⁰ But now I intend to make a covenant with Yahweh, our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with us.

2 Chronicles 29:11

to stand before him

This could mean: (1) “to stand in his presence” or (2) this is an idiom that means to serve a person of high rank. Alternate translation: “to serve him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [My sons](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ones ministering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

11 [My sons](#), now, do not be negligent for you all [Yahweh](#) has chosen to stand before him, to minister to him, and to be to him [ones ministering](#) and ones offering sacrifices.”

UST

11 You who are like my sons, do not waste any time. Do immediately what Yahweh wants you to do. Yahweh has chosen you to stand in his presence and offer sacrifices and burn incense.”

2 Chronicles 29:12

General Information:

These verses list the names of the Levites who began to do the work that Hezekiah had ordered them to do. These are all men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Levites arose

Here the word "arose" is an idiom that means that the Levites began to act. Alternate translation: "the Levites began to work" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of (5)
- the son of (6)
- and Joel

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)
- son (6)
- Joel
- Levi, Levite

ULT

¹² And the Levites arose: Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah, from the sons of the Kohathites; and from the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehallelel; and from the Gershonites, Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah;

UST

¹² Then these descendants of Levi started to work in the temple. From the descendants of Kohath there were Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah. From the descendants of Merari there were Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehallelel. From the descendants of Gershon there were Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah.

2 Chronicles 29:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Asaph
- Zechariah

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Asaph
- Zechariah (OT)

ULT

¹³ and from the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeuel; and from the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah;

UST

¹³ From the descendants of Elizaphan there were Shimri and Jeiel. From the descendants of Asaph there were Zechariah and Mattaniah.

2 Chronicles 29:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

¹⁴ and from the sons of Heman, Jehuel and Shimei; and from the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel.

UST

¹⁴ From the descendants of Heman there were Jehiel and Shimei. From the descendants of Jeduthun there were Shemaiah and Uzziel.

2 Chronicles 29:15

following the words of Yahweh

This phrase shows that the king gave his command in obedience to the word of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “in obedience to the word of Yahweh” or “because of what Yahweh had said”

to cleanse the house of Yahweh

A place that is fit to be used for God’s purposes is spoken of as if it were physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their brothers](#)
- [and they consecrated themselves](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And they gathered [their brothers](#), [and they consecrated themselves](#), and they entered, according to the commandment of [the king](#) with the words of [Yahweh](#), to cleanse [the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁵ Those men gathered their fellow descendants of Levi and together they prepared themselves for the work of the priesthood. They took all the steps to prepare themselves so they could serve the king in Yahweh’s house, because the king was following Yahweh’s commands. And the Levites entered the temple to clean it up.

2 Chronicles 29:16

the house of Yahweh ... the courtyard of the house

Here the word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh ... the courtyard of the temple” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they brought out all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh

The word “filth” refers to things that the people had used to worship other gods. The narrator speaks of these things making the temple unacceptable to Yahweh as if they were physically dirty. Alternate translation: “they brought out all the defiled things that they found in the temple of Yahweh” or “they brought out all the things that they found in the temple of Yahweh that made it unacceptable to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

brook Kidron

A small body of water that flows on the east side of Jerusalem. At times it was used as a trash dump. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and they brought out](#)
- [to the court of](#)
- [the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And [the priests](#) entered the inner part of [the house of Yahweh](#) to cleanse; [and they brought out](#) all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of [Yahweh to the court of the house of Yahweh](#). And [the Levites](#) took to bring out to the brook Kidron outside.

UST

¹⁶ The worked within the temple to purify it. They brought out into the courtyard of the temple everything that they had found in the temple that was not pleasing to Yahweh. Then the descendants of Levi took those things down to the Kidron Valley and burned them there.

2 Chronicles 29:17

the first day of the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day marks the day when Yahweh brought the people out of Egypt. This is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the eighth day of the month

This is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

they reached the porch of Yahweh

The phrase “the porch of Yahweh” refers to the porch of the temple. “They reached” means that they began to cleanse this section. Alternate translation: “they had begun to cleanse the porch of Yahweh’s temple” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

sixteenth day of the first month

This is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they began](#)
- [to consecrate](#)
- [and they consecrated](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [they finished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [set apart](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [consume, devour](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [profane, profaned](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [And they began](#) on the first of the first month [to consecrate](#). And on the eighth day of the month they came to the porch of [Yahweh](#), and they [consecrated the house of Yahweh](#) for eight days. And on the 16th day of the first month [they finished](#).

UST

¹⁷ The priests and other descendants of Levi started this work on the first day of the first month and finished setting apart for the honor of Yahweh, the courtyard of the temple on the eighth day of that month, and they finished the work of setting the temple apart for the honor of Yahweh, one week later.

2 Chronicles 29:18

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 2:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- We have cleansed
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the altar of

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- pure, purify, purification
- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

18 And they came within to Hezekiah, the king, and they said, “We have cleansed all the house of Yahweh, the altar of burnt offerings and all its items, and the table of the arrangement and all its items,

UST

18 Then they went to King Hezekiah and reported this: “We have purified all parts of the temple, and the altar where sacrifices are completely burned, and all the items used at the altar, the table on which the priests display the bread before Yahweh, and the things used at that table.

2 Chronicles 29:19

See, they are

Alternate translation: "Look at them. You can see for yourself that they are"

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- Ahaz
- in his reign
- in his unfaithfulness
- and we have consecrated
- the altar of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- set apart
- trespass
- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

¹⁹ and all the items which King Ahaz rejected in his reign in his unfaithfulness. We have prepared, and we have consecrated, and, behold, they are before the altar of Yahweh."

UST

¹⁹ Ahaz ruled over us, he disobeyed what Yahweh had commanded, and he threw away many of the tools and implements from the temple many things that should be there, but now we have brought them back, we dedicated them to Yahweh's service, and then we placed them in front of the altar of Yahweh, where they can be seen."

2 Chronicles 29:20

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Hezekiah [the king](#) rose early and gathered [the chiefs of](#) the city. And he went up [to the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

²⁰ Early the next morning, King Hezekiah gathered together the city officials, and they went to the courtyard of the temple.

2 Chronicles 29:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bulls
- and...rams
- the sanctuary
- Judah
- to the sons of
- Aaron
- the priests
- the altar of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- sanctuary
- son
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Judea, Judah
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

²¹ And they brought seven **bulls**, and seven **rams**, and seven lambs, and seven male goats of female goats for a sin offering for the kingdom, and for **the sanctuary**, and for **Judah**. And he said **to the sons of Aaron, the priests**, to cause to go up to **the altar of Yahweh**.

UST

²¹ They took with them seven bulls, seven rams, seven male lambs, and seven male goats to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of all the people in the kingdom of Judah, and in order to purify the temple. The king commanded that the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, should offer those animals to be sacrifices to Yahweh on the altar.

2 Chronicles 29:22

they killed the bulls, and the priests received the blood

Alternate translation: "the priests killed the bulls and took the blood"

Translation Words - ULT

- And they slaughtered
- And they slaughtered
- And they slaughtered (2)
- the priests
- on the altar
- on the altar
- on the altar
- the rams

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- altar
- priest, priesthood
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- slaughter, slaughtered
- slaughter, slaughtered
- slaughter, slaughtered (2)

ULT

²² And they slaughtered the cattle, and the priests took the blood, and they scattered on the altar. And they slaughtered the rams, and they scattered the blood on the altar. And they slaughtered the lambs, and they scattered the blood on the altar.

UST

²² So first the priests slaughtered those bulls, and took the blood and sprinkled it on the altar. Then they slaughtered the rams and sprinkled their blood on the altar. Then they slaughtered the lambs and sprinkled their blood on the altar.

2 Chronicles 29:23

they laid their hands on them

Alternate translation: "the king and people in the assembly laid their hands on them"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- their hands

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- king, kingship

ULT

23 And they brought near the goats of the sin offering before the king and the assembly, and they laid their hands on them.

UST

23 The goats that were slaughtered to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of the people were brought to the king and the others who were there. Then the king and those who were present laid their hands on those goats.

2 Chronicles 29:24

that a burnt offering and a sin offering should be made for all Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that the priests should make a burnt offering and a sin offering for all Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [And...slaughtered them](#)
- [and they made a sin offering](#)
- [with their blood](#)
- [on the altar](#)
- [to atone](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [atonement, atone, atoned](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [the priests slaughtered them](#), [and they made a sin offering with their blood on the altar to atone](#) for all [Israel](#), because "For all [Israel](#)," [the king](#) said, "are the burnt offering and the sin offering."

UST

²⁴ Then the priests slaughtered those goats and splashed their blood on the altar, to atone for the sins of Israel. The priests did that because the king had commanded that offerings that would be completely burned on the altar and other sacrifices should be made for all the people of Israel.

2 Chronicles 29:25

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:12](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

arranging them by the command of David, Gad, the king’s seer, and Nathan, the prophet

The word “command” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “arranging the Levites as David, Gad, the king’s seer, and Nathan, the prophet had commanded” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

²⁵ And he stationed [the Levites in the house of Yahweh](#) with cymbals, with harps, [and with lyres, according to the commandment of David](#) and Gad, the seer of [the king, and Nathan the prophet](#), for [by the hand of Yahweh was the commandment by the hand of his prophets](#).

UST

²⁵ The king then told the descendants of Levi to stand in the temple with their cymbals, harps, and lyres, obeying what David and his prophets Gad and Nathan had commanded. Those were things that Yahweh had told his prophets that the descendants of Levi should do.

for the command was from Yahweh by means of his prophets

The word “command” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “for Yahweh had commanded this through his prophets” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and with lyres](#)
- [according to the commandment of](#)
- [was the commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and Nathan](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [his prophets](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [by the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)

- Nathan
- hand
- hand
- harp, harpist
- house, household
- king, kingship

2 Chronicles 29:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- David
- and the priests
- with the trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- David
- Levi, Levite
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

²⁶ And the Levites stood with the instruments of David and the priests with the trumpets.

UST

²⁶ So the descendants of Levi went and stood in the temple, and began to play the musical instruments that King David had given to them. And the priests began to blow their trumpets.

2 Chronicles 29:27

the song of Yahweh began also

The phrase “the song of Yahweh” refers to people singing a song to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the people began to sing a song to Yahweh also”

Translation Words - ULT

- on the altar
- Yahweh
- the hands of
- David
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- David
- hand
- king, kingship

ULT

27 And Hezekiah said to offer the burnt offering **on the altar**. And at the time the burnt offering began, the song of **Yahweh** began and the trumpets, and by **the hands of** the instruments of **David, the king of Israel**.

UST

27 Then Hezekiah told some of the priests to slaughter the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. When they started to slaughter the animals, the people started to sing to praise Yahweh, while the other descendants of Levi were playing their instruments.

2 Chronicles 29:28

until the burnt offering was finished

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “until the priests finished offering the burnt offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...assembly
- was worshipping
- was finished

Translation Words - UST

- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

ULT

²⁸ And the whole assembly was worshipping, and the song was singing, and the trumpets were sounding, all until the burnt offering was finished.

UST

²⁸ All the people who were there bowed to worship Yahweh, while the singers sang and the trumpeters played. They continued to do this until they had finished slaughtering all the animals that would be completely burned.

2 Chronicles 29:29

When they had finished the offerings

Alternate translation: "When the priests had finished the offerings"

bowed and worshiped

The object of worship may be supplied in translation. Alternate translation: "bowed and worshiped Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- bowed down
- and they worshiped

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, bow down, worship
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- king, kingship

ULT

29 And when the burnt offering was finished, [the king bowed down](#) and all who were found with him, [and they worshiped](#).

UST

29 When they finished making those offerings, the king and all those who were there knelt down and worshiped Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 29:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- and the chiefs
- and they worshiped
- to the Levites
- to praise
- And they praised
- Yahweh
- David
- and Asaph
- joy
- and they bowed down

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- Asaph
- David
- Levi, Levite
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³⁰ And King Hezekiah said, and the chiefs, to the Levites to praise Yahweh according to the words of David and Asaph the seer. And they praised with joy, and they bowed down, and they worshiped.

UST

³⁰ Then King Hezekiah and his officials commanded the descendants of Levi to praise Yahweh, singing the songs composed by David and Asaph the prophet. So they sang songs joyfully, and bowed their heads to worship.

2 Chronicles 29:31

thank offerings

These were offerings of thanksgiving.

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who had a willing heart

Here the word “heart” represents the person who was willing. Alternate translation: “who were willing” or “who desired” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your hand](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [heart](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

³¹ And Hezekiah answered, and he said, “You yourselves have filled [your hand to Yahweh](#). Come near and bring in [sacrifices](#) and thanksgivings [to the house of Yahweh](#).” And [the assembly](#) brought in [sacrifices](#) and thanksgivings, and all inclined of [heart, burnt offerings](#).

UST

³¹ Then Hezekiah said, “You have now set yourselves apart for the honor of Yahweh. So come close to the temple and bring animals to be sacrificed, and also bring the other offerings to thank Yahweh for what he has done for you.” Then those who wanted to bring animals to be completely burned on the altar brought them.

2 Chronicles 29:32

seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs

“70 bulls, 100 rams, and 200 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the assembly](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [lambs](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

ULT

³² And the number of the burnt offering that [the assembly](#) brought in was 70 [bulls](#), 100 [rams](#), 200 [lambs](#), for the burnt offering [to Yahweh](#) was all these.

UST

³² Altogether they brought seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs to be completely burned on the altar.

2 Chronicles 29:33

six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep

"600 oxen and 3,000 sheep" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [and...sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

³³ And the consecrated were 600 [bulls](#) and 3,000 [sheep](#).

UST

³³ The other animals that they brought were six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep and goats that were set apart for the honor of Yahweh, to be sacrifices.

2 Chronicles 29:34

to skin all the burnt offerings

Alternate translation: "to remove the skins from all the burnt offerings"

until the work was done

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "until they had finished the work" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

until the priests could consecrate themselves

Since there were some priests who were already consecrated, this implies that more priests consecrated themselves. Alternate translation: "until more of the priests could consecrate themselves" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

had been more careful to consecrate themselves

There were enough Levites to do this work because they had been careful to consecrate themselves. This implies that the reason that there were not enough priests was because the priests were not careful to consecrate themselves.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [more than the priests](#)
- [their brothers](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [was finished](#)
- [consecrated themselves](#)
- [were right of](#)
- [heart](#)
- [to consecrate themselves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [heart](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)

ULT

³⁴ Except [the priests](#) were too few and they were not able to skin all the burnt offerings, so [their brothers, the Levites](#), made them strong until the work [was finished](#), and until [the priests consecrated themselves](#), for [the Levites were right of heart to consecrate themselves more than the priests](#).

UST

³⁴ There were not enough priests to remove the skins from the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. So the descendants of Levi stepped in to help the priests until the work was finished. The Levites were more hard-working and dedicated than the priests were.

- Levi, Levite
- consume, devour

2 Chronicles 29:35

they were performed with the fat of the fellowship offerings

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the priests performed the burnt offerings with the fat of the fellowship offerings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah set the service of the house of Yahweh in order” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

was set in order

This idiom means that something is organized. Here it refers to the priestly service beginning in the temple again. Alternate translation: “was restored” or “began again” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [there were burnt offerings](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

³⁵ And also, [there were burnt offerings](#) in abundance with the fat of the peace offerings and with the drink offerings for the burnt offering. And the service of [the house of Yahweh](#) was established.

UST

³⁵ In addition to the all the offerings that were completely burned on the altar, the priests burned the fat of the accompanying animals that were sacrificed to maintain good fellowship with Yahweh; there were also offerings of wine. In this way the worship at the temple began again.

2 Chronicles 29:36

the work had been done quickly

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the people had done the work quickly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And...rejoiced
- the people
- for the people
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- people, people group
- people, people group

ULT

³⁶ And Hezekiah [rejoiced](#), and all [the people](#), over [God](#) having prepared [for the people](#), for in suddenness the matter happened.

UST

³⁶ And Hezekiah and all the other people of Judah celebrated, because God had enabled them to do all the repair work very quickly.

2 Chronicles 30

2 Chronicles 30 General Notes

2 Chronicles 30:1

all Israel and Judah

This represents the nation of Israel in general. Earlier the nation had been split into two kingdoms called by these names.

Ephraim and Manasseh

Ephraim and Manasseh were two of the tribes in the northern part of Israel. Here the phrase “Ephraim and Manasseh” refers to the people who belonged to all ten of the northern tribes of Israel. Alternate translation: “the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- and Judah
- Ephraim
- to the house of
- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- the God of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Jerusalem
- Judah
- house, household

ULT

¹ And Hezekiah sent to all [Israel and Judah](#), and also letters he wrote to [Ephraim](#) and Manasseh to come [to the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem](#) to do a Passover [to Yahweh, the God of Israel](#).

UST

¹⁻³ King Hezekiah, his officials, and all the other people who had gathered in Jerusalem wanted to celebrate the Passover festival. But they were not able to celebrate it at the usual time, because many of the priests had still not been able to perform all the rites of purity for themselves, so they were not allowed to do the work of that festival. Also, not everyone had come to Jerusalem to celebrate it. So they decided to celebrate the festival the following month.

2 Chronicles 30:2

deciding to celebrate the Passover in the second month

The Israelites normally celebrated the passover during the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars.

second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

² And [the king consulted](#), and [his chiefs](#), and all [the assembly in Jerusalem](#), to do [the Passover](#) in the second month.

UST

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [And...consulted](#)
- [and his chiefs](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the Passover](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

2 Chronicles 30:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- had...consecrated themselves
- and the people
- had...assembled
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- priest, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- people, people group

ULT

³ for they were not able to do it at that time because the priests had not consecrated themselves sufficiently, and the people had not assembled to Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁻³ King Hezekiah, his officials, and all the other people who had gathered in Jerusalem wanted to celebrate the Passover festival. But they were not able to celebrate it at the usual time, because many of the priests had still not been able to perform all the rites of purity for themselves, so they were not allowed to do the work of that festival. Also, not everyone had come to Jerusalem to celebrate it. So they decided to celebrate the festival the following month.

2 Chronicles 30:4

This proposal

This refers to the proposal to celebrate the Passover in the second month instead of in the first month.

in the eyes of the king and of all the assembly

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the judgment of the king and all the assembly” or “to the king and all the assembly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the assembly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁴ And the matter was right in the eyes of [the king](#) and in the eyes of all [the assembly](#).

UST

⁴ The king and all the other people who had gathered thought that this was a good plan.

2 Chronicles 30:5

from Beersheba to Dan

These are the most southern and most northern parts of Israel. By referring to them this way, the writer emphasizes that all of Israel was included. Alternate translation: “from Beersheba in the south to Dan in the north” (See: [Idiom](#))

according to what was written

“as it was written that they should do.” It is implied that it was written that they should observe the Passover with large numbers of people. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “as Moses had written that they should observe it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁵ And they caused to stand a word to cause a voice to pass over among all [Israel, from Beersheba](#) and to Dan to come to do a Passover [to Yahweh, the God of Israel, in Jerusalem](#); for they had not in abundance done as was written.

UST

⁵ So they decided to send messages to all the cities and villages in Judah and in Israel, from Beersheba in the far south to Dan in the far north, including places in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, to invite people to come to the temple in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover to honor Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worshiped. Many of the people had not previously celebrated that festival, even though it had been written in the law of Moses that they should do that.

2 Chronicles 30:6

couriers

people who carry messages

all Israel and Judah

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the tribes of Israel and was in the southern part of Israel. Here the phrase “Israel and Judah” refers to the people who belonged to the southern tribes of Israel. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 30:1](#). Alternate translation: “the southern tribes of Israel” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

turn back to Yahweh

Here “turn back to Yahweh” represents submitting to him again. Alternate translation: “submit again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that he may turn back to the remnant of you

Here “turn back to the remnant” represents protecting the remnant again. Alternate translation: “so that he may again protect the remnant of you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria

The word “hand” often represents power or authority. Here it represents the kings’ cruel authority to force people to go to other countries. Alternate translation: “who have escaped from the power of the kings of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from the hand of
- from the palm of
- the king
- the king
- the kings of
- the God of
- Abraham
- and he will return
- Assyria
- and his chiefs
- Israel
- Israel
- and Judah
- Sons of
- return
- Yahweh

ULT

⁶ And runners went with letters [from the hand of the king and his chiefs](#) among all [Israel and Judah](#) and according to the command of [the king](#), saying, “[Sons of Israel, return to Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and he will return](#) to the escaped remaining of you all [from the palm of the kings of Assyria](#).”

UST

⁶ Obeying what the king commanded, messengers went throughout Judah and Israel, taking messages that had been written by the king and his officials. This is what they wrote:

“You Israelite people, you who survived after being slaves of the kings of Assyria, return to Yahweh, the God whom our great ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped, in order that he may return to you. Your fathers and your fellow countrymen did not faithfully obey Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped.

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- restore, restoration
- son
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Judah
- hand
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- return, turn back

2 Chronicles 30:7

Connecting Statement:

This is a continuation of King Hezekiah's message to the people of Israel.

your brothers

Here "brothers" represents other people of Israel. Alternate translation: "your people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he made them an object of horror

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **horror**, you could express the same idea with the words "horrified" or "horrible." The author writes of what God did to their ancestors in terms of how other people would react when they saw what God did. Alternate translation: "he made them something that people would be horrified to see" or "he punished them horribly" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁷ And do not be like your fathers and your brothers, who [acted unfaithfully against Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#). And he made them to be a horror, just as you all are seeing.

UST

⁷ Do not act like they did, because what they did caused Yahweh to punish them so severely that other people were horrified when they heard of what he had done.

Translation Words - ULT

- [acted unfaithfully](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

2 Chronicles 30:8

give yourselves to Yahweh

This represents submitting to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “submit to Yahweh” or “dedicate yourselves to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

come into his holy place

Here “his holy place” refers to God’s temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “come to his temple in Jerusalem for it is holy” or “come to his temple in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

so that his fierce anger may turn away from you

The author writes of anger as if it were a person that can turn away from people. God’s anger turning away from them represents him no longer being angry with them. Alternate translation: “so that he will no longer be angry with you” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to his sanctuary](#)
- [he has consecrated](#)
- [your God](#)
- [that he may turn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [God](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁸ Now, do not harden your neck like your fathers; give [hand to Yahweh](#) and come [to his sanctuary](#) which [he has consecrated](#) forever, and serve [Yahweh your God, that he may turn](#) from you all his burning anger.

UST

⁸ Do not be stubborn as our ancestors were. Do what Yahweh desires. Come to Jerusalem to the temple, which he has set apart for his honor forever. Do what pleases Yahweh our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with you.

2 Chronicles 30:9

if you turn back to Yahweh

Here “turn back to Yahweh” represents submitting to him again. Alternate translation: “if you submit again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your brothers and children will find compassion before those who led them away as prisoners

Here “find compassion” is a metaphor for experiencing compassion. Finding it “before those who led them” means those who led them away will show them compassion. Alternate translation: “your brothers and children will experience compassion from those who led them away as prisoners” or “those who led your brothers and children away as prisoners will be kind to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

will not turn his face away from you

Here “turn his face away from you” represents rejecting them and refusing to protect them. Alternate translation: “will not reject you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you return to him

Here “return to him” represents submitting to God again. Alternate translation: “if you submit again to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- is Yahweh
- your brothers
- you return
- and your sons
- will have mercies
- and compassionate
- their captors
- gracious
- your God
- his face

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- grace, gracious
- mercy, merciful
- mercy, merciful
- restore, restoration
- son

ULT

⁹ For in your turning back to [Yahweh](#), [your brothers and your sons will have mercies](#) before [their captors](#) and return this land. For [gracious and compassionate is Yahweh your God](#), and he will not turn away [his face](#) from you all, if [you return](#) to him.”

UST

⁹ If you return to Yahweh, the people who have captured our brothers and sisters and our children will act kindly toward them, and allow them to return to this land. Do not forget that Yahweh our God is kind and merciful. If you return to him, he will no longer reject you.”

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- face, facial

2 Chronicles 30:10

the regions of Ephraim and Manasseh

Ephraim and Manasseh were two of the tribes in the northern part of Israel. Here the phrase “Ephraim and Manasseh” refers to the people who belonged to all ten of the northern tribes of Israel. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 30:1](#). Alternate translation: “the regions of the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the way to Zebulun

Zebulun was one of the tribes farthest in the north of Israel, but there were three other tribes that reached farther north.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- and ridiculing

Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

ULT

¹⁰ And the runners were passing from city to city in the land of [Ephraim](#) and Manasseh, and until Zebulun, but they were mocking them [and ridiculing](#) them.

UST

¹⁰ The messengers went to all the cities in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, as far north as the tribe of Zebulun, and gave them this message, but most of the people there scorned them and ridiculed them.

2 Chronicles 30:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from Asher
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Asher
- Jerusalem

ULT

¹¹ However, men from Asher and Manasseh and from Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem.

UST

¹¹ But some of the people of the tribes of Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun acknowledged their sin and went to Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 30:12

The hand of God also came on Judah

Here “the hand of God” represents his guidance as if he were guiding them with his hand. Alternate translation: “God guided the people of Judah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to give them one heart

Having “one heart” represents being united and agreeing. Alternate translation: “causing them to agree” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to carry out the command

Here “carry out the command” is an idiom meaning to do what was commanded. Alternate translation: “to obey the command” (See: [Idiom](#))

the command of the king and leaders by the word of Yahweh

The phrase “by the word of Yahweh” shows that the king and leaders gave their command in obedience to the word of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the command that the king and leaders gave them in obedience to the word of Yahweh” or “what the king and the leaders commanded because of what Yahweh had said”

ULT

¹² Also [on Judah](#) was [the hand of God](#) to give them one [heart](#) to do [the command of the king and the chiefs](#) by the word of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹² Also in Judah God made the people want together to obey Yahweh, which is what the king and his officials had told them to do in the message that they sent.

Translation Words - ULT

- [on Judah](#)
- [the hand of](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [the command of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and the chiefs](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

2 Chronicles 30:13

the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people
- in Jerusalem
- the Feast of the
- a...assembly

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- feast, feasting
- people, people group

ULT

13 And many [people](#) gathered [in Jerusalem](#) to do [the Feast of the Unleavened Bread](#) in the second month, a very abundant [assembly](#).

UST

13 So a huge crowd of people gathered in Jerusalem in the second month of the year, to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread.

2 Chronicles 30:14

They rose and took away the altars

Here “They rose” means that they started to work at taking away the altars. Alternate translation: “They began to work and took away the altars” or “They took away the altars”

the altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense

These two phrases refer to altars that people had built to false gods.

the brook Kidron

This was a small stream of water in the Kidron Valley. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altars](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

14 And they rose, and they took away [the altars](#) that were [in Jerusalem](#), and all the incense altars they took away, and they threw into the brook Kidron.

UST

14 They removed the altars of Baal in Jerusalem and took away the altars for burning incense to honor other gods; they burned them all in the Kidron Valley.

2 Chronicles 30:15

the fourteenth day of the second month

This is near the beginning of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they slaughtered
- the Passover lambs
- And the priests
- and the Levites
- were ashamed
- and they consecrated themselves
- the burnt offerings
- to the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Passover
- priest, priesthood
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- house, household
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- slaughter, slaughtered

ULT

15 And they slaughtered the Passover lambs on the 14th of the second month. And the priests and the Levites were ashamed, and they consecrated themselves, and they brought in the burnt offerings to the house of Yahweh.

UST

15 They slaughtered the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of that month. The priests and the other descendants of Levi who had not performed the rituals to purify themselves, they were ashamed; and they set about to make themselves qualified for the service to Yahweh, and they brought to the temple animals to be completely burned on the altar in the house of Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 30:16

They stood in their place by their divisions

Alternate translation: "They stood in their appointed places"

the blood that they received from the hand of the Levites

This refers to the blood of the lambs that the Levites killed. Here "received from the hand of the Levites" is a metonym for the Levites giving the blood to the priests. Alternate translation: "the blood that they received from the Levites" or "the lambs' blood that the Levites gave to them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to their judgment](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [of God](#)
- [The priests](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

ULT

16 And they stood at their stations [according to their judgment](#), according to the law of [Moses](#), the man [of God](#). [The priests](#) were scattering the blood [from the hand of the Levites](#),

UST

16 Then they stood in the places that Moses had written in his law that they should stand in. Then the descendants of Levi gave to the priests bowls containing blood of the animals that were being sacrificed, and the priests sprinkled the altar with some of the blood.

2 Chronicles 30:17

the Passover lambs

Alternate translation: "the lambs for the Passover"

Translation Words - ULT

- were in the assembly
- had...consecrated themselves
- And the Levites
- the Passover lambs
- were...clean
- to consecrate
- to Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Passover
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

ULT

¹⁷ for many were in the assembly who had not consecrated themselves. And the Levites were over the slaughtering of the Passover lambs for all were not clean to consecrate to Yahweh.

UST

¹⁷ Many people in the crowd had not purified themselves, and therefore they were not able to kill the lambs and dedicate them to Yahweh. So it was necessary for the descendants of Levi to kill the lambs for them.

2 Chronicles 30:18

Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun

These are the names of some of the tribes that lived in the northern part of Israel. See how you translated “Zebulun” in [2 Chronicles 30:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

against the written instructions

To do something “against” instructions means to do something that is not in obedience to the instructions. If needed, the instructions can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “even though the written instructions said that they must purify themselves first” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the good Yahweh

The word “good” here is a reminder to the people that Yahweh is kind. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, who is good” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Issachar
- had...purified themselves
- they ate
- the Passover
- Yahweh
- who is good

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Passover
- pure, purify, purification
- Yahweh
- Issachar
- devour
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁸ For a multitude of the people, many from Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun, had not purified themselves, but they ate the Passover, against what is written. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying, “May Yahweh who is good atone for

UST

¹⁸ Although most of the people who had come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Issachar had not purified themselves, they ate the food of the Passover Festival anyway, ignoring the rules written by Moses. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying “Yahweh, you always do what is good; I pray that you will forgive everyone

2 Chronicles 30:19

who sets his heart to seek God

This continues the sentence that begins with the word “everyone” in verse 18. Here “sets his heart” is a metaphor for being determined to do something, and “to seek God” is a metaphor for knowing, worshiping, and obeying him. “everyone who is determined to obey God” or “everyone who truly wants to honor God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his heart](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [God](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [the holy place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹⁹ everyone who prepares [his heart to seek God, Yahweh, the God of his fathers](#), but not according to the purifying of [the holy place](#).”

UST

¹⁹ who sincerely wants to honor you, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, even if they have not purified themselves by obeying the sacred laws that you gave to us.”

2 Chronicles 30:20

So Yahweh listened to Hezekiah

This implies that Yahweh responded favorably to Hezekiah. Alternate translation: “So Yahweh responded favorably to Hezekiah” or “So Yahweh did what Hezekiah asked” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

healed the people

Here “healed the people” is a metaphor for forgiving the people and not punishing them. Alternate translation: “forgave the people” or “did not punish the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group

ULT

²⁰ And [Yahweh](#) listened to Hezekiah, and he healed [the people](#).

UST

²⁰ And Yahweh heard what Hezekiah prayed; he forgave the people, and did not punish them.

2 Chronicles 30:21

kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread

Here “kept the festival” is a idiom meaning to participate in the festival or celebrate the festival. Alternate translation: “celebrate the festival” (See: [Idiom](#))

singing with loud instruments to Yahweh

Alternate translation: “singing and playing loud musical instruments to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the Feast of](#)
- [with...joy](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [and the priests](#)
- [And...were praising](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

²¹ And [the sons of Israel](#) who were found [in Jerusalem](#) did [the Feast of](#) the Unleavened Bread seven days with great [joy](#). And [the Levites and the priests were praising Yahweh](#) day by day, with instruments of might [to Yahweh](#).

UST

²¹ The Israelite people who were there in Jerusalem celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. They rejoiced greatly as they celebrated, while the priests and other descendants of Levi sang to Yahweh every day and played musical instruments to praise God.

2 Chronicles 30:22

who understood the service of Yahweh

This was the reason that he spoke encouragingly to them. Alternate translation: “because they understood the service of Yahweh” or “because they served Yahweh skillfully” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

So they ate throughout the festival

The word “they” refers to the people of Israel.

making confession to Yahweh

This could mean: (1) “confession” here refers to saying that God is great. Alternate translation: “praising Yahweh” or (2) “confession” here refers to admitting their sins. Alternate translation: “confessing their sins to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- the heart of
- the Levites
- the God of
- their fathers
- good
- with...insight
- of Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- And they ate
- sacrificing
- sacrifices of
- and confessing

Translation Words - UST

- confess, confession
- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- devour
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- understand, understanding, thinking

ULT

²² And Hezekiah spoke to the heart of all the Levites, who were insightful with good insight of Yahweh. And they ate the appointed seven days, sacrificing sacrifices of peace offerings and confessing to Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

UST

²² Hezekiah thanked all the descendants of Levi for doing this work for Yahweh, and for very skillfully leading the people who were worshiping. For those seven days the people ate the Passover food and brought offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh and praised Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

2 Chronicles 30:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the assembly
- And...consulted
- joyfully

Translation Words - UST

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

ULT

²³ And all the assembly consulted to do seven days after them, and they did seven days joyfully.

UST

²³ Then the whole group decided to celebrate for seven more days; so they celebrated joyfully for seven more days.

2 Chronicles 30:24

Hezekiah ... gave the assembly ... bulls and ... sheep as an offering

Hezekiah gave the animals to the people as an offering to the Lord for the people to eat.

one thousand bulls ... seven thousand sheep ... one thousand bulls ... ten thousand sheep and goats

"1,000 bulls...7,000 sheep...1,000 bulls...10,000 sheep and goats"
(See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [and...sheep](#)
- [and the chiefs](#)
- [priests](#)
- [And...consecrated themselves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

²⁴ For Hezekiah [the king of Judah](#) contributed to the assembly 1,000 [bulls](#) and 7,000 [sheep](#); and the chiefs contributed to the assembly 1,000 [bulls](#) and 10,000 [sheep](#). And many [priests](#) [consecrated themselves](#).

UST

²⁴ King Hezekiah provided one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep to be slaughtered for the people to eat during the festival, and the officials also gave them one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats. Many priests set themselves apart for serving Yahweh and to honor him, at this festival.

2 Chronicles 30:25

All the assembly of Judah

Here “Judah” probably refers to the southern tribes of Israel.

all the people who came together from Israel

Here “Israel” probably refers to the northern tribes of Israel. The people are members of those tribes. They came to Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Alternate translation: “all the people who came together from Israel in the north” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the foreigners who came from the land of Israel

Here “the land of Israel” probably refers to the land owned by the northern tribes of Israel. Alternate translation: “the foreigners who came from the land of Israel in the north” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they rejoiced](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [from Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [joy, joyful, rejoice, glad](#)

ULT

²⁵ [And they rejoiced](#), all [the assembly of Judah and the priests and the Levites](#), and all [the assembly](#) who came [from Israel](#), and the sojourners who came from the land of [Israel](#) and the inhabitants of [Judah](#).

UST

²⁵ All the people of Judah rejoiced, including the priests and other descendants of Levi and all the people from Israel who had come, and including some from other countries who were living in Israel and some from other countries who were living in Judah.

2 Chronicles 30:26

since the time of Solomon son of David, king of Israel

Alternate translation: "since the time when Solomon son of David ruled as king of Israel" or "since the Passover Festival that the people held when Solomon son of David was king of Israel"

there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem

Alternate translation: "there had not been any Passover Festival in Jerusalem like this Passover Festival"

Translation Words - ULT

- joy
- in Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- Solomon
- the son of
- David
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- David
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁶ And there was great joy in Jerusalem, for from the days of Solomon the son of David, the king of Israel, there was not like this in Jerusalem.

UST

²⁶ Everyone in Jerusalem was very joyful, because nothing like this had happened in Jerusalem since the time when David's son Solomon was the king of Israel.

2 Chronicles 30:27

Their voice was heard ... their prayer went up to heaven, the holy place where God lives

These two phrases mean the same thing and imply that God responded favorably to their prayer. Alternate translation: "God responded favorably to their prayer, which he heard in heaven, the holy place where he lives" or "God, who lives in the holy heaven, heard their prayer" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Their voice was heard

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God heard their voice" or "God heard what they said to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their prayer went up to heaven

Their prayer going up to heaven represents God in heaven paying attention to them praying on earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the Levites
- and they blessed
- the people
- their voice
- their prayer
- his holy
- in the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- pray, prayer
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite
- people, people group
- voice

ULT

²⁷ And the priests, the Levites, rose, and they blessed the people. And their voice was heard, and their prayer came to his holy dwelling in the heavens.

UST

²⁷ The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood up to bless the people, and God heard them, because their prayers reached up to heaven, the holy place where God lives.

2 Chronicles 31

2 Chronicles 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

To express Hezekiah's desire to please God, the author uses two idioms "to seek God" and "with all his heart." This means that he really wanted to do what God wanted. (See: [Idiom](#))

2 Chronicles 31:1

who were there

Alternate translation: "who were in Jerusalem"

to his own possession

Here "possession" means possessions in general. Alternate translation: "to his own property" or "to his own home" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- went out
- Judah
- Judah
- the altars
- and Benjamin
- finished
- the sons of
- And...returned

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- return, turn back

ULT

¹ And when all this was finished, all [Israel](#) who were to be found [went out](#) to the cities of [Judah](#), and they shattered the pillars. And they cut to pieces the Asherim, and they tore down the high places and [the altars](#) from all [Judah and Benjamin](#), and in Ephraim and Manasseh, until [finished](#). And all [the sons of Israel returned](#), each to his possession, to their cities.

UST

¹ After the festival ended, the Israelites who were there went to all the cities in Judah and smashed the stones for worshiping idols, and cut down the poles for worshiping the goddess Asherah. They destroyed the high places where idols were worshiped, and the altars of Baal throughout the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and also in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh. After destroying all of them, they returned to their own cities and towns.

2 Chronicles 31:2

Hezekiah assigned the divisions of the priests and the Levites organized by their divisions, each man assigned to his work, both the priests and the Levites

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah organized the priests and the Levites into groups. He assigned each priest and Levite to their duties" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [for the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [at the gates of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

ULT

² And Hezekiah appointed the divisions of [the priests and the Levites](#) according to their divisions, each according to the mouth of his service, [for the priests](#) and for the Levites for burnt offering and for peace offerings, to minister, and to give thanks, and to praise [at the gates of](#) the camp of [Yahweh](#).

UST

² Hezekiah divided the priests and other descendants of Levi into groups. He appointed some of the groups to offer sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar and offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. He appointed some groups to do other work at the temple: Some to lead the people in their worship, some to thank Yahweh, and some to sing songs to praise Yahweh at the gates of the temple.

2 Chronicles 31:3

assigned the king's portion for the burnt offerings from his own possessions

Hezekiah took the meat and grain used for the burnt offerings out of his own possessions.

the new moons

This was a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.

the fixed festivals

This refers to festivals which occur on specific dates.

as it was written in the law of Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "just as Moses wrote in the law of Yahweh" or "just as Yahweh commanded in his law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [for the Sabbaths](#)
- [in the law of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

³ And the portion of [the king](#) was from his property for burnt offerings, for the burnt offerings of the morning and the evening and the burnt offerings [for the Sabbaths](#) and for the new moons and for the appointed times, as is written [in the law of Yahweh](#).

UST

³ The king contributed some of his own funds to buy animals that would be sacrificed in the morning and in the evening of each day, and on the Sabbath days, to celebrate the new moons, and during the other feasts, according to what was written in the laws that Yahweh gave to Moses.

2 Chronicles 31:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the people
- Jerusalem
- the priests
- and the Levites
- they might be strong
- in the law of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Levi, Levite
- people, people group
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁴ And he said to the people, to the inhabitants of Jerusalem to give the portion of the priests and the Levites, in order that they might be strong in the law of Yahweh.

UST

⁴ Hezekiah told the people living in Jerusalem to give to the priests and the other descendants of Levi the portions of meat that should be given to them, in order that they could devote all their time to obeying the laws of Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 31:5

As soon as the command was sent out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As soon as the people heard the command" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a tithe of everything

Alternate translation: "a tenth of all their crops"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [firstfruits of](#)
- [grain](#)
- [new wine](#)
- [and oil](#)
- [and honey](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

⁵ And when the word broke through, [the sons of Israel](#) gave in abundance [firstfruits of grain, new wine, and oil, and honey](#), and all the produce of the field. And the tithe of all the abundance they brought in.

UST

⁵ As soon as he told that to them, they generously gave the first part of their harvest of grain, and the first part of the new wine that they produced, and olive oil and honey, and of the crops that grew in their fields. They brought to the temple a tenth of all their crops.

2 Chronicles 31:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- Israel
- and Judah
- Judah
- cattle
- and sheep
- sacred things
- consecrated
- to Yahweh
- their God

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Judah
- Judea, Judah
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

ULT

⁶ And the sons of Israel and Judah, the inhabitants in the cities of Judah, also they, the tithe of cattle and sheep, and the tithe of sacred things consecrated to Yahweh their God, they brought in, and they gave heaps, heaps.

UST

⁶ The men of Israel and Judah who were living in various cities in Judah also brought a tenth of their cattle and sheep and goats, and a tenth of other things that they had set them apart for the honor of Yahweh their God, and they piled up all those things in heaps.

2 Chronicles 31:7

third month

This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

seventh month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season, which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they finished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

⁷ In the third month, they began the heaps to establish, and in the seventh month [they finished](#).

UST

⁷ They started to do that in the third month and finished doing it in the seventh month.

2 Chronicles 31:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the chiefs
- And they blessed
- Yahweh
- his people
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁸ And Hezekiah and the chiefs came, and they saw the heaps. And they blessed Yahweh and his people Israel.

UST

⁸ When Hezekiah and his officials saw the heaps, they praised Yahweh and requested God to bless the people.

2 Chronicles 31:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- and the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite

ULT

⁹ And Hezekiah sought the priests and the Levites about the heaps.

UST

⁹ But Hezekiah asked the priests and other descendants of Levi, "What are these heaps of things?"

2 Chronicles 31:10

of the house of Zadok

Here “house” represents a family or descendants. Alternate translation: “a descendant of Zadok” (See: [Metonymy](#))

What was left over is this large amount here

The chief priest would have been pointing to the large heaps.

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- the...priest
- of the house of
- to the house of
- Zadok
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- we ate
- has blessed
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Zadok
- chief, leader
- devour
- house, household
- house, household
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁰ And Azariah, the [head priest, of the house of Zadok](#), said to him, and he said, “From the beginning of the bringing of the contribution [to the house of Yahweh we ate](#), and were full and had left over in abundance, for [Yahweh has blessed his people](#), and this abundance is left.”

UST

¹⁰ Then Azariah the high priest, a descendant of Zadok, replied, “Since the time that the people started to bring their offerings to the temple, we have had even more food than we need. This has happened because Yahweh has greatly blessed our fellow Israelites, with the result that all this is left over after we priests and other descendants of Levi took all that we need!”

2 Chronicles 31:11

Hezekiah commanded storerooms to be prepared

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah commanded the priests and Levites to prepare storerooms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹¹ And Hezekiah said to prepare the chambers [in the house of Yahweh](#), and they prepared.

UST

¹¹ Then Hezekiah ordered that they should prepare storerooms at the temple to hold these supplies.

2 Chronicles 31:12

Konaniah ... Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levite](#)
- [his brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)

ULT

¹² And they brought in the contribution and the tithe and the sacred things in faithfulness. And over them as a leader was Konaniah [the Levite](#), and Shimei [his brother](#), second.

UST

¹² Then they brought into the storerooms all the tithes and offerings and things and the things dedicated to Yahweh which the people had brought. One of the descendants of Levi whose name was Konaniah was in charge of those things, and his younger brother Shimei was his assistant.

2 Chronicles 31:13

Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath, and Benaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

were managers under the hand of Konaniah and Shimei his brother

Here “hand” represents power or control. The phrase “under the hand” is an idiom that means to be under someone’s authority. Alternate translation: “were managers whom Konaniah and Shimei his brother supervised” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

the official over the house of God

Here “over” is an idiom that means to be in charge of. Alternate translation: “the official in charge of everyone who served in the house of God” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Benaiah](#)
- [were overseers](#)
- [under the hand of](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [the king](#)
- [over the house of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [oversee, overseer, keeper](#)

ULT

¹³ And Jehiel, and Azaziah, and Nahath, and Asahel, and Jerimoth, and Jozabad, and Eliel, and Ismakiah, and Mahath, and Benaiah were overseers under the hand of Konaniah and Shimei his brother, by the arrangement of Hezekiah, the king, and Azariah, the leader over the house of God.

UST

¹³ Those two men supervised Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath and Benaiah while they did the work. They were appointed by King Hezekiah; Azariah was in charge of everything that was done in the temple.

2 Chronicles 31:14

Kore ... Imnah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the porter at the east gate

Alternate translation: "the gatekeeper at the east gate of the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the Levite
- the gatekeeper
- the free will offering
- of God
- the contribution of
- Yahweh
- most

Translation Words - UST

- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- son
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite
- freewill offering
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹⁴ And Kore the son of Imnah the Levite, the gatekeeper to the east was over the free will offering of God, to give the contribution of Yahweh and the most holy things,

UST

¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah, another descendant of Levi, who guarded the east gate of the temple, was in charge of the offerings to God that were made voluntarily. He distributed to the priests and other descendants of Levi the offerings and other things that were dedicated to Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 31:15

Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Under him were Eden ... in the cities of the priests

Here “under” is an idiom that means to be under someone’s authority. Alternate translation: “Eden ... assisted Kore in the cities of the priests” (See: [Idiom](#))

They filled offices of trust, in order to give

Alternate translation: “Their duty was to give” or “They faithfully gave”

to their brothers

Here “brothers” is a metaphor for “fellow priests.” Alternate translation: “to their fellow priests” (See: [Metaphor](#))

division by division

Alternate translation: “group by group”

to both the important and the unimportant

Here “important” and “unimportant” are used together to mean “everyone.” Alternate translation: “to everyone, including the important and the unimportant” (See: [Merism](#))

the important and the unimportant

This seems to imply the old and the young. This can be restated to removed the nominal adjectives. Alternate translation: “those who are old and those who are young” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [to their brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and by [his hand](#) Eden, and Miniamin, and Jeshua, and Shemaiah, and Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of [the priests](#) in faithfulness to give [to their brothers](#) in divisions, like great, like small,

UST

¹⁵ Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah and Shecaniah faithfully assisted him in the towns where the priests lived. They distributed those things to the groups of their fellow priests; they distributed them to everyone, including those who were young and those who were old.

2 Chronicles 31:16

They also gave

It is understood that they gave the freewill offerings. Alternate translation: "They also gave freewill offerings" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

three years old and up

Alternate translation: "three years old and older"

who were listed in the records

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whose names were in the records" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as required by the daily schedule, to do the work in their offices and their divisions

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to do the daily work that they were supposed to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for their service](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

16 regardless of their genealogy, to males [from a son of](#) three years and upward, to all who came into [the house of Yahweh](#), by the matter of a day in its day, [for their service](#) by their charges according to their divisions, ^[1]

UST

16 They also distributed things to the males who were at least three years old, those whose names were on the scrolls where lists of family names were written. They were males who were allowed to enter the temple to perform their tasks each day, the tasks that each group had been assigned to do.

2 Chronicles 31:17

They distributed

It is understood they distributed the freewill offerings. Alternate translation: "They distributed freewill offerings" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

twenty years old and more

"20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [by the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [from a son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹⁷ and the genealogy of [the priests by the house of their fathers and the Levites from a son of](#) 20 years and upward by their charges according to their divisions,

UST

¹⁷ The names of the priests were on the scrolls where their families' names were written. They also distributed things to groups of descendants of Levi, those who were at least twenty years old.

2 Chronicles 31:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and their sons
- the assembly
- they were consecrating themselves
- in holiness

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- son
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

ULT

¹⁸ and to the genealogy with all their children, their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, to all the assembly, for in their faithfulness they were consecrating themselves in holiness.

UST

¹⁸ They included all their little children and wives and other sons and daughters whose names were on the scrolls where the family names were written, because they also faithfully had set themselves apart for the honor of Yahweh and his requirements for holiness.

2 Chronicles 31:19

there were men assigned by name to give portions

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "there were men responsible for giving portions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to all who were listed in the records

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to all whose names were in the records" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And for the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [by names](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [And for the sons of Aaron, the priests](#), in the fields of open land of their cities, in each city and city, were men who were marked [by names](#) to give portions to every male among the priests, and to all genealogically among the Levites.

UST

¹⁹ Hezekiah also appointed other men to distribute portions of those offerings to the priests and other descendants of Levi who were living in the pasturelands around the towns of Judah. But they gave things only to those who were descendants of Aaron the first high priest, whose names were on the scrolls containing the names of their families.

2 Chronicles 31:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- what is good
- Yahweh
- his God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah

ULT

²⁰ And Hezekiah did like this in all Judah. And he did what is good, and what is right, and faithful before Yahweh his God.

UST

²⁰ That is what Hezekiah did throughout Judah. He always faithfully did things that Yahweh his God says are right and good.

2 Chronicles 31:21

to seek his God

Seeking Yahweh represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. Alternate translation: “to obey his God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he performed it with all his heart

Here the word “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “he performed it with all his will” or “he was completely committed to what he did” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [his God](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [and succeeded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

21 And in every deed that he began in the service of [the house of God](#), and by the law, and by the commandment [to seek his God](#), with all [his heart](#) he did [and succeeded](#).

31:16 ^[1], some modern versions have .

UST

21 In everything that he did for the worship in the temple, and as he obeyed God’s laws and commands, he tried to find out what his God wanted, and he worked energetically. So he was successful.

2 Chronicles 32

2 Chronicles 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Because Hezekiah trusted God, God rescued Jerusalem from the attacked of the Assyrian army and healed Hezekiah when he was very sick. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Chronicles 32:1

After these things and these acts of faithfulness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully.” Alternate translation: “After Hezekiah faithfully did all the things Yahweh commanded him to do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Sennacherib, king of Assyria, came ... He camped

Here Sennacherib represents his army. Alternate translation: “Sennacherib, king of Assyria, and his army came ... They camped” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

came and entered Judah

Here “came” can be stated as “went.” Alternate translation: “went and entered Judah” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [into Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹ After these things and faithfulness, Sennacherib, [the king of Assyria](#), came. And he came [into Judah](#). And he encamped against the fortified cities. And he said to capture them for himself.

UST

¹ After King Hezekiah had obeyed Yahweh's instructions and had done all those things, King Sennacherib of Assyria came with his army and invaded Judah. He commanded his soldiers to surround the cities that had walls around them, thinking that they would break through those walls and conquer those cities.

2 Chronicles 32:2

that Sennacherib had come and that he intended

Here Sennacherib also represents his army. Alternate translation: "that Sennacherib and his army had come and that they intended" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to fight against Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" represents the people there. Alternate translation: "to fight against the people of Jerusalem" or "to fight against the army of Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

² And Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come [and his face](#) was to battle against [Jerusalem](#).

UST

² When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come with his army and that they intended to attack Jerusalem,

2 Chronicles 32:3

to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city

The people of the city would fill up wells and fountain springs with earth and rocks, hiding the water from the Assyrians, but the people would cause the water to flow into the city through secret pathways.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he consulted
- his chiefs

Translation Words - UST

- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³ And he consulted with his chiefs and his mighty ones to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city; and they helped him.

UST

³⁻⁴ he consulted with his officials and army leaders. They said to themselves, "Why should allow the king of Assyria and his army to come and find plenty of water to drink?" So they decided to stop the water from flowing outside the city. A large group of men gathered together and blocked all the springs and the stream that flowed through that area.

2 Chronicles 32:4

Why should the kings of Assyria come and find a lot of water?

The people use a rhetorical question to emphasize that they do not want the kings of Assyria to find their water. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We do not want the kings of Assyria to come here and find a lot of water." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the kings of Assyria

Here, the word **kings** could mean: (1) this is an idiom that refers to the one king of Assyria. Alternate translation: "the king of Assyria" or (2) this may refer to the king and his other leaders. Alternate translation: "the king and the other leaders of Assyria" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Assyria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁴ And many [people](#) gathered, and they stopped up all the springs and the stream that was flowing in the midst of [the land](#), saying, "Why should [the kings of Assyria](#) come and find many waters?"

UST

³⁻⁴ he consulted with his officials and army leaders. They said to themselves, "Why should allow the king of Assyria and his army to come and find plenty of water to drink?" So they decided to stop the water from flowing outside the city. A large group of men gathered together and blocked all the springs and the stream that flowed through that area.

2 Chronicles 32:5

Hezekiah took courage and built up ... He built ... He also ... he made

The readers should understand that Hezekiah probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah took courage and commanded the people to build up ... They built ... They also ... they made" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hezekiah took courage and built up

This could mean: (1) Hezekiah strengthened his position by commanding the people to repair the walls of the city. You can make this clear by using the connecting word "by." Alternate translation: "Hezekiah strengthened the city by building up" or (2) he became encouraged. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah became encouraged and built up" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

the Millo

This is a part of the wall on the north side of Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

⁵ And he strengthened himself. And he built all the broken wall, and he brought up the towers and the other outer wall. And he strengthened the Millo in the city of [David](#). And he made weapons in abundance and shields. ^[1]

UST

⁵ Then they worked hard to repair all the sections of the city wall that had been broken, and they built watchtowers on the walls higher. They strengthened the Millo, a massive supporting wall on the east side of the city of David. They also made a large number of weapons and shields.

2 Chronicles 32:6

He placed military commanders over the people

The idiom “place over” means to put in charge of. “He put military commanders in charge of the people” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chiefs of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [at the...gate](#)
- [their heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁶ And he placed [chiefs of](#) battle over [the people](#). And he gathered them to himself to the plaza [at the](#) city [gate](#). And he spoke to [their heart](#), saying,

UST

⁶ Hezekiah appointed army commanders, and he gathered them in front of him in the square at one of the city gates, and he encouraged them by saying this to them:

2 Chronicles 32:7

for someone is with us who is greater than those with him

Alternate translation: "for our God is with us and is more powerful than those with the king of Assyria"

Translation Words - ULT

- Be strong
- and be courageous
- do...be dismayed
- Do...be afraid
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- king, kingship
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁷ "Be strong and be courageous. Do not be afraid, and do not be dismayed from before the king of Assyria and from before all the multitude that is with him, for with us is one greater than with him.

UST

⁷ "Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid or discouraged because of the king of Assyria and the huge army that is with him, because Yahweh is with us, and his power is greater than their power.

2 Chronicles 32:8

is only an arm of flesh

Here “arm” represents strength, and “flesh” represents humanity.
Alternate translation: “are only those with human power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁸ With him, an arm of [flesh](#), but with us, [Yahweh, our God](#), to help us and to fight our battles.” And [the people](#) leaned on the words of Hezekiah, [the king of Judah](#).

UST

⁸ They have to rely on the power of humans, but we have Yahweh our God to help us and to fight battles for us.” So the people became more confident because of what Hezekiah, the king of Judah, said.

2 Chronicles 32:9

now he was ... with him

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about the location of Sennacherib and his army. (See: [Background Information](#))

Lachish

This was a city in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁹ After this, Sennacherib, [the king of Assyria](#), sent [his servants to Jerusalem](#) (and he was by Lachish, and all his military strength was with him) to Hezekiah, [the king of Judah](#), and to all [Judah](#) who was [in Jerusalem](#), saying,

UST

⁹ Later, when Sennacherib and all his soldiers were surrounding the city of Lachish, he sent some officers to Jerusalem to give this message to King Hezekiah and to all the people of Judah who were there:

2 Chronicles 32:10

What are you relying on in order to endure a siege in Jerusalem?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are not able to endure a siege in Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁰ "Thus says Sennacherib, [the king of Assyria](#): On what are you all trusting and dwelling in siege [in Jerusalem](#)?

UST

¹⁰ "I am Sennacherib, the great king of Assyria, and this is what I say: While you are staying in Jerusalem, my soldiers are surrounding the city. So what are you depending on to keep you safe?

2 Chronicles 32:11

Is not Hezekiah misleading you ... king of Assyria?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah is misleading you ... king of Assyria." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that he may give you over to die by famine and by thirst

Alternate translation: "so that you will die from lack of food and water"

from the hand of the king of Assyria

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from the power of the king of Assyria" or "from the king of Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to die
- by famine
- Yahweh
- our God
- from the palm of
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- die, dead, deadly, death
- famine
- hand
- king, kingship

ULT

¹¹ Is not Hezekiah misleading you all, to give you all [to die by famine](#) and by thirst, saying, 'Yahweh our God will deliver us [from the palm of the king of Assyria](#)'?

UST

¹¹ Hezekiah says to you, 'Yahweh our God will save us from being defeated by the army of you.' He wants you to die from having no food or water.

2 Chronicles 32:12

Has not this same Hezekiah taken away ... sacrifices'?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is the same Hezekiah who has taken away ... sacrifices." or "Hezekiah has taken away ... sacrifices."

commanded Judah and Jerusalem

Here "Judah" and "Jerusalem" represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: "commanded the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his altars](#)
- [altar](#)
- [to Judah](#)
- [you all must worship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [altar](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

¹² Did not he, Hezekiah, take away his high places and [his altars](#) and he said [to Judah](#) and to Jerusalem, saying, 'Before one [altar you all must worship](#), and on it you all must make sacrifice?'

UST

¹² Hezekiah is the one who told his men to get rid of that god's high places on the hills, and his altars in the countryside, saying to you people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, 'You must worship at only one altar and burn sacrifices on only that altar.'

2 Chronicles 32:13

Do you not know what ... lands?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know very well what ... lands!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Were the gods ... power?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There was no god ... power!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹³ Do you all not know what I have done, I and my fathers, to all the peoples of the lands? Were the gods of the nations of the lands surely able to deliver their land from my hand?

UST

¹³⁻¹⁴ Do you people not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the people groups in other countries? We destroyed them all, and their gods could not save them from me.

Translation Words - ULT

- Do you all...know
- and my fathers
- the peoples of
- the lands
- the lands
- their land
- the gods of
- the nations of
- from my hand

Translation Words - UST

- God
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- nation
- people, people group

2 Chronicles 32:14

Among all the gods ... was there any god who ... hand?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There was no god among all the gods ... who ... hand!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

out of my hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from my power" or "from me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why should your God be able ... power?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no reason your God should be able ... power!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Who is among all [the gods of](#) these [nations](#) whom [my fathers devoted to destruction](#) who is able to deliver [his people from my hand](#), that [your God](#) is able to deliver you all [from my hand](#)?

UST

¹³⁻¹⁴ Do you people not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the people groups in other countries? We destroyed them all, and their gods could not save them from me.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gods of](#)
- [your God](#)
- [nations](#)
- [my fathers](#)
- [devoted to destruction](#)
- [his people](#)
- [from my hand](#)
- [from my hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [nation](#)
- [people, people group](#)

2 Chronicles 32:15

Now

Here the word “now” is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

How much less will your God rescue you from my hand?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “Your God will certainly not be able to rescue you from my hand!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- do...let...deceive
- do...believe
- god of
- your God
- nation
- his people
- from my hand
- from my hand
- my fathers

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- God
- God
- deceive, lie, deception, illusions
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- nation
- people, people group

ULT

15 And now do not let Hezekiah [deceive](#) you all and do not let him mislead you all like this. And do not [believe](#) him for any [god of](#) any [nation](#) or kingdom has not been able to deliver [his people from my hand](#) or from the hand of [my fathers](#). Also, indeed, [your God](#) will not deliver you all [from my hand](#).”

UST

15 So do not allow Hezekiah to deceive you like this. Do not believe what he says, because no god of any nation or kingdom has ever been able to rescue his people from being conquered by my army and the armies of my ancestors. So certainly your god will not be able to rescue you from my power.”

2 Chronicles 32:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- his servant
- Yahweh
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁶ And again his servants spoke against Yahweh God and against Hezekiah, his servant.

UST

¹⁶ Sennacherib's officers said more things to insult Yahweh their God and Hezekiah, who served God well.

2 Chronicles 32:17

out of my hand

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “from my power” or “from me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- the God of
- Israel
- the nations of
- the lands
- their people
- his people
- from my hand
- from my hand

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- earth, land
- hand
- hand
- nation
- people, people group
- people, people group

ULT

17 And letters he wrote to taunt [Yahweh](#), [the God of Israel](#), and to speak against him, saying, “Like the gods of [the nations of the lands](#) who did not deliver [their people from my hand](#), thus [the God of Hezekiah](#) will not deliver [his people from my hand](#).”

UST

17 King Sennacherib wrote more letters insulting Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to. He wrote, “No god of any of these nations I have conquered could save his people from me. Similarly, the god of Hezekiah will not save his people from my power.”

2 Chronicles 32:18

They cried out

Alternate translation: "Sennacherib's servants shouted loudly"

to frighten them and trouble them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of fear. Alternate translation: "to make them very afraid" (See: [Doublet](#))

they might capture

Alternate translation: "the Assyrian army might capture"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they called](#)
- [in a...voice](#)
- [in Judean](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to frighten them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [Hebrew](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [voice](#)

ULT

18 [And they called in a great voice in Judean](#) against [the people of Jerusalem](#) who were on the wall, [to frighten them](#) and to dismay them, in order that they might capture the city.

UST

18 Then the officers shouted in the Hebrew language to the people who were on the wall, in order to cause them to be very terrified, thinking that as a result the army of Assyria could capture the city without a battle.

2 Chronicles 32:19

They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken of the gods of the other peoples of the earth

Alternate translation: "They mocked the God of Jerusalem as they had mocked the gods of the other peoples of the earth"

which are merely the work of men's hands

This emphasizes that humans made these idols with their own hands and are therefore worthless. Alternate translation: "which are merely idols that men have made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- the gods of
- Jerusalem
- the peoples of
- the land
- the hands of
- man

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Adam
- Jerusalem
- earth, land
- hand
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁹ And they spoke about the God of Jerusalem as against the gods of the peoples of the land, the work of the hands of man.

UST

¹⁹ They belittled the God worshiped by the people of Jerusalem like they belittled the gods of the other people groups of the world, gods which indeed were only idols fashioned by craftsmen.

2 Chronicles 32:20

cried out to heaven

Here “heaven” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “cried to Yahweh for help” or “pleaded to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- And...prayed
- and Isaiah
- the son of
- Amoz
- the prophet
- and they cried out
- to the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- pray, prayer
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Amoz
- Isaiah
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁰ And Hezekiah, [the king](#), [prayed](#), and [Isaiah the son of Amoz, the prophet](#), about this, [and they cried out to the heavens](#).

UST

²⁰ Then King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah cried out to God, praying very earnestly about this.

2 Chronicles 32:21

with shame on his face

Alternate translation: “embarrassed” or “ashamed”

the house of his god

Alternate translation: “the temple of his god”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- an angel
- his god
- by the sword
- the mighty ones of
- the army
- and chiefs
- the king of
- Assyria
- And he returned
- on faces
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- face, facial
- house, household
- king, kingship
- messenger
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- return, turn back
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

²¹ And Yahweh sent an angel, and he wiped out all the mighty ones of the army and leaders and chiefs in the camp of the king of Assyria. And he returned with shame on faces to his land. And he came to the house of his god, and some of the ones coming forth from his inward parts, there they caused him to fall by the sword.

UST

²¹ And that night Yahweh sent an angel who killed all the soldiers of Assyria and their leaders and their officers in the place where the king of Assyria and his army had set up their tents. So the king of Assyria left, and returned to his own country, very disgraced. And one day when he went into the temple of his god, some of his sons struck him with their swords and killed him.

2 Chronicles 32:22

from the hand of Sennacherib ... from the hand of all others

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “from the power of Sennacherib ... from the power of all others” or “from Sennacherib ... from all others” (See: [Metonymy](#))

gave them rest on every side

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **rest**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “peacefully.” Alternate translation: “caused them to live peacefully with all the people of the nations around them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- And...saved
- Jerusalem
- from the hand of
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Jerusalem
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- hand
- king, kingship

ULT

²² And [Yahweh saved](#) Hezekiah and the inhabitants of [Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria](#), and from the hand of all. And he gave them rest all around. ^[2]

UST

²² That is how Yahweh guided and rescued Hezekiah and the people of Jerusalem from the power of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, and from the power of all their other enemies. That is how he gave them peace with all the countries near them.

2 Chronicles 32:23

he was lifted up in the eyes of all nations

Here “lifted up” is an idiom that means to honor. Also, “in the eyes” is a metaphor that represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “the people of all the nations honored him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gifts
- to Yahweh
- to Jerusalem
- the king of
- Judah
- the nations

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- grain offering
- king, kingship
- nation

ULT

²³ And many were bringing [gifts to Yahweh to Jerusalem](#) and precious things to Hezekiah [the king of Judah](#). And he was lifted up in the eyes of all [the nations](#) from after that.

UST

²³ Many people brought offerings for Yahweh to Jerusalem, and also brought valuable gifts for King Hezekiah. And from that time, Hezekiah was highly respected by the people of all the other nations.

2 Chronicles 32:24

that he would be healed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that he would heal Hezekiah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [And he prayed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And a sign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

²⁴ In those days Hezekiah was sick unto [death](#). [And he prayed](#) to [Yahweh](#), and he spoke to him. [And a sign](#) he gave to him.

UST

²⁴ About that time, Hezekiah became very ill. He thought that he was about to die. But he prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered him. He performed a miracle and healed Hezekiah.

2 Chronicles 32:25

But Hezekiah did not pay back Yahweh for the help given to him

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But Hezekiah did not act in a grateful way after Yahweh helped him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his heart was lifted up

Here "heart" is a metonym that represents a person's inner being. Here "heart was lifted up" is an idiom that means to become proud. Alternate translation: "he became proud" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

So anger came on him, and on Judah and Jerusalem

Yahweh becoming angry and punishing the people is spoken of as if "anger came on" them. "Judah" and "Jerusalem" are metonyms that represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh became angry and punished him and the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [did...return](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

²⁵ But according to the benefit to him Hezekiah did not [return](#), for [his heart](#) was high. And there was on him wrath and on [Judah and Jerusalem](#).

UST

²⁵ But Hezekiah was very proud, and he did not thank Yahweh for acting kindly toward him. Therefore Yahweh was angry with him and punished him and the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah.

2 Chronicles 32:26

during Hezekiah's days

Alternate translation: "during Hezekiah's lifetime" or "during Hezekiah's reign as king"

Translation Words - ULT

- his heart
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem

ULT

26 And Hezekiah humbled himself from the height of his heart, he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the wrath of Yahweh did not come upon them in the days of Hezekiah.

UST

26 Then Hezekiah said that he was sorry about being proud, and the people of Jerusalem also said that they were sorry for their sins. So Yahweh did not punish them during the remaining years that Hezekiah was their king.

2 Chronicles 32:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁷ And there was to Hezekiah very many riches and glory, and treasuries he made for himself for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all desirable items,

UST

²⁷ Hezekiah became very rich and was greatly honored. His workers made storerooms for his silver and gold, for his very valuable stones, and for spices and shields and other valuable things.

2 Chronicles 32:28

stalls

This is a small enclosure where horses are kept. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:25](#)

pens

a storage place for small animals

Translation Words - ULT

- [grain](#)
- [and oil](#)
- [beasts](#)
- [and beasts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [oil](#)

ULT

²⁸ and storehouses for produce of [grain](#), and new wine, [and oil](#), and stalls for all [beasts and beasts](#), and flocks for the stalls.

UST

²⁸ His workers also built buildings to store the grain and wine and olive oil that people produced and brought to him. They also made stalls for various kinds of cattle, and pens for his flocks of sheep and goats.

2 Chronicles 32:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sheep
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- flock, herd

ULT

²⁹ And cities he made for himself and livestock of **sheep** and cattle in abundance, for **God** gave to him very much property. ^[3]

UST

²⁹ They built cities and acquired for the king great many flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle, because God had enabled him to become very rich.

2 Chronicles 32:30

Hezekiah who also stopped up ... and who brought them straight down

The readers should understand that Hezekiah probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah who ordered his workers to stop up ... and to build a tunnel so that the water would flow down" (See: [Metonymy](#))

waters of Gihon

This is the name of a stream near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...succeeded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

³⁰ And this same Hezekiah stopped up the upper outlet of the waters of Gihon, and he directed them down to the west side of the city of [David](#). And Hezekiah [succeeded](#) in all his work.

UST

³⁰ Hezekiah was the one who told his workers to block the place where the water flows out of the spring of Gihon, and to build a tunnel through which the water flowed to the west side of the area called the city of David. He was able to do everything that he wanted to do.

2 Chronicles 32:31

the miraculous sign that had been done in the land

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the miracle that Yahweh had performed in the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to know all that was in his heart

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Alternate translation: “to reveal Hezekiah’s true character” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the chiefs of
- Babylon
- to seek
- God
- left him

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- seek, search, look for

ULT

³¹ And thus, when the envoys of the chiefs of Babylon sent to him to seek the sign that was in the land, God left him to test him, to know all in his heart.

UST

³¹ But when messengers who were sent by the rulers of Babylon came and asked about the miracle that God had performed in the land, it was then that God left Hezekiah alone in order to test him. God tested him so that he would know everything that was in Hezekiah's heart.

2 Chronicles 32:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and his covenant faithfulnesses
- Isaiah
- the son of
- Amoz
- the prophet
- the kings of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Amoz
- Isaiah
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

ULT

³² And the remainder of the matters of Hezekiah, and his covenant faithfulnesses, behold, they are written in the vision of Isaiah, the son of Amoz, the prophet, on the scroll of the kings of Judah and Israel.

UST

³² A record of the other things that happened while Hezekiah was ruling, and the things that he did to please God, is written on the scroll of the vision of Isaiah the prophet. It is also written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

2 Chronicles 32:33

Hezekiah slept with his ancestors

This was a polite way to tell about him dying. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:31](#). Alternate translation: "Hezekiah died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [the graves of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [his son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [And...reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

ULT

33 And Hezekiah laid down with [his fathers](#), and they buried him in the ascent of [the graves of the sons of David](#). And honor they did for him in his death, all [Judah](#) and the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#). And Manasseh [his son](#) [reigned](#) in his place.

32:5 ^[1], some ancient and modern versions have, , that is, on the wall.

32:22 ^[2], some ancient and modern versions have . The original reading is uncertain.

32:29 ^[3], some modern versions have , and some other modern versions leave out the word entirely.

UST

33 When Hezekiah died, he was buried in the tombs where the most respected kings of Judah were buried. Everyone in Jerusalem and other places in Judah honored him. Then his son Manasseh became the king.

2 Chronicles 33

2 Chronicles 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Manasseh

Manasseh angered God more than any other king of Judah. He worshiped the sun, stars and many foreign gods and even sacrificed his sons to the sun. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Chronicles 33:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- A son of
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem

ULT

¹ A son of 12 years was Manasseh when he became king; and 55 years he reigned in Jerusalem.

UST

¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for fifty-five years.

2 Chronicles 33:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh's "sight" refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: "things that Yahweh said were evil" or "the things that Yahweh considers evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

like the disgusting things

Another possible meaning is "including the disgusting things."

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [like the abominations of](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

² And he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh, like the abominations of the nations](#) whom [Yahweh](#) had driven out from before [the sons of Israel](#).

UST

² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He imitated the disgusting things that were formerly done by the people groups that Yahweh had expelled from Israel as his people advanced into the land.

2 Chronicles 33:3

he rebuilt the high places ... he built altars ... he made Asherah poles

Manasseh would have commanded his workers to do the building for him. Alternate translation: “he had the high places rebuilt ... he had altars built ... he had Asherah poles made” or “he had his workers rebuild the high places ... he had them build altars ... he had them make Asherah poles” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he turned](#)
- [his father](#)
- [altars](#)
- [and he bowed down](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

³ [And he turned](#) and built the high places that Hezekiah [his father](#) had torn down, and he erected [altars](#) to the Baals, and he made Asheroth, [and he bowed down](#) to all the host of [the heavens](#), and he served them.

UST

³ He commanded his workers to rebuild the high places upon the hills for worshiping idols, the same ones that his father Hezekiah had destroyed. He told them to set up poles to honor the god Baal, and to make poles to honor the goddess Asherah. He also bowed down to worship all the stars.

2 Chronicles 33:4

It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "Jerusalem is where I will forever make known who I am" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- altars
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- In Jerusalem
- my name

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- name
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem

ULT

⁴ And he built altars in the house of Yahweh, about which Yahweh had said, "In Jerusalem, my name will be forever."

UST

⁴ He directed his workers to build altars for foreign gods in the temple itself, about which Yahweh had said, "It is here in Jerusalem that I want people to worship me, forever."

2 Chronicles 33:5

He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh

It is implied that he built these altars so people could make sacrifices and worship the stars. Also, he would not have built these altars himself, rather he would have commanded his workers to do it.

Alternate translation: "He had his workers build altars in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh so that the people could worship the stars and offer them sacrifices" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altars
- the heavens
- the...courts of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- court, courtyard
- house, household

ULT

⁵ And he built altars for all the host of the heavens in the two courts of the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵ He directed that altars for worshiping all the stars be built in both of the courtyards outside the temple

2 Chronicles 33:6

Valley of Ben Hinnom

This is the name of a place near Jerusalem that is also known as Gehenna. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he caused his sons to pass through the fire

You may need to make explicit why he put his son in the fire and what happened after he did so. Alternate translation: “he burned his sons to death as an offering to his gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

consulted with

Alternate translation: “asked for information from”

the dead

This refers to dead people. Alternate translation: “dead people” or “those who are dead” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Manasseh did much evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh’s “sight” refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: “Manasseh did many things that Yahweh said were evil” or “He practiced the things that Yahweh considered evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he provoked him to anger

Alternate translation: “Manasseh made Yahweh very angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sons](#)
- [Ben](#)
- [through the fire](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

ULT

⁶ And he himself caused [his sons](#) to pass [through the fire](#) in the Valley of [Ben Hinnom](#) and he practiced soothsaying, and divination, and he practiced magic, and he dealt with mediums and spirists. He multiplied doing [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) to provoke him to anger.

UST

⁶ He even sacrificed some of his own sons by burning them in a fire in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He performed rituals to practice sorcery. He asked fortune tellers for advice. He performed witchcraft. He talked to people who consulted the spirits of people who had died to find out what would happen in the future. He did many things that Yahweh says are very evil, things that caused Yahweh to become very angry.

2 Chronicles 33:7

he had made

Manasseh probably did not do the work. His servants would have done the work. Alternate translation: “Manasseh had ordered his servants to make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that I will put my name forever

Here God is represented by his “name.” Alternate translation: “where I want people to worship me forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And he put
- in the house of
- In...house
- Israel
- my name
- God
- God
- David
- Solomon
- his son
- and in Jerusalem
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- name
- son
- temple, house, house of God
- temple, house, house of God
- David
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

⁷ And he put the image of the idol which he made in the house of God of which God said to David and to Solomon his son, “In this house and in Jerusalem which I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel, I will set my name forever.

UST

⁷ Manasseh took the carved idol that his workers had made and put it in the temple. That is the temple concerning which God had said to David and to his son Solomon, “My temple will be here in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen where I want people to worship me, forever.

2 Chronicles 33:8

that I assigned to their ancestors

Alternate translation: "that I gave to their ancestors"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- I appointed
- for your fathers
- they are careful
- I commanded them
- the law
- by the hand of
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

⁸ And I will not again remove the foot of Israel from upon the soil that I appointed for your fathers, only if they are careful to do all that I commanded them, all the law, and the statutes, and the judgments by the hand of Moses."

UST

⁸ If they will obey all the laws and decrees and regulations that I told Moses to give to them, I will not again force the Israelite people to leave this land that I gave to their ancestors."

2 Chronicles 33:9

Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" is a part of "Judah." Alternate translation: "the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel

Here "nations" refers to the people who had lived in the land of Canaan before the Israelites had arrived. Alternate translation: "even more than the people whom Yahweh had destroyed as the people of Israel advanced through the land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Jerusalem
- evil
- the nations
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- nation

ULT

⁹ And Manasseh led astray Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, to do evil more than the nations that Yahweh had exterminated from before the sons of Israel.

UST

⁹ But Manasseh led the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah to do things that are wrong, with the result that they did more evil than had been done by the people in the people groups that Yahweh had driven out as the Israelite people advanced through the land.

2 Chronicles 33:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁰ And Yahweh spoke to Manasseh and to his people, but they did not pay attention.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh spoke to Manasseh and the people of Judah, but they paid no attention.

2 Chronicles 33:11

brought on them

Yahweh sent the army to attack Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “brought about an attack on them by” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria

The commanders were accompanied by their soldiers. Alternate translation: “the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria and their soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

took Manasseh in chains, bound him with fetters, and took him off to Babylon

Here Manasseh being taken as a prisoner is represented by him being bound by chains and fetters. Fetters were chains placed around the feet. Alternate translation: “seized Manasseh, bound him in chains, and took him as a prisoner to Babylon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

11 And [Yahweh](#) brought against them [the chiefs of](#) the army which [belonged to the king of Assyria](#). And they captured Manasseh in chains, and they bound him in bronze, and they took him [to Babylon](#).

UST

11 So Yahweh caused the army commanders of Assyria and their soldiers to come to Jerusalem, and they captured Manasseh. They put a hook in his nose, put bronze chains on his feet, and took him to Babylon.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [belonged to the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [to Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

2 Chronicles 33:12

implored

to beg for help

Translation Words - ULT

- the face of
- Yahweh
- his God
- the God of
- his fathers

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹² And when he was in distress, he entreated the face of Yahweh, his God, and he humbled himself much from before the God of his fathers.

UST

¹² There, while he was suffering, he humbled himself greatly in the presence of Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors worshiped, and pleaded with Yahweh to help him.

2 Chronicles 33:13

He prayed to him; and God was begged by him

The second phrase intensifies the first phrase and emphasizes the earnestness of Manasseh's prayer. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "He prayed to God and begged him" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

into his kingship

Alternate translation: "to rule again as king"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he prayed](#)
- [his supplication](#)
- [and he brought him back](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [to his kingdom](#)
- [And...knew](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

¹³ [And he prayed](#) to him; and he was entreated by him, and he heard [his supplication, and he brought him back to Jerusalem to his kingdom](#). And Manasseh [knew](#) that [Yahweh](#), he [is God](#).

UST

¹³ When he prayed, Yahweh heard him and pitied him. So he allowed him to return to Jerusalem and to rule his kingdom again. Then Manasseh realized that Yahweh is God, who can do anything.

2 Chronicles 33:14

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Manasseh built ... He surrounded ... and raised ... He put

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation:

“Manasseh commanded his workers to build ... They surrounded ... and raised ... He commanded his workers to put” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Gihon

This was the name of a spring and a stream. See how you translated the “waters of Gihon” in [2 Chronicles 32:30](#). Alternate translation: “the waters of Gihon” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the hill of Ophel

Translate the name of this hill as you did in [2 Chronicles 27:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

raised the wall up

Alternate translation: “built the wall up”

the fortified cities

This refers to cities with walls around them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [of the...Gate](#)
- [And he put](#)
- [chiefs of](#)
- [the army](#)
- [in Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [David](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And after this, he built an outer wall for the city of [David](#), on the west of Gihon, in the valley, and at the entrance of the Fish [Gate](#), and around the hill, and he made it very high. [And he put chiefs of the army](#) in all the fortified cities [in Judah](#).

UST

¹⁴ Later, Manasseh's workers rebuilt the eastern section of the outer wall around Jerusalem, and they made it higher. That section extended from spring of Gihon north to the Fish Gate, and around the part of the city that they called Ophel Hill. Manasseh also appointed army officers to guard each of the cities in Judah that had walls around them.

2 Chronicles 33:15

He took away ... he had built ... and threw

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself; rather, he commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation: "Manasseh commanded his workers to take away ... they had previously built ... and to throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the foreign gods

Alternate translation: "the false gods from other countries"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...gods](#)
- [from the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the altars](#)
- [and in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he took away the foreign [gods](#), and the idol [from the house of Yahweh](#), and all [the altars](#) that he built on the mountain of [the house of Yahweh and in Jerusalem](#). And he threw them outside the city.

UST

¹⁵ Manasseh's workers removed from the temple the idols and the figures of gods of other nations. He also told them to remove the altars that they had previously built on Mount Zion and in other places in Jerusalem. He had all those things thrown out of the city.

2 Chronicles 33:16

He rebuilt

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation: "He commanded them to rebuild" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he commanded Judah

Here "Judah" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "he commanded the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- sacrifices of
- to Judah
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judah
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

16 And he built the altar of Yahweh, and he sacrificed on it sacrifices of peace offerings and thank offerings. And he said to Judah to serve Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

16 Then he told them to repair the altar of Yahweh, and he offered sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh and to thank him. And he told the people of Judah that they must worship only Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 33:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- were...sacrificing
- Yahweh
- their God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹⁷ However, the people were still sacrificing on the high places, only to Yahweh, their God.

UST

¹⁷ The people continued to offer sacrifices at the high places on the hills, but only to Yahweh their God.

2 Chronicles 33:18

behold, they are written among the deeds ... of Israel

Alternate translation: "anyone can look among the deeds ... Israel and see that they are written there"

they are written

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "men have written them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the deeds of the kings of Israel

This is an account of the history of Israel that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- his God
- the God of
- in the name of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- the kings of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- name
- Yahweh
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁸ And the remainder of the matters of Manasseh, and his prayer to [his God](#), and the words of the seers, those speaking to him [in the name of Yahweh](#), [the God of Israel](#), behold, they are on the words of [the kings of Israel](#).

UST

¹⁸ The other things that happened while Manasseh was ruling, including his prayer to God and the messages from Yahweh that the prophets spoke to him, are written in the book of the kings of Israel.

2 Chronicles 33:19

the places where he had built high places and set up the Asherah poles and the carved figures

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation: “the place where he had the high places built and the Asherah poles and the carved figures set up” or “the places where he commanded his workers to build the high places and to set up the Asherah poles and carved figures” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Chronicles of the Seers

This is a book that no longer exists.

they are written about

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “men have written about them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his sin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And his prayer and how he was entreated by him, and all [his sin](#), and his unfaithfulness, and the places where he built in them high places, and he raised Asherim and idols before he humbled himself—behold, they are written in the Words of Hozai. ^[1]

UST

¹⁹ What Manasseh prayed and how God pitied him because of what he pleaded to God for—also his sins and ways in which he disobeyed God—also the list of places where he built the houses on the hills for idol worship and set up poles to honor the goddess Asherah and other idols before he humbled himself—these are all written in what the prophets wrote.

2 Chronicles 33:20

So Manasseh slept with his ancestors

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "So Manasseh died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

in his own house

Alternate translation: "in his palace"

Amon

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

king in his place

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "became the next king" or "became the king of Judah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [in his house](#)
- [his son](#)
- [And...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Manasseh laid down with [his fathers](#), and they buried him [in his house](#). And Amon, [his son](#), [became king](#) in his place.

UST

²⁰ Manasseh died and was buried in his palace. Then his son Amon became the king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 33:21

twenty-two years old

"22 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

²¹ [A son of](#) 22 years was Amon when he became king; and two years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

²¹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for two years.

2 Chronicles 33:22

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh's "sight" refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: "things that Yahweh said were evil" or "the things that Yahweh considers evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father](#)
- [sacrificed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

²² And he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), just as Manasseh, [his father](#), had done. And to all the idols that Manasseh [his father](#) made, Amon [sacrificed](#), and he served them.

UST

²² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, as his father Manasseh had done. Amon worshiped all the idols that Manasseh's workers had made.

2 Chronicles 33:23

this same Amon trespassed more and more

Alternate translation: "Amon sinned again and again" or "Amon continued to sin"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- his father
- guilt

Translation Words - UST

- guilt, guilty
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²³ And he did not humble himself from before **Yahweh**, as Manasseh **his father** humbled himself, for this Amon multiplied **guilt**.

UST

²³ But he did not humble himself and turn to Yahweh like his father did. So he became more sinful than his father had been.

2 Chronicles 33:24

put him to death

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “killed him” (See: [Idiom](#))

conspired against him

Alternate translation: “planned in secret to kill him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servants](#)
- [and they put him to death](#)
- [in his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [his servants](#) conspired against him, [and they put him to death in his house](#).

UST

²⁴ Then Amon's officials made plans to kill him. They assassinated him in his palace.

2 Chronicles 33:25

king in his place

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “became the next king” or “became the king of Judah” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the people of (2)
- the land
- the land
- King
- and...made...king
- Josiah
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Josiah
- earth, land
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group (2)
- reign, rule

ULT

²⁵ But [the people of the land](#) struck down all those who had conspired against [King](#) Amon, and [the people of the land made Josiah, his son, king](#) in his place.

33:19 ^[1], which is the reading of the original text. But many modern versions correct it to read . Also, a few modern versions have .

UST

²⁵ But then the people of Judah killed all those who had assassinated Amon, and they appointed his son Josiah to be their king.

2 Chronicles 34

2 Chronicles 34 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of King Josiah. (2 Chronicles 34-35)

Special concepts in this chapter

Returning the people to Yahweh

Josiah worshiped Yahweh and cleaned out the idols and shrines from Judah. The people returned to worship Yahweh again. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

2 Chronicles 34:1

thirty-one years

“31 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Josiah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Josiah](#)

ULT

¹ [A son of](#) eight years [was Josiah](#) when he became king; and 31 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹ Josiah was eight years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for thirty-one years.

2 Chronicles 34:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here Yahweh's "sight" refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh said were right" or "the things that Yahweh considers right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the ways of David his ancestor

Josiah behaving as David did is spoken of as if he walked on the same road or way as David. Alternate translation: "lived the way David his ancestor had lived" or "followed the example of David his ancestor" (See: [Metaphor](#))

did not turn away either to the right or to the left

To fully obey Yahweh is spoken of as if a person were on the correct road and never turned from it. Alternate translation: "did not do anything that would displease Yahweh" or "fully obeyed the laws of Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

² And he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), and he walked in the ways of [David his father](#), and he did not turn to the right or to the left.

UST

² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, and conducted his life like his ancestor King David had done. He fully obeyed all the laws of God.

2 Chronicles 34:3

the eighth year ... the twelfth year

“year 8...year 12.” See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from ... the cast metal figures

This speaks of Josiah getting rid of the things that were used for worshipping false gods from Judah and Jerusalem as if he were making the places physically clean. Josiah would have commanded his workers to remove these things. Alternate translation: “he began to make Judah and Jerusalem acceptable again to Yahweh by having his workers remove from them the high places, the Asherah poles, the carved figures, and the cast metal figures” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of his reigning
- a youth
- to seek
- the God of
- David
- his father
- Judah
- and Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- God
- David
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³ And in the eighth year of his reigning, and he was still a youth, he began to seek the God of David, his father. And in the 12th year, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the Asherim, and the idols, and the metal images.

UST

³ When he had been ruling for almost eight years, while he was still a boy, he began to worship God as his ancestor King David had done. Four years later, he began to get rid of all the houses that were built on the hills for idol worship, and they were all around Jerusalem and in other places in Judah. They also took down the poles that were to give honor the goddess Asherah and the carved idols and metal statues of gods.

2 Chronicles 34:4

in his presence

Alternate translation: "in Josiah's presence"

he cut apart ... He broke ... He scattered

Josiah probably commanded his workers to do much or all of this work. Alternate translation: "he had them cut apart ... He commanded them to break ... He had them scatter" or "he and his workers cut apart ... He and his workers broke ... He and his workers scattered" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

dust

very small pieces that could be carried away by the wind

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altars of](#)
- [the faces of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

⁴ And they tore down before him [the altars of](#) the Baals, and the incense altars which were above them he cut to pieces. And the Asherim and the idols and the metal images he shattered, and he crushed, and he scattered over [the faces of](#) the graves of those who sacrificed to them.

UST

⁴ While he directed them, his workers tore down the altars where people worshiped Baal. They smashed the altars that were near those altars, where people burned incense. They smashed the poles to honor the goddess Asherah and the idols carved from wood or stone and metal statues. They smashed them to bits and scattered the bits over the graves of those who had offered sacrifices to them.

2 Chronicles 34:5

He burned

Josiah probably commanded his workers to do much or all of this work. Alternate translation: “He commanded them to burn” or “He and his workers burned” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

He burned the bones of their priests on their altars

This means that the bones of the priests who offered sacrifices on the altars to the false gods were burned on the altars that the priests had previously made sacrifices on.

he cleansed Judah and Jerusalem

This speaks of Josiah causing Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable to Yahweh as if he made them physically clean. Alternate translation: “he caused Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁵ And the bones of [the priests](#) he burned on [their altars](#). And he cleansed [Judah](#) and [Jerusalem](#),

UST

⁵ They burned the bones of the priests who had offered sacrifices; they burned them on their own altars. In that way Josiah caused Jerusalem and other places in Judah to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh again.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [their altars](#)
- [And he cleansed](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

2 Chronicles 34:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Naphtali
- their houses

Translation Words - UST

- Naphtali
- house, household

ULT

⁶ and in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim, and Simeon, and until Naphtali, in the hills of their houses all around.

UST

⁶ In the towns in the tribes of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, and as far north as the tribe of Naphtali and in the ruins around all those towns,

2 Chronicles 34:7

He broke down the altars, beat ... cut apart

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things.
Alternate translation: "He commanded his workers to break down the altars, to beat ... to cut apart" (See: [Metonymy](#))

into powder

"into dust." This means to smash them until they have become powder.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altars](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [And he returned](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁷ And he tore down [the altars](#), and the Asherim and the idols he beat to pieces to grinding, and all the incense altars he cut to pieces in all [the land of Israel](#).
[And he returned to Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁷ Josiah's workers tore down the pagan altars and the poles to honor the goddess Asherah, and crushed the idols to powder, idols that craftsmen had carved. They also smashed to pieces all the altars for burning incense throughout Israel. Then Josiah returned to Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 34:8

the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Josiah had cleansed the land and the temple

This speaks of Josiah causing Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable to Yahweh as if he made them physically clean. Alternate translation: “Josiah had caused the land and the temple to become acceptable again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Shaphan ... Azaliah ... Maaseiah ... Joah ... Joahaz

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of his reigning
- the land
- and the house
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the chief of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- his God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- son
- son (2)
- Yahweh
- earth, land
- house, household
- household
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- reign, rule

ULT

⁸ And in the 18th year of his reigning, to cleanse the land and the house, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah, the chief of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the secretary, to make strong the house of Yahweh his God.

UST

⁸ When Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years, he decided to do something else to cause the land and the temple to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh. So he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah and Maaseiah the governor of the city and Joah son of Joahaz, the secretary, to repair the temple of Yahweh.

2 Chronicles 34:9

Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

entrusted to him

Alternate translation: "gave to him the responsibility of using the money"

that had been brought into the house of God, that the Levites, the guards of the doors, had gathered

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that the Levites who guarded the doors had brought into the house of God all that they had gathered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Hilkiah
- the...priest
- the remnant of
- Israel
- Judah
- and Benjamin
- Jerusalem
- the money
- the house of
- God
- the Levites
- gathered
- the keepers of
- the threshold
- from the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- remnant
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Hilkiah
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- Levi, Levite
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- hand
- house, household

ULT

⁹ And they came to Hilkiah, the great priest, and they gave the money that had been brought to the house of God, that the Levites gathered, the keepers of the threshold, from the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and from all the remnant of Israel, and from all Judah and Benjamin, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

UST

⁹ They went to Hilkiah the high priest and gave him the money that had been brought to the temple. That was the money that the descendants of Levi who guarded the doors of the temple had collected from the people of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim and other places in Israel, and also from all the people in Jerusalem and other places in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin—all the people of the land who survived.

- silver
- threshold, doorway
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

2 Chronicles 34:10

They entrusted

The word “they” refers to the men that Josiah had sent to Hilkiah the high priest. They first gave the money to him and then he distributed it to the men who supervised the building. Alternate translation: “Then Hilkiah entrusted” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the money

This refers to some of the money that was entrusted to Hilkiah. Alternate translation: “some of the money” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the hand of](#)
- [over the house of](#)
- [on the house of](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

10 And they gave to [the hand of](#) the doer of the work, the ones appointed [over the house of Yahweh](#). And they gave it to the doers of the work who were working [on the house of Yahweh](#) to repair and to make strong [the house](#).

UST

10 Then Hilkiah gave some of the money to the men who had been appointed to supervise the work of repairing the temple. The supervisors paid the men who did the repair work.

2 Chronicles 34:11

carpenters

workers who build with wood

braces

pieces used to connect large beams

had let fall apart

Alternate translation: "had allowed to rot"

Translation Words - ULT

- the houses
- the kings of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Judea, Judah
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

11 And they gave to the craftsmen and the builders to buy cut stone and woods for the braces, and to make beams for the houses that the kings of Judah had destroyed.

UST

11 They also gave some of the money to the carpenters and builders to buy the cut stones and the timber for the joists and the beams for the buildings that the kings of Judah had allowed to decay.

2 Chronicles 34:12

Jahath ... Meshullam

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Merari

Translate this man's name as you did in [2 Chronicles 29:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kohathites

Translate the name of the clan as you did in [2 Chronicles 20:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Obadiah ... Zechariah

Translate these men's names the same as you did for other men by the same names in [2 Chronicles 17:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were appointed](#)
- [and Obadiah](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [and Zechariah](#)
- [to direct](#)
- [who understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [oversee, overseer, keeper](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

ULT

¹² And the men were working with faithfulness in the work. And over them [were appointed](#) Jahath, [and Obadiah](#), [the Levites](#) from [the sons of](#) Merari, [and Zechariah](#), and Meshullam, from [the sons of](#) the Kohathites, [to direct](#), [and the Levites](#), all [who understand](#) about the instruments of song.

UST

¹² The workers did their work faithfully. Their supervisors were Jahath and Obadiah, who were descendants of Levi's son Merari, and Zechariah and Meshullam, who were descendants of Levi's son Kohath. All the descendants of Levi, who played musical instruments well,

2 Chronicles 34:13

These Levites were in charge of those who carried building material and all other men who worked in any way

This means that they were in charge of all the men who did any type of building work. Alternate translation: "These Levites were in charge of all of the men who did any kind of building work" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for service](#)
- [scribes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scribe](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹³ And over the burden bearers and directors for every doer of the work [for service](#) and service, and from the Levites, were [scribes](#) and officials and gatekeepers.

UST

¹³ supervised all the workers as they did their various jobs. Some of the descendants of Levi were secretaries; some kept records, and some guarded the temple gates.

2 Chronicles 34:14

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

When they brought out the money that was brought into

The word “they” refers to Hilkiah and whoever was helping him. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “When they brought out the money for the supervisors from” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that had been given through Moses

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that Yahweh had given to the people through Moses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the law

Most likely these laws were written on a scroll. A scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the money](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the law of](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And when they were bringing out [the money](#) that had been brought into [the house of Yahweh](#), [Hilkiah the priest](#) found the scroll of [the law of Yahweh by the hand of Moses](#).

UST

¹⁴ While they were giving to the supervisors the money that had been taken to the temple, Hilkiah the high priest found a scroll on which was written the laws that Yahweh had given to Moses to give to the people.

2 Chronicles 34:15

Shaphan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- the scribe
- the law
- in the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- scribe
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah

ULT

¹⁵ And [Hilkiah](#) answered, and he said to Shaphan [the scribe](#), “The scroll of [the law](#) I have found [in the house of Yahweh](#).” And [Hilkiah](#) gave the scroll to Shaphan.

UST

¹⁵ So Hilkiah said to Shaphan, “I have found in the temple a scroll on which is written the laws that God gave to Moses!” Then Hilkiah gave the scroll to Shaphan.

2 Chronicles 34:16

everything that has been entrusted to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “everything that you entrusted to them to do” or “everything that you gave them the responsibility to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and brought...to](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [your servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

16 And Shaphan brought the scroll to [the king](#), and brought further [to the king](#) word, saying, “All that was given [by the hand of your servants](#) they are doing.

UST

16 Shaphan took the scroll to the king and said to him, “Your officials are doing everything that you told them to do.

2 Chronicles 34:17

They have emptied out

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "They have gathered all" (See: [Idiom](#))

into the hand of the supervisors and to the workmen

The supervisors and workmen are represented by their "hand" to emphasize their possession. Alternate translation: "to the supervisors and the workmen" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the money
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- the hand of
- the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- hand
- hand
- silver

ULT

17 And they poured out the money that was found in the house of Yahweh, and they gave it to the hand of those appointed and to the hand of the doers of the work."

UST

17 They have taken the money that was in the temple, and they have given it to the men who will supervise the men who will repair the temple."

2 Chronicles 34:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- the king
- the king
- Hilkiah
- the priest
- And...read

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- Hilkiah
- declare, proclaim, announce
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁸ And Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, "A scroll Hilkiah the priest gave to me." And Shaphan read from it before the king.

UST

¹⁸ Then Shaphan said to the king, "I have also brought to you a scroll that Hilkiah gave to me." And Shaphan started to read it to the king.

2 Chronicles 34:19

It came about that when

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he tore his clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness.
Alternate translation: "he tore his clothes because he was very upset"
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the law

Translation Words - UST

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁹ And it happened when the king heard the words of the law, and he tore his clothes.

UST

¹⁹ When the king heard the laws that were written in the scroll, he tore his clothes because he was very upset.

2 Chronicles 34:20

Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan ... Asaiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- And...commanded
- Hilkiah
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Micah
- the scribe
- the servant of

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- scribe
- son
- son (2)
- Hilkiah
- Micah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²⁰ And [the king](#) commanded [Hilkiah](#), and Ahikam [the son of](#) Shaphan, and Abdon [the son of Micah](#), and Shaphan [the scribe](#), and Asaiah, [the servant of the king](#), saying,

UST

²⁰ Then he gave these instructions to Hilkiah, to Shaphan's son Ahikam, to Micah's son Abdon, to Shaphan, and to Asaiah, the king's special advisor:

2 Chronicles 34:21

ask Yahweh's will for me

The word "will" can be translated as a verb. Also, it is made clear in [2 Chronicles 34:22](#) that the king means for the men to go to the prophetess of Yahweh to determine Yahweh's will. Alternate translation: "Ask Yahweh what he wants me to do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

because of the words

Alternate translation: "concerning the words"

the words of the book that has been found

Here "words" represents the laws. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the laws in the book that Hilkiah has found" (See: [Metonymy and Active or Passive](#))

For it is great, the anger of Yahweh that has been poured out on us. It is great

Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. Alternate translation: "For Yahweh's anger towards us is great, like water that could totally wash us away" or "For great is Yahweh's anger with which he has punished us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

all that was written in it

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all that is written in it" or "all that is in this book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- seek
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in Israel
- is the rage of
- our fathers
- have...kept

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- Yahweh

ULT

²¹ "Go, seek Yahweh on behalf of me, and on behalf of the one who remains in Israel and in Judah, concerning the words of the scroll that has been found. For great is the rage of Yahweh that is poured out on us because our fathers have not kept the word of Yahweh to do like all that is written on this scroll." ^[1]

UST

²¹ "Go and ask Yahweh for me, and for all his people who are still alive in Judah and Israel, about what is written in this scroll that has been found. Because it is clear that Yahweh is very angry with us because our ancestors disobeyed what Yahweh said; they did not obey the laws that are written on this scroll."

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

2 Chronicles 34:22

Huldah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shallum ... Tokhath ... Hasrah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

keeper of the wardrobe

This refers to Shallum. This could mean: (1) the person who took care of the clothing that priests wore in the temple or (2) the person who took care of the king's clothing.

the Second District

This was a certain part of Jerusalem. It may have been a newer part. Alternate translation: "The Second Part" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

they spoke with her in this way

Alternate translation: "they had the following conversation with her"

Translation Words - ULT

- Hilkiah
- the king
- the prophetess
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the keeper of
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- son (2)
- Hilkiah
- Jerusalem
- king, kingship
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

²² And Hilkiah went, and those of the king, to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tokhath, the son of Hasrah, the keeper of the garments. And she was dwelling in Jerusalem in the Second. And they spoke to her about this.

UST

²² So Hilkiah and the others went to consult a woman whose name was Huldah, who was a prophetess who lived in the Second District of Jerusalem. Her husband Shallum son of Tikvah, took care of the robes that were worn in the temple.

2 Chronicles 34:23

the man who sent you to me

Here “the man” refers to King Josiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh

ULT

²³ And she said to them, “Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: Say to the man who sent you all to me,

UST

²³ When they told her what the king had said, she said to them, “This is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites say we worship, says: ‘Go back and tell the king who sent you

2 Chronicles 34:24

See

The word is used here as an idiom to draw the listener's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen" (See: [Idiom](#))

I am about to bring disaster on this place and on its inhabitants

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that he could bring to a place. Alternate translation: "I will soon cause terrible things to happen to this place and to those who live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

on this place

"to Jerusalem" This refers to the city of Jerusalem which represents the whole land of Judah. Alternate translation: "on Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the curses that have been written

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all the curses written" or "all the curses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on this place

Here "this place" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "on these people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [they read](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁴ Thus says [Yahweh](#): Behold, I am bringing [disaster](#) upon this place and upon its inhabitants all the curses written on the scroll that [they read](#) before [the king of Judah](#),

UST

²⁴ that this is what Yahweh says: "Listen to this carefully. I am going to bring a disaster on Jerusalem and all the people who live here. I will send on them the curses that were written in the scroll that was read to the king of Judah."

2 Chronicles 34:25

they have provoked me to anger

Alternate translation: "they have made me angry"

therefore, my anger will be poured out on this place, and it will not be extinguished

Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. Alternate translation: "therefore, my anger against this place is like a fire, and nothing will stop it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

my anger will be poured out

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will pour out my anger" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they abandoned me](#)
- [to...gods](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [will pour out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²⁵ because [they abandoned me](#) and burned incense to other [gods](#) in order to provoke me to anger in all the works of [their hands](#). And my rage [will pour out](#) on this place, and it will not be quenched.' ^[2]

UST

²⁵ I will do that because they have abandoned me, and they burn incense to honor other gods. They have caused me to become very angry because of all the idols that they have made."

2 Chronicles 34:26

About the words that you heard

Alternate translation: "About the message that you heard"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- to seek
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

²⁶ But to the king of Judah, the one who sent you all to seek Yahweh, thus you all shall say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel about the words that you heard:

UST

²⁶ The king of Judah sent you to inquire what I, Yahweh, want. Go and tell him that this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom you Israelites worship, say about what you read:

2 Chronicles 34:27

because your heart was tender

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Feeling sorry is spoken of as if the heart were tender. Alternate translation: “because you felt sorry” or “because you repented” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

torn your clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your heart](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁷ because [your heart](#) was tender, and you humbled yourself before [God](#) when you heard his words concerning this place and concerning its inhabitants, and you have humbled yourself before me, and you have torn your clothes, and you wept before me, and also I myself have heard—declares [Yahweh](#)—

UST

²⁷ 'Because you heeded what was written in the scroll, and you humbled yourself when you heard what I said to warn about what would happen to this city and the people who live here, and because you tore your robes and wept in my presence, I have listened to you.

2 Chronicles 34:28

see, I will gather you to your ancestors. You will be gathered to your grave in peace

Both statements mean basically the same thing. They are polite ways of saying he will die. Alternate translation: "so I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

You will be gathered to your grave

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will gather you to your grave" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your eyes will not see

Here "eyes" represents the whole person. Also, the phrase "will not see" represents not experiencing something. Alternate translation: "you will not experience" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the disaster I will bring on this place

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that Yahweh would bring to a place. Alternate translation: "the terrible things I will cause to happen to this place" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I...will gather you
- your fathers
- your grave
- the disaster
- And they brought back...to
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

²⁸ behold, I myself will gather you to your fathers. And you will be gathered to your grave in peace, and your eyes will not see all the disaster that I am bringing on this place and on its inhabitants." And they brought back word to the king.

UST

²⁸ So I will allow you to die in peace, without seeing me punish this place and the people living in it." So they took her reply back to the king.

2 Chronicles 34:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the elders of
- Judah
- and Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- elder, older, old
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁹ And the king sent, and he gathered all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.

UST

²⁹ Then the king summoned all the elders of Jerusalem and other places in Judea.

2 Chronicles 34:30

all the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many other people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from great to small

This merism includes everyone in between. Alternate translation: “from the most important to the least important” (See: [Merism](#))

He then read in their hearing

Alternate translation: “Then the king read aloud so that they could hear”

that had been found

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Hilkiah had found” or “that they had found” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the house of
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- and the priests
- and the Levites
- the people
- And he read
- the covenant

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- Levi, Levite
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- people, people group

ULT

³⁰ And the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and each man of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, from the great to the small. And he read in their ears all the words of the scroll of the covenant, the one that was found in the house of Yahweh.

UST

³⁰ They went up together to the temple with the leaders of Judah and many other people of Jerusalem and the priests and other descendants of Levi, from the least important to the most important ones. And while they listened, the king read to them everything that was in the scroll containing God's laws that had been found in the temple.

2 Chronicles 34:31

stood in his place

This refers to the place where the king stood at the temple. Alternate translation: “stood where he was supposed to stand at the entrance to the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

walk after Yahweh

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path, and “to walk after” someone is a metonym for doing what that other person does or wants others to do. Alternate translation: “live obeying Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes

These words all share similar meanings. Together they emphasize everything that Yahweh had commanded in the law. (See: [Doublet](#))

with all his heart and all his soul

The idiom “with all his heart” means “completely” and “with all his soul” means “with all his being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “with all his being” or “with all his energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

that were written in this book

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that this book contained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- and he cut
- the covenant
- the covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his commandments
- and his statutes
- his heart
- his being

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- covenant
- covenant
- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

ULT

³¹ And the king stood in his place, and he cut the covenant before Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh, and to keep his commandments, and his testimony, and his statutes, with all his heart and with all his being, to do the words of the covenant that were written on this scroll.

UST

³¹ Then the king stood next to the pillar at the entrance to the temple, where kings stood when they announced something important, and while Yahweh was listening, he repeated his promise to sincerely obey, with his entire inner being, Yahweh and all his commands and regulations and decrees that were written on the scroll.

- Yahweh
- cut off, cut down
- king, kingship
- statute

2 Chronicles 34:32

all who were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “all who lived in Jerusalem and Benjamin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

stand by the covenant

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “accept the terms of the covenant” or “promise to obey the covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and Benjamin](#)
- [God](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

³² And he made stand each one found [in Jerusalem and Benjamin](#). And the inhabitants of [Jerusalem](#) acted according to the covenant of [God, the God of their fathers](#).

UST

³² Then the king said that everyone who lived in Jerusalem and from the tribe of Benjamin should promise that they also would obey those laws. And they did that, agreeing that they would obey the agreement that God, whom their ancestors had worshiped, had made with them.

2 Chronicles 34:33

Josiah took away all

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do this. Alternate translation: "Josiah commanded his workers to take away all" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the disgusting things

These are the idols that were repulsive to God. Alternate translation: "the disgusting idols" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

For all of his days

Josiah's life is represented by his "days." Alternate translation: "For all of his life" or "As long as Josiah was alive" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [the abominations](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the lands](#)
- [belonged to the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)
- [the God of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

³³ And [Josiah](#) took away all [the abominations](#) from all [the lands](#) that [belonged to the sons of Israel](#). And he caused to serve each one found [in Israel](#), to serve [Yahweh, their God](#). All his days, they did not turn away from after [Yahweh, the God of their fathers](#).
34:21 ^[1], some versions have, .
34:25 ^[2], some versions have, .

UST

³³ Josiah instructed his workers to remove all the disgusting idols from all the land of the Israelite people, and he commanded that all those from Israel who were there should worship only Yahweh their God. As long as Josiah was alive, the people did what was pleasing to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

2 Chronicles 35

2 Chronicles 35 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of King Josiah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Passover

Josiah organized a large Passover celebration and people shared their animals with those without animals to sacrifice. The celebration of Passover was a sign of proper worship by the people. (See: [Passover](#) and [sign, proof, reminder](#))

2 Chronicles 35:1

Josiah kept a Passover to Yahweh

Josiah commanded the people to celebrate the Passover that Yahweh had commanded their ancestors to celebrate.

in Jerusalem

Yahweh had commanded Moses that all the people of Israel were to go to Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover.

the fourteenth day of the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [And they slaughtered](#)
- [the Passover](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

ULT

¹ And [Josiah](#) did a Passover [in Jerusalem to Yahweh](#). And they slaughtered the [Passover](#) on the 14th of the first month.

UST

¹ Josiah commanded that the people should celebrate the Passover Festival in Jerusalem. So they slaughtered the lambs for the Passover on the 14th day of the first month.

2 Chronicles 35:2

He placed the priests in their positions

Placing the priests in a position is a metaphor for telling the priests which jobs they are to do. The reader should probably understand that Josiah commanded his officials to give instructions to the priests. Alternate translation: "He had people tell the priests which jobs to do" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

in the service of

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **service**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "as they served in" or "to serve well in" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [for the service of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

² And he appointed [the priests](#) over their charges, and he strengthened them [for the service of the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

² Josiah assigned to the priests to the tasks that they should perform at the temple, and encouraged them do their work well.

2 Chronicles 35:3

that Solomon son of David, king of Israel built

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “that Solomon, king of Israel, commanded the people to build” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Levites
- who are teaching
- the king of
- a burden
- serve
- your God
- his people
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Holy
- the...Box
- in the house
- Solomon
- the son of
- David

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- Levi, Levite
- Solomon
- burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- teach, teaching, untaught

ULT

³ And he said to the Levites who are teaching all Israel, who are sacred to Yahweh, “Place the Holy Box in the house that Solomon, the son of David, the king of Israel built; not to you all a burden on your shoulder. Now serve Yahweh your God and his people Israel.

UST

³ The descendants of Levi were the ones who taught all the Israelite people; they had been set apart for Yahweh. Josiah said to them, “Put the sacred chest in the temple that the workers of David’s son King Solomon of Israel built. But carry it on poles; do not carry it on your shoulders. And do well your work for Yahweh your God and for his Israelite people.

2 Chronicles 35:4

by the name of your ancestral houses and your divisions

The word “name” is a collective noun, referring to each name of each ancestral house and each division. Your language may need to say “according to the names of your ancestral houses and your divisions.”

your ancestral houses

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Alternate translation: “the families that are descendants of your ancestors” (See: [Metonymy](#))

divisions

groups into which the people had divided the priests and Levites

the written instructions of David ... and those of Solomon, his son

Alternate translation: “the instructions that David ... and Solomon, his son, wrote”

ULT

⁴ And prepare [by the house of your fathers](#), according to your divisions, by the writing of [David, the king of Israel](#), and by the writing of [Solomon, his son](#).

UST

⁴ Divide yourselves into your traditional clans, obeying the instructions that King David and his son Solomon wrote.

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the house of](#)
- [your fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

2 Chronicles 35:5

Stand in the holy place, taking your position

Alternate translation: "Take your positions in the temple area"

your divisions

This refers to the work group to which the people had assigned each Levite. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

the ancestral houses

This refers to the various clans among the Levites. It seems that Levites were assigned to different work groups on the basis of the kind of work assigned to each clan or ancestral house. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the house of
- the fathers
- a father
- of your brothers
- the sons of
- the people
- of the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Levi, Levite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- house, household
- people, people group

ULT

⁵ And stand in the holy place, according to the division of [the house of the fathers of your brothers, the sons of the people](#), and the portion of [the house of a father of the Levites](#).

UST

⁵ Then stand in the temple area, with each of you in your own Levite clan, ready to help your fellow Israelites when they bring their offerings to the temple.

2 Chronicles 35:6

consecrate yourselves

This probably refers to the priests and Levites washing themselves before they did work in the temple.

to do according to the word of Yahweh that was given by the hand of Moses

Here the word "hand" refers to Moses himself. Yahweh used Moses as the agent to deliver his command. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "to obey all of the commands that Yahweh gave to the people through Moses" or "to do everything that Yahweh commanded Moses to tell the people" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And slaughter](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [and consecrate yourselves](#)
- [for your brothers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

ULT

⁶ [And slaughter the Passover, and consecrate yourselves](#), and prepare [for your brothers](#), to do according to the word of [Yahweh by the hand of Moses](#)."

UST

⁶ Slaughter the lambs for the Passover. Do this for your fellow Israelites. Perform the rituals to set yourselves apart for God's honor and to serve Yahweh and do his work. Prepare the sacrifices, doing what Yahweh told Moses to tell you that you should do."

2 Chronicles 35:7

General Information:

See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)

thirty thousand lambs

“30,000 lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

kids

baby goats

three thousand bulls

“3,000 bulls” (See: [Numbers](#))

these were from the king's possessions

Alternate translation: “all these lambs, kids, and bulls that he gave were ones that he himself owned”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [And...raised](#)
- [to the sons of](#)
- [and sons of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [a flock of](#)
- [lambs](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁷ And [Josiah](#) raised to the sons of the [people](#) a flock of lambs and sons of female goats, the entirety for the Passovers, for all who are found, for the number, 30,000. And oxen, 3,000. These were from the property of [the king](#).

UST

⁷ Josiah provided from his own flocks and herds thirty thousand young sheep and goats for the Passover sacrifices. He also provided three thousand bulls from his own herds.

2 Chronicles 35:8

2,600 small cattle

“two thousand six hundred small cattle” (See: [Numbers](#))

three hundred oxen

“300 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Hilkiah ... Zechariah ... Jehiel

These are all the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And his chiefs](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [to the priests](#)
- [to the priests](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [and Zechariah](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁸ [And his chiefs](#), for a free will offering [to the people, to the priests](#), and to the Levites, they raised. [Hilkiah, and Zechariah](#), and Jehiel, leaders in [the house of God, to the priests](#) they gave for the Passovers, 2,600, and oxen, 300.

UST

⁸ His officials also voluntarily contributed animals for the people and the priests and the other descendants of Levi. Hilkiah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the officials who were in charge of the temple, gave to the priests 2,600 lambs and three hundred cattle to be sacrifices for the Passover.

2 Chronicles 35:9

Konaniah ... Shemaiah ... Nethanel ... Hashabiah ... Jeiel ... Jozabad

These are all the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

five thousand small cattle

"5,000 small cattle" (See: [Numbers](#))

five hundred oxen

"500 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his brothers](#)
- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [to the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁹ And Konaniah, and Shemaiah and Nethanel, [his brothers](#), and Hashabiah, and Jeiel, and Jozabad, [the chiefs of the Levites](#), raised [to the Levites](#) for the Passovers, 5,000 and oxen, 300.

UST

⁹ Also, Konaniah, along with his younger brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the leaders of the descendants of Levi, provided five thousand lambs and five hundred cattle for the other descendants of Levi, to be sacrifices for the Passover.

2 Chronicles 35:10

the service was prepared

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they prepared everything they needed so they could perform the Passover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their divisions

the groups into which the people had divided the priests and Levites. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [and the Levites](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

10 And the service was prepared, and [the priests](#) stood at their places, [and the Levites](#) by their divisions, according to the commandment of [the king](#).

UST

10 Everything for the Passover was arranged: The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood in their places in their groups, as the king had commanded.

2 Chronicles 35:11

the blood that they received from the Levites' hand

Here the word "hand" refers to the Levites. Alternate translation: "the blood that the Levites gave them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they slaughtered](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [from their hand](#)
- [and the Levites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

ULT

¹¹ [And they slaughtered the Passover](#), and [the priests](#) scattered [from their hand](#), and [the Levites](#) were skinning.

UST

¹¹ Then they slaughtered the Passover lambs. The priests sprinkled the blood from the bowls that were handed to them, while the other descendants of Levi removed the skins from the animals.

2 Chronicles 35:12

ancestral houses of the people

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Alternate translation: “the families that were the descendants of their ancestors” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the house of
- fathers
- for the sons of
- the people
- to Yahweh
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- people, people group

ULT

12 And they took away the burnt offering, in order to place them according to the divisions [of the house of fathers, for the sons of the people](#) to bring near [to Yahweh](#) according to what is written in the scroll of [Moses](#). And thus for the oxen.

UST

12 They set aside the animals to be completely burned on the altar, in order to give them to the various family groups to offer to Yahweh, obeying the instructions that were written in the laws God gave Moses. They did the same thing with the cattle.

2 Chronicles 35:13

General Information:

All instances of “they” and “themselves” refer to the Levites (2 Chronicles 35:10).

They roasted the Passover lambs with fire

Alternate translation: “They cooked the Passover lambs over fires”

they boiled them in pots, cauldrons, and pans

Alternate translation: “they cooked them in water in containers of different sizes”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Passover
- in fire
- according to the judgment
- the sons of
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Passover
- son
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- people, people group

ULT

¹³ And they cooked the Passover in fire according to the judgment. And the consecrated things they cooked in pots, and in kettles, and in pans, and they brought to all the sons of the people.

UST

¹³ Obeying those regulations, they roasted over the fire the lambs for the Passover. And they boiled the meat of the sacred offerings in pots and kettles and pans, and served the meat immediately to all the people who were there.

2 Chronicles 35:14

They ... prepared offerings for themselves and for the priests

Alternate translation: "They ... prepared the offerings that they would eat and the offerings that the priests would eat"

Translation Words - ULT

- and for the priests
- the priests
- and for the priests
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Aaron
- Aaron
- and the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- son
- son
- Aaron
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite

ULT

¹⁴ And after they prepared for themselves and for the priests, because the priests, the sons of Aaron, were offering the burnt offering and the fat portions until night, and the Levites prepared for themselves and for the priests, the sons of Aaron.

UST

¹⁴ After that, they prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, because the priests were busy until nighttime, sacrificing the offerings to be completely burned and burning the fat parts of the offerings. So the descendants of Levi prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, the first high priest.

2 Chronicles 35:15

as directed by David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "as David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer had directed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Heman ... Jeduthun

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Asaph
- and Asaph
- David
- the king
- and the gatekeepers
- and gate
- their brothers
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Asaph
- Asaph
- David
- Levi, Levite
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁵ And the singers, [the sons of Asaph](#), in their place, according to the commandment of [David, and Asaph](#), and Heman, and Jeduthun, the seer of [the king, and the gatekeepers](#) for gate and gate. It was not for them to turn aside from their place because [their brothers, the Levites](#), prepared for them.

UST

¹⁵ The musicians, who were descendants of Asaph, stood in their places, as had been commanded by King David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's prophet. The men who guarded the gates of the temple did not need to leave their places, because their fellow descendants of Levi prepared food for them to eat.

2 Chronicles 35:16

the entire service of Yahweh was carried out

This refers to everything associated with the preparation, the sacrifice, and the worship of Yahweh during the Passover. The word "service" can be expressed as a verb and If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they did everything that needed to be done to serve Yahweh" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Passover
- burnt offerings
- the altar of
- King
- Josiah

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Passover
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Josiah
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- king, kingship

ULT

16 And all the service of [Yahweh](#) was prepared on that day to do [the Passover](#) and to offer [burnt offerings](#) on [the altar of Yahweh](#), according to the commandment of [King Josiah](#).

UST

16 So on that day everything that needed to be done for worshiping Yahweh was done. They celebrated the Passover Festival, and they presented offerings to be completely burned on the altar, which was what Josiah had commanded.

2 Chronicles 35:17

kept the Passover

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “observed the Passover” or “celebrated the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

then the Festival of Unleavened Bread

This refers to celebrating the festival. Alternate translation: “then kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread” or “then celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [the Feast of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [son](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

17 And [the sons of Israel](#) who were found did [the Passover](#) at that time and [the Feast of](#) Unleavened Bread seven days.

UST

17 The Israelites who were there celebrated the Passover on that day, and for seven days they celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread.

2 Chronicles 35:18

Such a Passover celebration had never been held in Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There had never been such a Passover celebration in Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

held in Israel

This refers specifically to the nation of Israel as a whole, as it was before the northern kingdom and southern king split.

from the days

Alternate translation: "from the time"

the other kings of Israel

Here "Israel" refers specifically to the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- Israel
- Samuel
- the prophet
- the kings of
- Josiah
- and the priests
- and the Levites
- Judah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- Josiah
- Judea, Judah
- Levi, Levite
- Samuel
- king, kingship

ULT

¹⁸ And a Passover was not done like it in Israel since the days of Samuel the prophet, and all the kings of Israel did not do like the Passover that Josiah did, and the priests and the Levites and all Judah and Israel who were found and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁸ The Passover Festival had not been celebrated like that in Israel since the time that the prophet Samuel lived. And none of the kings of Israel had ever celebrated the Passover like Josiah did, along with the priests, the other descendants of Levi, and all the other people of Judah and Israel who were there with the people who lived in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 35:19

This Passover was kept

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They observed this Passover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was kept

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “was observed” or “was celebrated” (See: [Idiom](#))

the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the reign of](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [Passover](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹⁹ In the 18th year [of the reign of Josiah](#), this [Passover](#) was done.

UST

¹⁹ They celebrated this Passover Festival when Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years.

2 Chronicles 35:20

set the temple in order

This means that he restored the worship in the temple as God had intended it to be. Alternate translation: “restored proper worship to the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Necho, king of Egypt, went up

This is the name of the king of Egypt. Here the king represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: “Necho, king of Egypt, went up with his army” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

against Carchemish

This is the name of a city. Here the city represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “against the people of Carchemish” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Josiah went to fight against him

Here both Josiah and Necho represent themselves accompanied by their armies. Alternate translation: “Josiah and his army went to fight against Necho and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Josiah
- Josiah
- the house
- the king of
- Egypt
- the Euphrates
- And...went out

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- Josiah
- Josiah
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁰ After all this, when Josiah prepared the house, Necho, the king of Egypt, went up to fight against Carchemish near the Euphrates. And Josiah went out to meet him.

UST

²⁰ After Josiah had done all those things to restore the worship at the temple, King Necho of Egypt went with his army to attack the city of Carchemish alongside the Euphrates River, and Josiah marched with his army to fight against them.

2 Chronicles 35:21

What have I to do with you, king of Judah?

Necho uses this rhetorical question to tell Josiah that he is not in conflict with him and that Josiah should not attack him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have no reason to attack me, king of Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I am not coming against you

Here the king Josiah represents his kingdom. Alternate translation: "I am not fighting your kingdom" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

against the house with which

Here the word "house" refers to the house of Babylon, where "house" is a metonym for the kingdom. The kingdom is a synecdoche representing the Babylonian army. Alternate translation: "against the house of Babylon, with whom" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [messengers](#)
- [King of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [And God](#)
- [from God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [messenger](#)

ULT

21 And he sent to him [messengers](#), saying, "What to me and to you, [King of Judah](#)? Not against you yourself today, but against [the house of](#) my battle. [And God](#) said for me to hurry. Stop yourself [from God](#), who is with me, and let him not destroy you."

UST

21 Necho sent some messengers to Josiah, to tell him, "You are the king of Judah, and there is certainly no reason for you to fight me; we are attacking the army of Babylonia. God has told me to hurry. So stop opposing God, who is for me. If you do not stop, God will get rid of you."

2 Chronicles 35:22

He disguised himself

Josiah disguised himself so that the other armies would not recognize him.

fight with him

The word “him” refers to Necho who represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: “fight with the army of Egypt” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that had come from the mouth of God

Here God is represented by his “mouth” to emphasize his speech. Alternate translation: “that had come from God” or “that God had said to him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

so he went

The word “he” refers to Josiah who represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: “so he and his army went” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the Valley of Megiddo

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [his face](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

²² But [Josiah](#) did not turn [his face](#) from him, but, in order to fight with him, he disguised himself. And he did not listen to the words of Necho, the mouth of [God](#). And he came to fight on the plain of Megiddo.

UST

²² But Josiah would not listen to him. Instead, he disguised himself in order to be able to attack the army of Egypt without anyone recognizing him. He did not pay any attention to what God had told Necho to say. Instead, he and his army went to fight Necho's army at the plain of Megiddo.

2 Chronicles 35:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- the king
- Josiah
- to his servants

Translation Words - UST

- Josiah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²³ And the archers shot King Josiah, and the king said to his servants, "Cause me to pass over for I am badly wounded."

UST

²³ Some archers shot King Josiah. He told his officers, "Take me away from here because I am badly wounded."

2 Chronicles 35:24

All Judah and Jerusalem

“Judah” and “Jerusalem” represent the people who live there.
Alternate translation: “All the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- And...carried him away
- and they made him ride
- to Jerusalem
- and Jerusalem
- And he died
- his fathers
- Judah
- were mourning
- Josiah

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Josiah
- Judea, Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²⁴ And [his servants](#) carried him away from the chariot, [and they made him ride](#) on the second chariot which belonged to him. And they brought him [to Jerusalem](#). [And he died](#), and he was buried in the graves of [his fathers](#). And all [Judah and Jerusalem](#) were mourning on account of [Josiah](#).

UST

²⁴ So they took him out of his chariot and put him in another chariot that he had brought with him, and they took him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs where his ancestors had been buried, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah mourned for him.

2 Chronicles 35:25

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

behold, they

This could mean: (1) “this is where they are: they” or (2) “they still exist: they.”

the songs of lament

This was an ancient scroll of funeral songs.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [Josiah](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [Jeremiah](#) sang a dirge for [Josiah](#), and all the male singers and the female singers said in their dirges about [Josiah](#) until today. And they placed for a statute over [Israel](#); and behold, they are written in the Laments.

UST

²⁵ The prophet Jeremiah composed a song to lament for Josiah, and all the men and women singers in Israel still mourn for Josiah by singing that song. That became a custom in Israel; the words of that song are written in a scroll of funeral songs.

2 Chronicles 35:26

his good deeds done

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the good deeds that he did” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

what is written

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the words” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [and his covenant faithfulnesses](#)
- [in the law of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Josiah](#)

ULT

26 And the remainder of the matters of [Josiah and his covenant faithfulnesses](#) as is written [in the law of Yahweh](#)—

UST

26-27 A record of the other things that happened while Josiah ruled, from the time he started to rule until he died, including how he faithfully was devoted to honoring God by obeying all that was written in the laws of Yahweh, is written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

2 Chronicles 35:27

and his deeds ... are written in the book

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “and men have written of all his deeds ... in the book” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his deeds, from beginning to end,

This refers to all of the significant things that he did from the beginning of his reign as king to the end of his life. Alternate translation: “all of his deeds” or “everything he did from the beginning of his reign to when he died” (See: [Merism](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁷ and his matters, the first things and the last things, behold, they are written in the scroll of [the kings of Israel and Judah](#).

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ A record of the other things that happened while Josiah ruled, from the time he started to rule until he died, including how he faithfully was devoted to honoring God by obeying all that was written in the laws of Yahweh, is written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

2 Chronicles 36

2 Chronicles 36 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Judah as an independent country.

Special concepts in this chapter

Punishment

God warned the people through the prophets, that he would punish them if they did not worship Yahweh. The people refused to listen to the prophets or to stop their evil deeds. God finally punished them by letting the Babylonians conquer them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

2 Chronicles 36:1

Jehoahaz

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in his father's place

The phrase "in his ... place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "instead of his father" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the land
- the son of
- Josiah
- and they made him king
- his father
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem
- Josiah
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group
- reign, rule

ULT

¹ And the people of the land took Jehoahaz, the son of Josiah, and they made him king in the place of his father in Jerusalem.

UST

¹ Then the people of Judah chose Josiah's son Jehoahaz and appointed him to be the king in Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 36:2

twenty-three years old ... three months

"23 years old...3 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

² [A son of](#) 23 years was Joahaz ^[1] when he became king. And three months he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

² Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became the king, but he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months.

2 Chronicles 36:3

The king of Egypt removed him at Jerusalem

The idiom “removed him at Jerusalem” means that he caused him no longer to be king in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The king of Egypt removed him from being king in Jerusalem” (See: [Idiom](#))

fined the land

Here the word “land” represents the people who lived there. Alternate translation: “fined the people of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold

You may convert this to a modern measure. A talent was about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver and thirty-three kilograms of gold” or “about 3,300 kilograms of silver and 33 kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

³ And [the king of Egypt](#) removed him [at Jerusalem](#), and he imposed a fine [on the land](#), 100 talents of [silver](#) and a talent of [gold](#).

UST

³ The king of Egypt captured him and prevented him from ruling any longer. He also forced the people of Judah to pay to him a tax of three and one-third metric tons of silver and thirty-three kilograms of gold.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [at Jerusalem](#)
- [on the land](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)

2 Chronicles 36:4

Eliakim ... Jehoahaz

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Egypt
- to Egypt
- And...made...king
- Eliakim
- his brother
- his brother
- Judah
- and Jerusalem
- his name
- Jehoiakim

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Eliakim
- Jehoiakim
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴ And the king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem. And he turned his name to Jehoiakim. And Joahaz his brother Necho took, and he brought him to Egypt.

UST

⁴ The king of Egypt appointed Jehoahaz's younger brother Eliakim to be the king of Judah. He changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. But Necho seized Jehoahaz and took him to Egypt.

2 Chronicles 36:5

twenty-five years old ... eleven years

“25 years old...11 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God

Here “sight” represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Jehoiakim’s actions. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Jehoiakim](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁵ [A son of](#) 25 years [was Jehoiakim](#) when he became king, and 11 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh his God](#).

UST

⁵ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for eleven years. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil.

2 Chronicles 36:6

attacked him

The word “him” refers to Jehoiakim. Jehoiakim represents either Jerusalem or the nation of Judah. Alternate translation: “attacked Jerusalem” or “attacked Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [to Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁶ Against him [Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon](#), came up, and he bound him with bronze to bring him [to Babylon](#).

UST

⁶ Then the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon attacked Jehoiakim's army. They captured Jehoiakim, fastened him with bronze chains, and took him to Babylon.

2 Chronicles 36:7

Nebuchadnezzar also carried

Since Nebuchadnezzar was king, he may have had his soldiers do this. Alternate translation: “Nebuchadnezzar also had his soldiers carry” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [to Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁷ and some of the items of [the house of Yahweh Nebuchadnezzar](#) brought to [Babylon](#), and he placed them in his temple at Babylon.

UST

⁷ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers also took valuable things from the temple. They took them to Babylon and put them in King Nebuchadnezzar's palace there.

2 Chronicles 36:8

the disgusting things that he did

This usually refers to worshiping false gods, which Yahweh hated.

what was found against him

This idiom refers to things that he did for which people could accuse him of wrong. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “what people found against him” or “things that he did for which people could accuse him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

behold, they are written

Alternate translation: “anyone can look in the book ... Israel and see they are written there”

they are written in the book

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone has written them in the book” or “you can read of them in the book” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:27](#).

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Jehoiakim” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiakim
- the kings of
- Israel
- and Judah
- his son
- And...became king

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Jehoiakim
- Judah
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

⁸ And the remainder of the matters of [Jehoiakim](#), and the abominations that he did, and what was found against him, behold, they are written on the scroll of [the kings of Israel and Judah](#). And Jehoiachin, [his son](#), [became king](#) in his place.

UST

⁸ A record of the other things that happened while Jehoiakim was ruling, the disgusting things that he did and the evil things that people said that he did, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. After he was taken to Babylon, his son Jehoiachin became the king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 36:9

eight years old ... three months and ten days

"8 years old...3 months and 10 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here "sight" here represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Jehoiachin's actions. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh judged to be evil" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁹ [A son of](#) eight years was Jehoiachin when he became king; and three months and ten days he reigned [in Jerusalem](#). And he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁹ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months and ten days. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil.

2 Chronicles 36:10

brought him to Babylon

Alternate translation: "brought Jehoiachin to Babylon"

the house of Yahweh

Here "house" represents the temple. Alternate translation: "the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his relative

Alternate translation: "Jehoiachin's relative"

Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [and Jerusalem](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And he made...king](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And in the return of the year, [King Nebuchadnezzar](#) sent and he brought him [to Babylon](#), with the desirable items of [the house of Yahweh](#) And he made [Zedekiah, his brother, king over Judah and Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹⁰ During the spring of the next year, King Nebuchadnezzar sent soldiers to bring him to Babylon. They also took to Babylon many valuable things from the temple of Yahweh. Then Nebuchadnezzar appointed Jehoiachin's uncle, Zedekiah, to be the king of Judah.

2 Chronicles 36:11

twenty-one years old ... eleven years

"21 years old...11 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [A son of](#)
- [was Zedekiah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

ULT

¹¹ [A son of](#) 21 years [was Zedekiah](#) when he became king; and 11 years he reigned [in Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eleven years.

2 Chronicles 36:12

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God

Here “sight” represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Zedekiah's actions. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh his God judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh his God considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh

Here the word “mouth” represents the words that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: “who spoke the words that Yahweh spoke to him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [the prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹² And he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh his God](#); he did not humble himself from before [Jeremiah the prophet](#) from the mouth of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did not humble himself when the prophet Jeremiah spoke to him a message from Yahweh to warn him.

2 Chronicles 36:13

Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to Yahweh

The phrases “stiffened his neck” and “hardened his heart” are both metaphors that mean to become stubborn. Zedekiah refusing to worship Yahweh is spoken of as if he refused to turn to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Zedekiah stubbornly refused to worship Yahweh” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [against King](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [had made him swear](#)
- [by God](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [he rebelled](#)
- [and he hardened](#)
- [his heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)
- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)

ULT

¹³ And also [against King Nebuchadnezzar](#), who [had made him swear by God](#), [he rebelled](#). And he stiffened his neck, [and he hardened his heart](#) from turning to [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#).

UST

¹³ He would not return to Yahweh, the God that the people of Israel said that they worshiped. Zedekiah also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had forced him to solemnly promise using God's name to be loyal to him. Zedekiah became very stubborn.

2 Chronicles 36:14

they followed the disgusting practices of the nations

The idiom “followed the ... practices” means to do those things.
Alternate translation: “they did the disgusting things that the nations did” (See: [Idiom](#))

disgusting practices

This phrase refers to worshiping other gods.

They polluted the house of Yahweh

A place that is unfit to be used for God’s purposes is spoken of as if it were physically dirty. The word “house” represents the temple.
Alternate translation: “They polluted the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the chiefs of](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [and the people](#)
- [unfaithfulness](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he had consecrated](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [nation](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Also, all [the chiefs of the priests and the people](#) multiplied doing acts of [unfaithfulness](#) like all the abominations of [the nations](#). And they defiled [the house of Yahweh](#) which [he had consecrated in Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹⁴ Furthermore, all the leaders of the priests and also the people of Judah became more wicked again, doing all the disgusting things that the people of the other nations did, and causing the temple in Jerusalem that Yahweh had caused to be holy to become an unacceptable place to worship him.

2 Chronicles 36:15

again and again

Alternate translation: "many times"

the place where he lives

This refers to the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- their fathers
- by the hand of
- his messengers
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- messenger
- people, people group

ULT

¹⁵ And Yahweh, the God of their fathers, sent to them by the hand of his messengers, rising early and sending, because he had compassion on his people and on his dwelling.

UST

¹⁵ Yahweh, the God whom the ancestors of the people of Judah worshiped, gave messages to his prophets many times, and the prophets gave those messages to the people of Judah. Yahweh did that because he pitied his people and did not want his temple to be destroyed.

2 Chronicles 36:16

the wrath of Yahweh arose against his people

Here the word “arose” refers to beginning an action. Yahweh punishing his people in his anger is spoken of as if his wrath were a person who acted against them. Alternate translation: “in his wrath, Yahweh began to punish his people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there was no help for it

This idiom means that nobody could do anything to prevent what happened. Alternate translation: “there was no way to avoid it” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the wrath of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [against his people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

16 But they were deriding the messengers of [God](#), and despising his words, and mocking his prophets, until [the wrath of Yahweh](#) went up [against his people](#), until there was no healing.

UST

16 But the people continually made fun of God’s messengers. They despised God’s messages. They ridiculed his prophets, until finally God became extremely angry with his people, with the result that nothing could stop him from destroying Judah.

2 Chronicles 36:17

God brought on them the king of the Chaldeans, who

The idiom “brought on them” means to cause to attack with his army. Alternate translation: “God caused the king of the Chaldeans to attack them, and he” (See: [Idiom](#))

who killed their young men with the sword

The king probably did not personally kill their young men. Rather, his army killed them. Alternate translation: “whose army killed their young men with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God gave them all into his hand

Here “hand” is a metonym for the power to defeat them. Alternate translation: “God allowed the Chaldean army to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the Chaldeans
- with the sword
- in the house of
- their holy place
- old
- into his hand

Translation Words - UST

- sanctuary
- temple, house, house of God
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- elder, older, old
- hand
- king, kingship
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

¹⁷ And he brought up against them the king of the Chaldeans, and he killed their young men with the sword in the house of their holy place, and he did not spare a young man or a virgin, old or aged. All he gave into his hand.

UST

¹⁷ He incited the king of Babylonia to attack Judah with his army. They killed the young men with their swords, even in the temple. They did not spare anyone, either young men or young women or old people. God enabled the army of Nebuchadnezzar to defeat all of them.

2 Chronicles 36:18

the house of God ... the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. Alternate translation: “the temple of God ... the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the house of
- God
- Yahweh
- the king
- and his chiefs
- to Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

18 All the items of [the house of God](#), great things and small things, and the treasures of [the house of Yahweh](#), and the treasures of [the king and his chiefs](#) —the entirety he brought [to Babylon](#).

UST

18 His soldiers took to Babylon all the things that were used in God’s temple, big things and little things, all the valuable things, and the valuable things that belonged to the king and his officials.

2 Chronicles 36:19

They burned down

“They” refers to the Babylonian soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- God
- Jerusalem
- with fire

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Jerusalem
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house, household

ULT

¹⁹ And they burned the house of God, and they tore down the wall of Jerusalem; and all of its palaces they burned with fire, and all the precious objects, destroyed.

UST

¹⁹ They burned the temple, and they broke down the wall surrounding Jerusalem. They burned all the palaces in Jerusalem and destroyed all the remaining valuable things there.

2 Chronicles 36:20

The king carried away to Babylon

Here “the king” refers to his soldiers whom he ordered to do the work. The phrase “carried away” is an idiom that means to forcefully bring them to Babylon. Alternate translation: “The king had his army forcefully take to Babylon” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

until the rule of the kingdom of Persia

Alternate translation: “until the kingdom of Persia came to power”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [servants](#)
- [the kingdom of](#)
- [Persia](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁰ And the remaining from the sword he led into exile to [Babylon](#), and they became to him [and to his sons servants](#) until the reign of [the kingdom of Persia](#)

UST

²⁰ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon the remaining people who had not been killed with their swords, Those people became the king's slaves and his son's slaves, until the army of Persia conquered Babylonia.

2 Chronicles 36:21

the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah

Here the noun “word” can be translated with the verb “spoke.” The word “mouth” represents Jeremiah. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh spoke through Jeremiah” or “the word from Yahweh that Jeremiah spoke” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

until the land should have enjoyed its Sabbath rests

The people were supposed to obey the Sabbath law by not farming the land every seventh year. This phrase speaks about this as if the land were a person that would obey the Sabbath law and rest. Alternate translation: “until the land had rested according to the Sabbath law” or “until, as required by the Sabbath law, no one had farmed the land” (See: [Personification](#))

It observed its Sabbath for as long as it lay abandoned

The word “it” refers to the land. The land is spoken of as if it were a person who observed the Sabbath. Alternate translation: “The requirements of the Sabbath law were fulfilled as long as the land lay abandoned” (See: [Personification](#))

in order to pass seventy years in this way

“so that 70 years passed while the land lay abandoned” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [the land](#)
- [its Sabbaths](#)
- [its being desolate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sabbath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

²¹ to fulfill the word of [Yahweh](#) by the mouth of [Jeremiah](#), until [the land](#) restored [its Sabbaths](#). All the days of [its being desolate](#), it kept to fulfill 70 years.

UST

²¹ Moses had said that every seventh year the people must not plant their fields; they must allow the soil to rest. But the people had not done that. So after the army of Babylonia destroyed Judah, the soil was allowed to rest. That continued for seventy years, fulfilling what Yahweh had told Jeremiah would happen.

2 Chronicles 36:22

in the first year

This refers to the beginning of the reign of King Cyrus. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

so that the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah might be carried out

Here the noun “word” can be translated with the verb “spoke.” The word “mouth” represents Jeremiah. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that what Yahweh spoke through Jeremiah might happen” or “so that the word from Yahweh that Jeremiah spoke might happen” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh motivated the spirit of Cyrus, king of Persia

Motivating the spirit is a synecdoche for making someone want to act. Alternate translation: “Yahweh made Cyrus, king of Persia, want to act” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Cyrus
- Cyrus
- the king of
- the king of
- and he caused...to pass
- his kingdom
- Persia
- Persia (2)
- to complete
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jeremiah
- stirred up
- the spirit of

Translation Words - UST

- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- spirit, wind, breath
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Cyrus
- Cyrus
- Jeremiah
- Persia, Persians
- Persia, Persians (2)
- king, kingship

ULT

²² And in the first year of Cyrus, the king of Persia, to complete the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah. Yahweh stirred up the spirit of Cyrus, the king of Persia, and he caused voice to pass through all his kingdom, and also in writing, saying,

UST

²² During the first year that Cyrus was the king of Persia, in order that what Yahweh told Jeremiah would happen would occur, Yahweh motivated Cyrus to write this and proclaim it throughout his kingdom:

- king, kingship
- kingdom
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

2 Chronicles 36:23

all the kingdoms of the earth

This is an exaggeration, as there were kingdoms over which Cyrus did not rule. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

to build a house for him

Here the word “house” represents a temple. Alternate translation: “to build a temple for him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his people

Alternate translation: “Yahweh’s people”

Let him go up to the land

Alternate translation: “Let that person go up to the land of Judah”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Cyrus](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [a house](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [in Judah](#)
- [his people](#)
- [Persia](#)
- [the kingdoms of](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [his God](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [he...has charged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Cyrus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²³ “Thus says [Cyrus, the king of Persia](#): ‘All [the kingdoms of the earth](#) [Yahweh, the God of the heavens](#), has given to me. And [he](#) himself [has charged](#) me to build for him [a house in Jerusalem](#), which is [in Judah](#). Whoever is among you all from all [his people](#), may [Yahweh his God](#), be with him, and let him go up.’”

36:2 ^[1] Jehoahaz in 36:1.

UST

²³ “I, [Cyrus, the king of Persia](#), declare that [Yahweh, the God who rules in heaven](#), has enabled me to become the ruler of all the kingdoms of this world. And he has appointed me to command that my workers build a temple for him in [Jerusalem, which is in Judah](#). I am allowing any of his people among you to go to [Jerusalem](#). And I will pray that [Yahweh](#) will be with them.”

- kingdom
- people, people group



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 29

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:8; 1:10; 1:12; 1:16; 2:12; 2:13; 5:13; 6:24; 6:41; 7:3; 7:6; 9:8; 13:10; 13:14; 17:5; 17:10; 19:2; 19:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 20:3; 20:17; 20:21; 22:7; 24:24; 25:27; 28:13; 28:23; 29:8; 29:25; 30:7; 32:1; 32:22; 34:21; 35:2; 35:16)

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:1](#); [1:5](#); [1:9](#); [2:17](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:22](#); [5:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:4](#); [6:17](#); [6:22](#); [6:24](#); [6:33](#); [6:37](#); [6:40](#); [6:42](#); [7:15](#); [8:16](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:20](#); [10:15](#); [12:1](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [13:8](#); [13:18](#); [13:22](#); [14:13](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:7](#); [15:13](#); [15:15](#); [15:17](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [17:14](#); [18:10](#); [18:34](#); [19:2](#); [19:3](#); [19:10](#); [20:20](#); [20:22](#); [20:33](#); [20:34](#); [20:37](#); [22:7](#); [23:7](#); [23:14](#); [24:25](#); [25:22](#); [26:15](#); [26:22](#); [27:7](#); [28:5](#); [28:15](#); [28:26](#); [29:24](#); [29:28](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [29:36](#); [30:27](#); [31:2](#); [31:3](#); [31:5](#); [31:11](#); [31:16](#); [31:19](#); [32:24](#); [32:25](#); [32:31](#); [33:13](#); [33:18](#); [33:19](#); [34:9](#); [34:14](#); [34:16](#); [34:21](#); [34:24](#); [34:25](#); [34:28](#); [34:30](#); [34:31](#); [34:32](#); [35:6](#); [35:10](#); [35:15](#); [35:16](#); [35:18](#); [35:19](#); [35:26](#); [35:27](#); [36:8](#); [36:22](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:4](#); [5:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:16](#); [6:25](#); [6:32](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:16](#); [8:11](#); [8:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [10:16](#); [11:11](#); [12:2](#); [13:1](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:12](#); [13:20](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:9](#); [16:14](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [18:11](#); [18:18](#); [18:24](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [20:27](#); [20:32](#); [21:9](#); [21:16](#); [21:19](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [23:1](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:10](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:24](#); [26:4](#); [28:3](#); [28:9](#); [28:13](#); [28:23](#); [29:4](#); [29:6](#); [29:29](#); [29:34](#); [30:5](#); [30:16](#); [30:18](#); [30:20](#); [30:25](#); [31:15](#); [33:5](#); [33:6](#); [33:11](#); [34:13](#); [34:31](#); [34:33](#); [35:3](#); [35:20](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was 86 years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things,** so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:1](#); [22:1](#); [32:9](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

^[1] two and a half cubits
^[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [6:13](#); [25:23](#))

Biblical Money

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,¹ and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:8](#); [3:9](#); [36:3](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:10](#); [4:5](#); [27:5](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

█ [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:17](#); [8:18](#); [9:9](#); [9:13](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [25:6](#); [25:9](#); [27:5](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.
And whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:6](#); [32:5](#))

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

■ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

■ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Double Negatives](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:10](#); [7:22](#); [8:8](#); [9:8](#); [30:18](#); [30:22](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-parts-of-speech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέεν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰώτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:16](#); [9:2](#); [23:19](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**
We are perishing!"

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:19](#); [6:29](#); [6:32](#); [6:35](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [6:39](#); [7:10](#); [7:19](#); [15:12](#); [20:6](#); [20:23](#); [20:24](#); [24:15](#); [32:18](#); [33:13](#); [34:31](#); [36:13](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:2](#); [2:18](#); [7:6](#); [12:1](#); [14:7](#); [16:5](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#); [18:14](#); [20:22](#); [26:17](#); [31:16](#); [31:17](#); [35:17](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:31](#); [12:16](#); [14:1](#); [14:13](#); [16:13](#); [18:19](#); [21:1](#); [25:19](#); [26:2](#); [26:23](#); [27:9](#); [28:27](#); [32:33](#); [33:20](#); [34:28](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, ‘**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:7](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with **us**—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:14](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:15](#); [6:1](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [19:11](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**
the one who touches her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
- (4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 31:1](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
(Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:13](#); [32:1](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

(2) Use the names for months that people know.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:2](#); [5:3](#); [7:10](#); [15:10](#); [29:3](#); [29:17](#); [30:2](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [31:7](#); [35:1](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:5; 30:6](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:4; 1:5; 1:16; 2:3; 2:13; 3:1; 3:6; 3:17; 4:17; 5:12; 7:8; 8:2; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:17; 8:18; 9:10; 9:16; 9:20; 9:29; 10:2; 10:15; 10:18; 11:2; 11:6; 11:10; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 12:2; 12:3; 12:5; 12:13; 12:15; 12:16; 13:2; 13:4; 13:19; 14:9; 14:10; 15:1; 16:2; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 17:7; 17:8; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:17; 17:18; 18:7; 18:10; 18:12; 18:23; 18:25; 18:28; 19:2; 19:11; 20:1; 20:2; 20:10; 20:14; 20:16; 20:19; 20:20; 20:22; 20:26; 20:31; 20:34; 20:36; 20:37; 21:2; 21:10; 22:2; 22:5; 22:7; 22:11; 23:1; 23:14; 23:17; 24:1; 24:26; 25:1; 25:13; 25:17; 25:24; 25:27; 26:2; 26:6; 26:7; 26:11; 26:22; 27:1; 27:3; 28:3; 28:6; 28:7; 28:9; 28:12; 28:18; 28:20; 29:1; 29:12; 29:16; 30:14; 30:18; 31:12; 31:13; 31:14; 31:15; 32:9; 32:30; 33:6; 33:14; 33:20; 34:8; 34:9; 34:12; 34:14; 34:15; 34:20; 34:22; 35:7; 35:8; 35:9; 35:15; 35:20; 35:22; 36:1; 36:4)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:15; 4:18; 5:3; 5:6; 6:3; 7:4; 7:6; 7:8; 9:1; 9:23; 9:27; 9:28; 10:1; 10:3; 10:16; 12:3; 15:9; 15:15; 23:5; 23:8; 23:13; 23:17; 23:20; 23:21; 24:10; 25:12; 25:22; 26:1; 26:4; 28:4; 34:30; 36:23](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:34](#); [6:36](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [18:27](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

■ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

■ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

■ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

■ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

■ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:1; 5:13; 6:10; 6:15; 6:16; 6:25; 6:38; 7:9; 7:11; 7:14; 9:4; 9:24; 10:6; 10:15; 10:16; 11:1; 11:2; 11:14; 11:16; 11:20; 12:2; 12:7; 12:9; 12:13; 12:14; 13:3; 13:17; 13:21; Notes; 15:1; 15:5; 15:12; 15:15; 15:17; 16:3; 16:9; 16:11; 17:3; 18:3; 18:13; 18:18; 19:3; 19:6; 20:2; 20:3; 20:11; 20:14; 20:16; 20:17; 20:24; 20:27; 20:32; 21:1; 21:4; 21:6; 21:12; 21:18; 21:19; 22:3; 23:7; 24:2; 24:14; 24:15; 24:20; 25:2; 25:13; 25:17; 25:19; 25:21; 25:22; 25:27; 28:7; 28:12; 28:18; 29:9; 29:11; 29:12; 29:17; 29:35; 30:5; 30:12; 30:21; Notes; 31:13; 31:15; 32:4; 32:6; 32:23; 32:25; 33:20; 33:24; 33:25; 34:17; 34:24; 34:31; 34:32; 35:17; 35:19; 36:3; 36:8; 36:14; 36:16; 36:17; 36:20)

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-litotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:11](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:20](#); [7:8](#); [9:29](#); [12:15](#); [18:30](#); [19:4](#); [20:34](#); [25:26](#); [26:22](#); [28:26](#); [31:15](#); [34:30](#); [35:27](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#); [2 Chronicles 1:2](#); [5:2](#); [6:1](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:20](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:31](#); [6:36](#); [6:38](#); [6:41](#); [6:42](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [7:22](#); [8:13](#); [8:15](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:23](#); [Notes](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:14](#); [10:18](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:20](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [15:13](#); [16:3](#); [16:9](#); [17:10](#); [18:10](#); [18:12](#); [18:16](#); [18:19](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:8](#); [20:19](#); [20:32](#); [21:3](#); [21:6](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [21:15](#); [Notes](#); [22:4](#); [23:2](#); [23:19](#); [24:2](#); [24:18](#); [25:2](#); [25:5](#); [25:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [26:4](#); [26:5](#); [26:16](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [27:2](#); [27:6](#); [27:7](#); [27:9](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [28:11](#); [28:13](#); [28:19](#); [28:20](#); [28:24](#); [28:26](#); [28:27](#); [29:2](#); [29:5](#); [29:6](#); [29:8](#); [29:10](#); [29:15](#); [29:16](#); [30:4](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:9](#); [30:12](#); [30:19](#); [30:20](#); [30:27](#); [31:15](#); [31:21](#); [32:23](#); [32:25](#); [33:2](#); [33:6](#); [33:22](#); [34:2](#); [34:3](#); [34:5](#); [34:8](#); [34:21](#); [34:24](#); [34:25](#); [34:27](#); [34:28](#); [34:31](#); [35:2](#); [36:1](#); [36:5](#); [36:8](#); [36:9](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:16](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [5:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:20](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [6:34](#); [6:38](#); [6:40](#); [6:42](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [7:20](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:23](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:15](#); [10:16](#); [10:19](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:5](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [13:8](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#); [15:16](#); [15:18](#); [16:2](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:14](#); [17:5](#); [17:12](#); [18:2](#); [18:5](#); [18:11](#); [18:15](#); [18:16](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [19:3](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [20:33](#); [20:36](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:7](#); [21:13](#); [21:16](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [23:2](#); [23:18](#); [23:21](#); [24:13](#); [24:18](#); [25:5](#); [25:15](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [25:22](#); [25:24](#); [26:5](#); [26:9](#); [26:10](#); [26:13](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [27:3](#); [27:4](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [28:19](#); [28:24](#); [28:25](#); [29:3](#); [29:8](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:15](#); [29:16](#); [29:17](#); [29:20](#); [29:25](#); [29:31](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:16](#); [31:10](#); [31:13](#); [31:21](#); [32:2](#); [32:8](#); [32:11](#); [32:12](#); [32:14](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [32:20](#); [32:22](#); [32:25](#); [32:30](#); [32:31](#); [33:3](#); [33:4](#); [33:5](#); [33:7](#); [33:9](#); [33:11](#); [33:14](#); [33:15](#); [33:16](#); [33:19](#); [34:3](#); [34:4](#); [34:5](#); [34:7](#); [34:10](#); [34:21](#); [34:24](#); [34:27](#); [34:28](#); [34:31](#); [34:33](#); [35:2](#); [35:4](#); [35:12](#); [35:20](#); [35:21](#); [35:24](#); [36:3](#); [36:6](#); [36:7](#); [36:10](#); [36:12](#); [36:14](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:20](#); [36:23](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds.
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 19:2](#); [24:16](#); [31:15](#); [33:6](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:2; 1:6; 1:14; 1:17; 2:2; 2:10; 2:17; 2:18; 3:3; 3:8; 3:9; 3:15; 3:16; 4:5; 4:8; 4:13; 5:12; 7:5; 8:1; 8:18; 9:9; 9:13; 9:15; 9:16; 9:25; 10:5; 11:1; 11:21; 12:3; 12:13; 13:3; 13:17; 13:21; 14:8; 14:9; 15:11; 16:1; 16:12; 16:13; 17:11; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:17; 17:18; 18:5; 20:31; 22:2; 23:1; 23:14; 23:20; 24:1; 24:15; 25:1; 25:5; 25:6; 25:9; 25:11; 25:12; 25:23; 26:1; 26:3; 26:12; 26:13; 27:1; 27:5; 27:8; 28:1; 28:6; 28:8; 29:1; 29:32; 29:33; 30:24; 31:17; 33:21; 34:1; 35:7; 35:8; 35:9; 36:2; 36:3; 36:5; 36:9; 36:11; 36:21](#))

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
- (2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
- (3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:2](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:2](#); [5:3](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [10:12](#); [12:2](#); [13:1](#); [15:10](#); [15:19](#); [16:13](#); [17:7](#); [20:26](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [29:3](#); [29:17](#); [30:2](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [31:7](#); [34:3](#); [34:8](#); [34:22](#); [35:1](#); [35:19](#); [36:22](#))

Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and delivers the lesson in a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often use figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

Then he also told them a parable. "A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he? Would not both fall into a pit?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples From the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket but, rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

>

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the **lampstand**?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on **a high shelf?**"

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **sowed** in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the kingdom of God grows. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 25:18](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:37](#); [7:22](#); [10:4](#); [29:6](#); [30:27](#); [34:28](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:14](#); [12:12](#); [16:9](#); [29:10](#); [30:8](#); [36:21](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 21:8](#); [21:15](#); [24:19](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **"Are you insulting the high priest of God?"**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:10](#); [2:6](#); [6:18](#); [9:29](#); [10:16](#); [12:15](#); [13:5](#); [13:9](#); [16:8](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [18:23](#); [19:2](#); [20:6](#); [20:7](#); [20:12](#); [24:6](#); [24:20](#); [25:15](#); [25:16](#); [25:19](#); [25:26](#); [28:10](#); [32:4](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [32:15](#); [35:21](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:9](#); [18:16](#); [Notes](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:29](#); [6:32](#); [6:34](#); [6:38](#); [7:3](#); [7:21](#); [18:10](#); [20:18](#); [23:11](#); [23:13](#); [25:14](#); [34:19](#); [34:27](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:13; 4:11; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; 6:2; 6:18; 6:23; 6:33; 6:34; 6:38; 8:3; 8:4; 9:6; 12:7; 12:15; 13:2; 15:7; 15:17; 16:3; 16:4; 16:5; 16:8; 17:1; 17:6; 17:10; 18:3; 18:5; 18:28; 20:1; 20:6; 20:9; 20:12; 20:27; 21:11; 21:16; 22:5; 26:2; 26:6; 26:7; 27:5; 29:6; 29:31; 30:1; 30:10; 32:1; 32:2; 32:5; 33:9; 33:11; 34:4; 34:5; 34:10; 34:17; 34:24; 34:28; 34:33; 35:6; 35:11; 35:20; 35:21; 35:22; 36:21; 36:22)

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

■ "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:15](#); [2:8](#); [5:12](#); [9:17](#); [9:21](#); [12:3](#); [29:25](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 32

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

(**Go back to:** [2 Chronicles 13:9](#); [13:10](#); [26:18](#); [29:21](#); [31:19](#); [35:14](#))

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:3
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:2
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0029, G00070

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:20](#); [11:22](#); [12:16](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:15](#); [13:17](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [14:1](#); [29:1](#))

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 28:3](#); [33:2](#); [34:33](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:7](#); [30:6](#))

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Geshur, Amnon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:6
- 2 Samuel 15:2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0053

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:20](#); [11:21](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), descendant, Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:18](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:36](#); [19:6](#); [32:19](#))

Adonijah

Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king, so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0138

(**Go back to:** [2 Chronicles 17:8](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:24](#); [6:28](#); [6:34](#); [6:36](#); [20:27](#); [20:29](#); [25:8](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [20:21](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#); [30:2](#); [30:23](#); [32:3](#))

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baal, [Elijah](#), Jezebel, kingdom of Israel, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6
- 2 Kings 9:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:3 Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0256

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:1](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:19](#); [21:6](#); [21:13](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#))

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 27:9](#); [28:1](#); [28:16](#); [28:19](#); [28:21](#); [28:22](#); [28:24](#); [28:27](#); [29:19](#))

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), Joash)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0274

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:35](#); [20:37](#); [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#))

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), Shiloh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0281

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:29](#); [10:15](#))

alarm, alarmed

Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](#), [Moab](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 4:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:15](#))

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:32](#); [6:33](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [4:1](#); [4:19](#); [5:12](#); [6:12](#); [6:22](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [8:12](#); [14:3](#); [15:8](#); [23:10](#); [23:17](#); [26:16](#); [26:19](#); [28:24](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:24](#); [29:27](#); [30:14](#); [31:1](#); [32:12](#); [33:3](#); [33:4](#); [33:5](#); [33:15](#); [33:16](#); [34:4](#); [34:5](#); [34:7](#); [35:16](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:21](#); [36:21](#))

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Edom)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 4:34
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Kings 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0558

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:27](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:15](#); [25:17](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:27](#); [26:1](#); [26:4](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, [Jordan River](#), Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:8](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 8:7](#))

Amoz

Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the “son of Amoz.”
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Amos, [Isaiah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:2
- Isaiah 37:1-2
- Isaiah 37:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0531

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:22](#); [32:20](#); [32:32](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:2; 1:8; 1:9; 2:3; 2:7; 2:13; 2:14; 2:17; 3:1; 4:16; 5:1; 5:2; 6:4; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:15; 6:16; 6:25; 6:31; 6:38; 7:17; 7:18; 7:22; 8:14; 9:31; 10:4; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 10:11; 10:14; 11:16; 12:16; 13:12; 13:18; 14:1; 14:4; 15:12; 15:18; 16:3; 16:13; 17:2; 17:3; 17:4; 17:14; 19:4; 19:8; 20:6; 20:32; 20:33; 21:1; 21:3; 21:4; 21:10; 21:12; 21:13; 21:19; 22:4; 23:2; 24:18; 24:22; 24:24; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:28; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:12; 26:23; 27:2; 27:9; 28:1; 28:6; 28:9; 28:25; 28:27; 29:2; 29:5; 29:6; 29:9; 30:7; 30:19; 30:22; 31:17; 32:13; 32:14; 32:15; 32:33; 33:3; 33:8; 33:12; 33:20; 33:22; 33:23; 34:2; 34:3; 34:21; 34:28; 34:32; 34:33; 35:4; 35:5; 35:12; 35:24; 36:1; 36:15)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see [Symbolic Action](#).)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 28:15](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:13](#); [4:4](#); [5:12](#); [6:3](#); [6:11](#); [7:6](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [10:6](#); [12:10](#); [18:18](#); [18:34](#); [Notes](#); [19:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:13](#); [20:17](#); [20:20](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:18](#); [25:5](#); [33:7](#); [33:8](#); [33:14](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), [atonement](#), holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:4](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:41](#); [8:11](#); [24:8](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [35:3](#))

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:3
- Jeremiah 41:9
- Matthew 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0609

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [15:2](#); [15:8](#); [15:10](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [17:2](#); [20:32](#); [21:12](#))

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [harp](#), lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 2:8
- Psalm 50:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0623

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:12](#); [20:14](#); [29:13](#); [29:30](#); [35:15](#))

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ekron, Gath, Gaza, [Joppa](#), Philip, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 5:1-3
- Acts 8:40
- Amos 1:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 9:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0795, G01080

([Go back to: 2 Chronicles 26:6](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannian Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:11](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:3](#); [5:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [12:5](#); [20:5](#); [20:14](#); [20:26](#); [23:3](#); [28:14](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:32](#); [30:2](#); [30:3](#); [30:4](#); [30:13](#); [30:17](#); [30:23](#); [30:25](#); [31:18](#); [34:9](#); [34:28](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 28:16](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [30:6](#); [32:1](#); [32:4](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#); [32:21](#); [32:22](#); [33:11](#))

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Jehoram, Joash, [Omri](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Kings 11:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6271

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 22:2](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [23:12](#); [23:13](#); [23:21](#); [24:7](#))

atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 4:20
- Numbers 5:8
- Numbers 28:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:24](#))

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:17
- 2 Kings 9:9
- Jeremiah 41:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:31](#); [33:11](#); [36:6](#); [36:7](#); [36:10](#); [36:18](#); [36:20](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:28](#))

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Abraham](#), Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 19:4](#); [24:1](#); [30:5](#))

Benaiah

Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](#), [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:36
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:14](#); [31:13](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:10](#); [11:12](#); [11:23](#); [14:8](#); [15:2](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [17:17](#); [25:5](#); [31:1](#); [34:9](#); [34:32](#))

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), Canaan, [Jerusalem](#), Joshua, [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:9
- 1 Samuel 6:9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 1:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 25:21](#); [25:23](#); [28:18](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:19](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:12](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:13](#); [9:8](#); [20:26](#); [30:27](#); [31:8](#); [31:10](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 19:10](#); [29:24](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), redeem, Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 2 Chronicles 3:17
- Luke 3:30-32
- Matthew 1:5
- Ruth 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:17](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:14](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:17](#); [14:13](#); [18:19](#); [20:18](#); [25:19](#); [29:29](#); [29:30](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:19](#); [13:11](#); [18:26](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [4:1](#); [4:9](#); [4:16](#); [4:18](#); [6:13](#); [7:7](#); [12:10](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:12](#); [11:4](#); [11:22](#); [19:10](#); [21:2](#); [21:4](#); [21:13](#); [22:8](#); [28:8](#); [28:11](#); [28:15](#); [29:15](#); [29:34](#); [30:9](#); [31:12](#); [31:13](#); [31:15](#); [35:5](#); [35:6](#); [35:9](#); [35:15](#); [36:4](#); [36:10](#))

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:10](#); [10:14](#); [17:11](#); [20:25](#); [35:3](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:6](#); [2:4](#); [8:12](#); [13:11](#); [23:18](#); [24:14](#); [29:7](#); [29:31](#); [29:35](#); [30:15](#); [35:16](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:25](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:33](#); [7:14](#); [20:26](#); [34:24](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylon for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:36](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [25:12](#); [28:5](#); [28:11](#); [29:9](#); [30:9](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:3](#); [2:8](#))

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:17](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:17](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#))

chief, leader

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [head](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:2](#); [17:7](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [19:11](#); [21:4](#); [23:9](#); [24:6](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [25:5](#); [26:11](#); [26:20](#); [28:14](#); [31:10](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:14](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:4](#); [9:17](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [30:17](#); [Notes](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [23:13](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:10](#); [1:17](#); [7:13](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [9:28](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [15:2](#); [16:2](#); [18:20](#); [18:30](#); [18:33](#); [19:2](#); [19:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [20:20](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:14](#); [24:20](#); [24:21](#); [25:4](#); [26:6](#); [26:15](#); [28:9](#); [29:5](#); [29:16](#); [29:25](#); [30:12](#); [33:8](#); [34:12](#); [34:20](#); [34:31](#); [35:20](#); [36:23](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:24](#); [6:26](#); [7:3](#); [30:22](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:11](#); [7:20](#); [26:18](#); [29:5](#); [29:34](#); [30:3](#); [30:8](#); [30:17](#); [31:6](#); [31:18](#); [36:14](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 8:8](#); [8:16](#); [18:10](#); [29:17](#); [29:34](#); [31:7](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:17](#); [13:7](#); [13:18](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [24:13](#); [32:7](#); [36:13](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:9](#); [7:7](#); [20:5](#); [23:5](#); [24:21](#); [29:16](#); [33:5](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#); [2 Chronicles 5:2](#); [5:7](#); [6:11](#); [6:14](#); [13:5](#); [16:3](#); [21:7](#); [Notes](#); [23:3](#); [23:16](#); [29:10](#); [34:30](#); [34:31](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:14](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [20:21](#); [32:32](#); [35:26](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:3; 4:4; 13:9; 15:11; 29:21; 29:32; 29:33; 30:24; 31:6; 32:28](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:31](#); [20:9](#); [32:20](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:14](#); [26:14](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:16](#); [5:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#); [7:18](#); [15:16](#); [21:7](#); [22:7](#); [23:3](#); [23:16](#); [29:10](#); [34:31](#))

Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Daniel, Darius, Ezra, Nehemiah, [Persia](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:23
- Daniel 1:21
- Ezra 5:13
- Isaiah 44:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3566

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:22](#); [36:23](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:1; 1:4; 1:8; 1:9; 2:3; 2:7; 2:14; 2:17; 3:1; 5:1; 5:2; 6:4; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:15; 6:16; 6:42; 7:6; 7:17; 8:11; 8:14; 9:31; 10:16; 10:19; 11:17; 11:18; 12:16; 13:6; 13:8; 14:1; 16:14; 17:3; 21:1; 21:7; 21:12; 21:20; 23:3;](#)

23:9; 23:18; 24:16; 24:25; 27:9; 29:2; 29:25; 29:26; 29:27; 29:30; 30:26; 32:5; 32:30; 32:33; 33:7; 33:14; 34:2; 34:3; 35:3;
35:4; 35:15)

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:15](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), [decree](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:17](#); [10:3](#); [14:11](#); [18:8](#); [20:3](#); [24:6](#); [32:18](#); [34:18](#); [34:30](#))

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:21](#))

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:9](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:8](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:9](#); [20:24](#); [20:25](#); [32:22](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:3](#); [8:4](#); [24:9](#); [26:10](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), firstborn, [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:14](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: [consume](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:1](#); [18:26](#); [28:15](#); [30:18](#); [30:22](#); [31:10](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:18](#); [13:20](#); [16:13](#); [18:34](#); [21:13](#); [21:19](#); [22:1](#); [22:9](#); [22:11](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [24:15](#); [24:25](#); [25:27](#); [32:11](#); [32:24](#); [33:24](#); [35:24](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:18](#); [9:26](#); [20:6](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:9](#); [2:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:18](#); [6:27](#); [6:33](#); [6:36](#); [6:38](#); [7:3](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [8:6](#); [9:14](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:26](#); [9:28](#); [11:23](#); [12:8](#); [13:9](#); [14:1](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [15:5](#); [15:8](#); [16:9](#); [17:10](#); [19:3](#); [20:7](#); [20:18](#); [20:24](#); [20:29](#); [22:12](#); [23:13](#); [23:20](#); [23:21](#); [26:21](#); [32:4](#); [32:13](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [33:25](#); [34:7](#); [34:8](#); [34:33](#); [36:1](#); [36:3](#); [36:21](#); [36:23](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:16](#); [1:17](#); [5:10](#); [6:5](#); [7:8](#); [7:22](#); [9:26](#); [9:28](#); [10:2](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:9](#); [20:10](#); [26:8](#); [35:20](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:2](#); [5:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:13](#); [34:29](#); [36:17](#))

Eliakim

Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hezekiah, [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0471, G16620

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:4](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 21:12](#))

En Gedi

Definition:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means “fountain,” referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), fountain, [Judah](#), [rest](#), Salt Sea, Saul (OT), stronghold, vineyard)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:2
- Song of Songs 1:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5872

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:2](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:4](#); [15:8](#); [17:2](#); [19:4](#); [25:7](#); [25:23](#); [28:7](#); [28:12](#); [30:1](#); [30:10](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 35:20](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:14](#); [7:22](#); [18:22](#); [20:9](#); [20:35](#); [Notes](#); [21:6](#); [21:19](#); [Notes](#); [22:4](#); [25:19](#); [29:6](#); [33:2](#); [33:6](#); [33:9](#); [33:22](#); [34:24](#); [34:28](#); [Notes](#); [36:5](#); [36:9](#); [36:12](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:9](#); [17:11](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:32](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 35:7](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:4](#); [3:8](#); [3:13](#); [3:17](#); [4:13](#); [5:9](#); [6:3](#); [6:31](#); [6:42](#); [7:14](#); [7:20](#); [9:23](#); [13:14](#); [19:2](#); [19:7](#); [20:3](#); [20:16](#); [25:17](#); [25:21](#); [29:6](#); [30:9](#); [32:2](#); [32:21](#); [33:12](#); [34:4](#); [35:22](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:9](#); [6:17](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [12:2](#); [15:3](#); [18:15](#); [20:20](#); [26:18](#); [29:6](#); [30:7](#); [32:15](#); [36:14](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:28](#); [32:11](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:3](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), [marvel](#), power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:31](#); [14:14](#); [17:10](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [20:3](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:29](#); [32:7](#); [32:18](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:13](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [8:13](#); [30:13](#); [30:21](#); [35:17](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:3](#); [28:3](#); [33:6](#); [35:13](#); [36:19](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 31:5](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:8](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:6](#); [7:5](#); [14:15](#); [15:11](#); [17:11](#); [18:2](#); [29:33](#); [30:24](#); [31:6](#); [32:29](#); [35:7](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:22](#); [11:14](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#); [15:2](#); [21:10](#); [24:20](#); [24:24](#); [24:25](#); [32:31](#); [34:25](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:3](#))

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 7:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 31:14](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#); [24:10](#); [29:28](#); [31:1](#); [36:22](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:22](#); [6:28](#); [8:5](#); [8:14](#); [14:7](#); [18:9](#); [23:5](#); [23:15](#); [23:19](#); [23:20](#); [24:8](#); [25:23](#); [26:9](#); [27:3](#); [28:24](#); [29:3](#); [29:7](#); [31:2](#); [31:14](#); [32:6](#); [33:14](#); [35:15](#))

Gerar

Facts:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Beersheba](#), Hebron, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 14:13](#); [14:14](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:14](#); [7:2](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:1; 1:3; 1:4; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:11; 2:4; 2:5; 2:12; 3:3; 4:11; 4:19; 5:1; 5:14; 6:4; 6:7; 6:10; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:40; 6:41; 6:42; 7:5; 7:19; 7:22; 8:14; 9:8; 9:23; 10:15; 11:2; 11:16; 13:5; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:16; 13:18; 14:2; 14:4; 14:7; 14:11; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:6; 15:9; 15:12; 15:13; 15:18; 16:7; 17:4; 18:5; 18:13; 18:31; 19:3; 19:4; 19:7; 20:6; 20:7; 20:12; 20:15; 20:19; 20:20; 20:29; 20:30; 20:33; 21:10; 21:12; 22:12; 23:3; 23:9; 24:5; 24:7; 24:9; 24:13; 24:16; 24:18; 24:20; 24:24; 24:27; 25:7; 25:8; 25:9; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:20; 25:24; 26:5; 26:7; 26:16; 26:18; 27:6; 28:5; 28:6; 28:9; 28:10; 28:23; 28:24; 28:25; 29:5; 29:6; 29:7; 29:10; 29:36; 30:1; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:12; 30:16; 30:19; 30:22; 31:6; 31:13; 31:14; 31:20; 31:21; 32:8; 32:11; 32:13; 32:14; 32:15; 32:16; 32:17; 32:19; 32:21; 32:29; 32:31; 33:7; 33:12; 33:13; 33:15; 33:16; 33:17; 33:18; 34:3; 34:8; 34:9; 34:23; 34:25; 34:26; 34:27; 34:32; 34:33; 35:3; 35:8; 35:21; 35:22; 36:5; 36:12; 36:13; 36:15; 36:16; 36:18; 36:19; 36:23)

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:15](#); [2:7](#); [2:14](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:19](#); [4:20](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [5:1](#); [8:18](#); [9:1](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:24](#); [12:9](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [15:18](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [24:14](#); [25:24](#); [36:3](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:5](#); [3:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:27](#); [7:3](#); [10:7](#); [12:12](#); [14:2](#); [18:7](#); [18:12](#); [18:17](#); [19:3](#); [19:11](#); [21:13](#); [24:16](#); [30:18](#); [30:22](#); [31:20](#))

govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:14](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:19](#); [6:29](#); [6:35](#); [6:39](#); [30:9](#); [33:13](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:7](#); [9:24](#); [17:5](#); [17:11](#); [26:8](#); [32:23](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 31:5](#); [32:28](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:33](#); [34:28](#))

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:18](#); [28:10](#); [28:13](#); [33:23](#))

Hananiah

Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to “Shadrach.”
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once Hananiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Azariah, [Babylon](#), Daniel, false prophet, [Jeremiah](#), Mishaël)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 2:17-18
- Jeremiah 28:1
- Jeremiah 28:5-7
- Jeremiah 28:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2608

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:11](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:17; 6:4; 6:12; 6:13; 6:15; 6:29; 6:32; 7:6; 8:18; 9:18; 10:15; 12:5; 12:7; 12:10; 13:8; 13:9; 13:16; 15:7; 16:7; 16:8; 17:5; 17:15; 17:16; 17:18; 18:5; 18:11; 18:14; 18:33; 20:6; 21:8; 21:10; 21:16; 23:7; 23:10; 23:15; 23:18; 24:11; 24:13; 24:24; 25:15; 25:20; 26:11; 26:13; 26:19; 28:5; 28:9; 29:23; 29:25; 29:27; 29:31; 30:6; 30:8; 30:12; 30:16; 31:13; 31:15; 32:11; 32:13; 32:14; 32:15; 32:17; 32:19; 32:22; 33:8; 34:9; 34:10; 34:14; 34:16; 34:17; 34:25; 35:6; 35:11; 36:15; 36:17)

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:28](#); [29:25](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:2](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [4:12](#); [5:2](#); [5:9](#); [6:23](#); [13:12](#); [19:8](#); [20:27](#); [23:2](#); [25:12](#); [26:12](#); [28:12](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:11](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:14](#); [6:30](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [9:1](#); [9:23](#); [11:16](#); [12:14](#); [13:7](#); [15:12](#); [15:15](#); [15:17](#); [16:9](#); [17:6](#); [19:3](#); [20:33](#); [22:9](#); [24:4](#); [25:19](#); [26:16](#); [29:10](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [30:12](#); [30:19](#); [30:22](#); [31:21](#); [32:6](#); [32:25](#); [32:26](#); [34:27](#); [34:31](#); [36:13](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 2:6; 2:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:18; 6:21; 6:23; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:30; 6:33; 6:35; 6:39; 7:13; 7:14; 18:18; 20:6; 28:9; 30:27; 32:20; 33:3; 33:5; 36:23)

Hebrew

Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:18](#))

high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:27
- Acts 7:1
- Acts 9:1
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 3:2
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:7** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:1** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:3** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.

- **45:2** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:1** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G07480, G07490

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#))

Hilkiah

Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

- When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
- After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
- Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Eliakim](#), Hezekiah, [high priest](#), [Josiah](#), Judah, law, [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2518

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 34:9](#); [34:14](#); [34:15](#); [34:18](#); [34:20](#); [34:22](#); [35:8](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:17](#); [8:7](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 8:7](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:8](#); [3:10](#); [4:22](#); [5:1](#); [5:5](#); [5:7](#); [5:11](#); [8:11](#); [15:18](#); [20:21](#); [23:6](#); [24:7](#); [29:5](#); [30:19](#); [30:27](#); [31:6](#); [31:14](#); [31:18](#); [35:3](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 31:5](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), donkey, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:16](#); [1:17](#); [9:24](#); [9:25](#); [9:28](#); [23:15](#); [25:28](#); [35:24](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:14](#); [8:9](#))

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2 General Notes](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, [house of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:1; 2:3; 2:4; 2:6; 2:9; 2:12; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:15; 4:4; 4:16; 4:19; 4:22; 5:1; 5:7; 5:13; 5:14; 6:2; 6:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:18; 6:20; 6:29; 6:32; 6:33; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:5; 7:7; 7:11; 7:12; 7:16; 7:20; 8:1; 8:11; 8:16; 9:4; 9:11; 9:20; 10:16; 11:1; 11:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 15:18; 16:2; 16:10; 17:14; 18:16; 18:26; 19:1; 19:11; 20:9; 20:28; 21:6; 21:7; 21:13; 21:17; 22:3; 22:4; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 23:5; 23:6; 23:7; 23:9; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:15; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 24:4; 24:5; 24:7; 24:8; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:16; 24:18; 24:21; 24:27; 25:5;](#)

25:24; 26:21; 27:3; 28:7; 28:21; 28:24; 29:3; 29:5; 29:15; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:20; 29:25; 29:31; 29:35; 30:1; 30:15;
31:10; 31:13; 31:16; 31:17; 31:21; 32:21; 33:5; 33:15; 33:20; 34:6; 34:8; 34:9; 34:10; 34:11; 34:14; 34:30; 35:2; 35:4;
35:5; 35:8; 35:12; 35:20; 35:21; 36:7; 36:10; 36:14; 36:18; 36:19; 36:23)

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:5](#); [5:13](#); [6:34](#); [7:21](#); [9:3](#); [34:8](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:16](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), Christ, Hezekiah, [Jotham](#), Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:22](#); [32:20](#); [32:32](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:2; 1:13; 2:4; 2:12; 2:17; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:6; 5:10; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:21; 6:24; 6:25; 6:27; 6:29; 6:32; 6:33; 7:3; 7:6; 7:8; 7:18; 8:2; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:11; 9:8; 9:30; 10:1; 10:3; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 11:1; 11:3; 11:13; 11:16; 12:1; 12:6; 12:13; 13:4; 13:5; 13:12; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 15:3; 15:4; 15:9; 15:13; 15:17; 16:1; 16:3; 16:4; 17:1; 17:4; 18:3; 18:4; 18:5; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:25; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 18:33; 18:34; 19:8; 20:7; 20:10; 20:19; 20:29; 20:34; 20:35; 21:2; 21:4; 21:6; 21:13; 22:5; 23:2; 24:5; 24:6; 24:9; 24:16; 25:6; 25:7; 25:9; 25:17; 25:18; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25; 27:7; 28:2; 28:3; 28:5; 28:8; 28:13; 28:19; 28:23; 28:27; 29:7; 29:10; 29:24; 29:27; 30:1; 30:5; 30:6; 30:21; 30:25; 30:26; 31:1; 31:5; 31:6; 31:8; 32:17; 33:2; 33:7; 33:8; 33:9; 33:16; 33:18; 34:7; 34:9; 34:21; 34:23; 34:26; 34:33; 35:3; 35:4; 35:17; 35:18; 35:25; 35:27; 36:8; 36:13)

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:18](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:1; 8:7](#))

Jehoiada

Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Baal, [Benaiah](#), Joash)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 22:11](#); [23:1](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:11](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:6](#); [24:12](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [24:17](#); [24:20](#); [24:22](#); [24:25](#))

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1
- Daniel 1:2
- Jeremiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:4](#); [36:5](#); [36:8](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 17:1](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:9](#); [18:17](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [18:31](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:4](#); [19:8](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:15](#); [20:18](#); [20:20](#); [20:25](#); [20:27](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [20:34](#); [20:35](#); [20:37](#); [21:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:12](#); [22:9](#))

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), Baal, Elisha, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), Jezebel, Joram, Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 19:2](#); [20:34](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [25:17](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), [rebel](#), suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 35:25](#); [36:12](#); [36:21](#); [36:22](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 28:15](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:29](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:12](#); [10:15](#); [11:4](#); [11:14](#); [12:15](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:4; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 2:7; 2:16; 3:1; 5:2; 6:6; 8:6; 9:1; 9:25; 9:27; 9:30; 10:18; 11:1; 11:5; 11:16; 12:2; 12:4; 12:5; 12:7; 12:9; 12:13; 13:2; 14:15; 15:10; 17:13; 19:1; 19:4; 19:8; 20:5; 20:15; 20:17; 20:18; 20:20; 20:27; 20:28; 20:31; 21:5; 21:11; 21:13; 21:20; 22:1; 22:2; 23:2; 24:1; 24:9; 24:18; 24:23; 25:1; 25:23; 25:27; 26:3; 26:9; 26:15; 27:1; 27:8; 28:1; 28:10; 28:24; 28:27; 29:1; 29:8; 30:1; 30:2; 30:3; 30:5; 30:11; 30:13; 30:14; 30:21; 30:26; 31:4; 32:2; 32:9; 32:10; 32:18; 32:19; 32:22; 32:23; 32:25; 32:26; 32:33; 33:1; 33:4; 33:7; 33:9; 33:13; 33:15; 33:21; 34:1; 34:3; 34:5; 34:7; 34:9; 34:22; 34:29; 34:30; 34:32; 35:1; 35:18; 35:24; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:9; 36:10; 36:11; 36:14; 36:19; 36:23)

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:16](#); [11:18](#))

Joel

Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Judah, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- Acts 2:16
- Ezra 10:43
- Joel 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G24930

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:12](#))

Joppa

Facts:

In biblical times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa was located in the same place as the present-day city of Jaffa, which has now become incorporated into the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter raised her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: the sea, [Jerusalem](#), Sharon, [Tarshish](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 9:37
- Acts 10:8
- Acts 11:4-6
- Acts 11:11
- Jonah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3305, G24450

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:16](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:17](#))

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 33:25](#); [34:1](#); [34:33](#); [35:1](#); [35:7](#); [35:16](#); [35:18](#); [35:19](#); [35:20](#); [35:22](#); [35:23](#); [35:24](#); [35:25](#); [35:26](#); [36:1](#))

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:21](#); [26:23](#); [27:1](#); [27:6](#); [27:7](#); [27:9](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:41](#); [7:10](#); [15:15](#); [20:27](#); [23:13](#); [23:18](#); [23:21](#); [24:10](#); [29:30](#); [29:36](#); [30:21](#); [30:23](#); [30:25](#); [30:26](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:7](#); [11:3](#); [11:5](#); [11:10](#); [11:14](#); [12:4](#); [12:12](#); [13:15](#); [14:4](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [16:11](#); [17:6](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [20:22](#); [20:24](#); [21:3](#); [21:17](#); [23:2](#); [24:6](#); [24:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:19](#); [25:21](#); [26:2](#); [27:7](#); [28:6](#); [28:17](#); [28:18](#); [28:19](#); [28:25](#); [30:1](#); [30:6](#); [30:12](#); [30:25](#); [31:6](#); [32:1](#); [32:12](#); [33:14](#); [33:16](#); [35:27](#); [36:8](#); [36:23](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:11](#); [10:17](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:12](#); [11:17](#); [11:23](#); [12:5](#); [13:1](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:18](#); [14:5](#); [14:12](#); [15:2](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:15](#); [16:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [17:2](#); [17:5](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:13](#); [17:19](#); [18:3](#); [18:9](#); [18:28](#); [19:1](#); [19:5](#); [19:11](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [20:20](#); [20:27](#); [20:31](#); [20:35](#); [21:8](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [22:1](#); [22:6](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [23:2](#); [23:8](#); [24:5](#); [24:17](#); [24:18](#); [24:23](#); [25:5](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:17](#); [25:18](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:23](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:28](#); [26:1](#); [27:4](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#); [28:19](#); [28:26](#); [29:8](#); [29:21](#); [30:24](#); [30:25](#); [31:1](#); [31:6](#); [31:20](#); [32:8](#); [32:9](#); [32:23](#); [32:25](#); [32:32](#); [32:33](#); [33:9](#); [34:3](#); [34:5](#); [34:9](#); [34:11](#); [34:24](#); [34:26](#); [34:29](#); [34:30](#); [35:18](#); [35:21](#); [35:24](#); [36:4](#); [36:10](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:23](#); [6:35](#); [6:39](#); [9:8](#); [Notes](#); [19:6](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:34](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:12; 1:14; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 2:3; 2:11; 2:12; 4:11; 4:16; 4:17; 5:3; 5:6; 6:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:11; 8:10; 8:11; 8:15; 8:18; 9:5; 9:8; 9:9; 9:11; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 9:23; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 10:2; 10:6; 10:12; 10:13; 10:15; 10:16; 10:18; 11:3; 12:2; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:13; 13:1; 15:16; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:11; 17:19; 18:3; 18:4; 18:5; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:11; 18:12; 18:14; 18:15; 18:17; 18:19; 18:25; 18:26; 18:28;](#)

18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 18:33; 19:1; 19:2; 19:11; 20:15; 20:34; 20:35; 21:2; 21:6; 21:8; 21:12; 21:13; 21:17; 21:20;
 22:1; 22:5; 22:6; 22:11; 23:3; 23:5; 23:7; 23:9; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 23:20; 24:6; 24:8; 24:11; 24:12;
 24:14; 24:16; 24:17; 24:21; 24:22; 24:23; 24:25; 24:27; 25:3; 25:7; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:21; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25;
 25:26; 26:2; 26:11; 26:13; 26:18; 26:21; 26:23; 27:5; 27:7; 28:2; 28:5; 28:7; 28:16; 28:19; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 28:23;
 28:26; 28:27; 29:15; 29:18; 29:19; 29:20; 29:23; 29:24; 29:25; 29:27; 29:29; 29:30; 30:2; 30:4; 30:6; 30:12; 30:24; 30:26;
 31:3; 31:13; 32:1; 32:4; 32:7; 32:8; 32:9; 32:10; 32:11; 32:20; 32:21; 32:22; 32:23; 32:32; 33:11; 33:18; 33:25; 34:11;
 34:16; 34:18; 34:19; 34:20; 34:22; 34:24; 34:26; 34:28; 34:29; 34:30; 34:31; 35:3; 35:4; 35:7; 35:10; 35:15; 35:16; 35:18;
 35:20; 35:21; 35:23; 35:27; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6; 36:8; 36:10; 36:13; 36:17; 36:18; 36:22; 36:23)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:1](#); [2:1](#); [2:12](#); [3:2](#); [7:18](#); [9:19](#); [11:17](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [13:5](#); [13:8](#); [15:10](#); [15:19](#); [16:1](#); [16:12](#); [17:10](#); [20:6](#); [20:29](#); [20:30](#); [21:4](#); [33:13](#); [35:19](#); [36:20](#); [36:22](#); [36:23](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:17](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [6:5](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:33](#); [6:34](#); [7:22](#); [8:18](#); [12:8](#); [16:1](#); [18:21](#); [20:12](#); [20:17](#); [21:15](#); [21:19](#); [22:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:13](#); [23:14](#); [24:5](#); [25:5](#); [25:16](#); [26:11](#); [26:18](#); [31:1](#); [32:13](#); [33:13](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:32](#); [35:7](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:16](#); [12:1](#); [14:4](#); [15:3](#); [17:9](#); [19:10](#); [23:18](#); [25:4](#); [31:3](#); [31:4](#); [33:8](#); [34:14](#); [34:15](#); [34:19](#); [35:26](#))

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:8](#); [2:16](#); [8:6](#); [9:16](#); [9:20](#); [25:18](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:4; 5:5; 5:12; 7:6; 8:14; 8:15; 11:13; 11:14; 13:9; 13:10; 17:8; 19:8; 19:11; 20:14; 20:19; 23:2; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:18; 24:5; 24:6; 24:11; 29:4; 29:5; 29:12; 29:16; 29:25; 29:26; 29:30; 29:34; 30:15; 30:16; 30:17; 30:21; 30:22; 30:25; 30:27; 31:2; 31:4; 31:9; 31:12; 31:14; 31:17; 34:9; 34:12; 34:30; 35:3; 35:5; 35:9; 35:10; 35:11; 35:14; 35:15; 35:18](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:11](#); [6:31](#); [6:38](#); [10:6](#); [15:12](#); [18:13](#); [23:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:25](#); [34:31](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:14](#); [2:15](#); [13:6](#); [18:16](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:21](#); [19:2](#); [20:7](#); [26:10](#))

Maacah

Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), Asherah, Nahor, [Naphtali](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:16](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:9](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 32:21](#); [35:21](#); [36:15](#))

Micah

Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), Dan, [Ephraim](#), [false god](#), [Isaiah](#), Judah, judge, [Levite](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#), [Samaria](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 26:18-19
- Micah 1:1
- Micah 6:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4318

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:14](#); [34:20](#))

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: angel, Daniel, [messenger](#), [Persia](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:13
- Daniel 10:21
- Ezra 8:8
- Revelation 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G34130

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 21:2](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “mighty” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:32](#); [13:3](#); [14:8](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#); [17:17](#); [25:6](#); [28:7](#); [32:21](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:15](#); [32:24](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 16:6](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:1](#); [20:22](#); [24:26](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:10](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:3](#); [5:10](#); [8:13](#); [23:18](#); [24:6](#); [24:9](#); [25:4](#); [30:16](#); [33:8](#); [34:14](#); [35:6](#); [35:12](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 35:24](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:17](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:20](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [7:14](#); [7:16](#); [12:13](#); [18:15](#); [20:9](#); [20:26](#); [26:8](#); [26:15](#); [28:9](#); [28:15](#); [31:19](#); [33:4](#); [33:7](#); [33:18](#); [36:4](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 16:4](#); [34:6](#))

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G34810

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:29](#); [29:25](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:6](#); [20:6](#); [28:3](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [32:15](#); [32:17](#); [32:23](#); [33:2](#); [33:9](#); [36:14](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), [Hananiah](#), Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:6](#); [36:7](#); [36:10](#); [36:13](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:5
- 2 Kings 4:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G33760, G35610

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:3](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:14](#); [15:15](#); [18:15](#); [36:13](#))

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the periods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Saul, a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [David](#), Edom, Esau, Ezekiel, Daniel, Gad, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Josiah](#), [Levite](#), Saul (OT), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:21
- 1 Chronicles 8:38-40
- Ezra 8:8-11
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5662

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 17:7](#); [34:12](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:10](#); [11:11](#); [31:5](#); [32:28](#))

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for twelve years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), Tirzah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 22:2](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 4:7](#); [4:20](#); [8:14](#); [30:16](#); [35:13](#))

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:11](#); [31:13](#); [34:12](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:2](#); [30:15](#); [30:17](#); [30:18](#); [Notes](#); [35:1](#); [35:6](#); [35:11](#); [35:13](#); [35:16](#); [35:17](#); [35:19](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:5](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 2:11; 2:18; 6:5; 6:6; 6:21; 6:24; 6:25; 6:27; 6:29; 6:32; 6:33; 6:34; 6:39; 7:4; 7:5; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 7:20; 8:7; 8:10; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 10:12; 10:15; 10:16; 12:3; 13:9; 13:17; 14:13; 16:10; 17:9; 18:3; 18:27; 19:4; 20:7; 20:21; 20:25; 20:33; 21:14; 21:19; 23:5; 23:6; 23:10; 23:12; 23:13; 23:16; 23:17; 23:20; 23:21; 24:10; 24:20; 24:23; 25:11; 25:15; 26:1; 26:21; 27:2; 29:36; 30:3; 30:13; 30:18; 30:20; 30:27; 31:4; 31:8; 31:10; 32:4; 32:6; 32:8; 32:13; 32:14; 32:15; 32:17; 32:18; 32:19; 33:10; 33:17; 33:25; 34:30; 35:3; 35:5; 35:7; 35:8; 35:12; 35:13; 36:1; 36:14; 36:15; 36:16; 36:23)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 8:7](#))

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Cyrus](#), Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:20](#); [36:22](#); [36:23](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:26](#); [17:11](#); [26:7](#))

plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:10](#))

pomegranate

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:16](#); [4:13](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:13](#); [7:6](#); [8:14](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [20:22](#); [23:13](#); [29:30](#); [30:21](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:19](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:29](#); [6:32](#); [6:34](#); [6:35](#); [6:38](#); [6:39](#); [6:40](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [30:27](#); [32:20](#); [32:24](#); [33:13](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:8](#); [21:9](#); [25:18](#); [35:24](#); [36:22](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 4:6; 4:9; 5:5; 5:7; 5:11; 5:12; 5:14; 6:41; 7:2; 7:6; 8:14; 8:15; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 13:9; 13:14; 15:3; 17:8; 19:8; 19:11; 22:11; Notes; 23:4; 23:6; 23:8; 23:9; 23:14; 23:17; 23:18; Notes; 24:2; 24:5; 24:11; 24:20; 24:25; Notes; 26:17; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 29:4; 29:16; 29:21; 29:22; 29:24; 29:26; 29:34; 30:3; 30:15; 30:16; 30:21; 30:24; 30:25; 30:27; 31:2; 31:4; 31:9; 31:10; 31:15; 31:17; 31:19; 34:5; 34:9; 34:14; 34:18; 34:30; 35:2; 35:8; 35:10; 35:11; 35:14; 35:18; 36:14)

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 8:9; 8:10; 12:5; 12:6; 12:10; 16:4; 17:14; 18:25; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 21:9; 22:8; 23:1; 23:13; 23:14; 23:20; 24:17; 24:23; 28:21; 29:20; 29:30; 30:2; 30:6; 30:12; 30:24; 31:8; 32:3; 32:6; 32:21; 32:31; 33:11; 33:14; 34:8; 35:8; 35:9; 36:14; 36:18](#))

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:1](#); [3:2](#); [29:17](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”[⚡]
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:29](#); [12:5](#); [12:15](#); [13:22](#); [15:8](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:9](#); [18:11](#); [18:12](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [20:37](#); [21:12](#); [24:19](#); [25:15](#); [25:16](#); [26:22](#); [28:9](#); [29:25](#); [32:20](#); [32:32](#); [34:22](#); [35:18](#); [Notes](#); [36:12](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), fruit, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:11](#); [13:3](#); [13:12](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [17:2](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#); [17:17](#); [18:11](#); [18:14](#); [20:20](#); [24:20](#); [24:24](#); [25:6](#); [26:5](#); [26:11](#); [26:12](#); [26:13](#); [26:17](#); [28:6](#); [31:21](#); [32:21](#); [32:30](#); [33:14](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:3](#); [7:19](#); [7:22](#); [24:17](#); [25:14](#); [29:28](#); [29:29](#); [29:30](#); [32:12](#); [33:3](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 10:8](#); [10:10](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:18](#); [30:18](#); [34:5](#))

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:14](#); [3:14](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 36:22](#))

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 2:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 2:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G44710

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 16:1](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [22:6](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13:6](#); [36:13](#))

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 1:7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:5** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:6** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G44970

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:31](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:6](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:5](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [13:7](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:8](#); [1:13](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [10:1](#); [10:17](#); [11:22](#); [12:13](#); [12:16](#); [13:1](#); [14:1](#); [16:13](#); [17:1](#); [17:7](#); [20:31](#); [21:1](#); [21:8](#); [22:1](#); [23:11](#); [24:27](#); [26:1](#); [26:23](#); [27:9](#); [28:27](#); [29:3](#); [29:19](#); [32:33](#); [33:20](#); [33:25](#); [34:3](#); [34:8](#); [36:1](#); [36:4](#); [36:8](#); [36:10](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 34:9](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 14:6](#); [14:7](#); [15:15](#); [20:30](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:23](#); [6:26](#); [6:42](#); [7:19](#); [10:6](#); [10:12](#); [11:1](#); [11:4](#); [12:12](#); [18:16](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [20:27](#); [24:13](#); [24:19](#); [25:13](#); [27:5](#); [30:6](#); [30:9](#); [32:25](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:24; 6:25; 6:37; 6:38; 7:14; 10:2; 10:5; 10:9; 10:16; 11:4; 12:11; 14:15; 15:4; 18:25; 18:32; 19:1; 19:4; 19:8; 20:27; 22:6; 24:11; 25:10; 25:24; 26:2; 28:11; 28:15; 29:10; 30:6; 30:8; 31:1; 32:21; 33:3; 33:13; 34:7; 34:16; 34:28](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:23](#); [12:6](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:4](#); [8:13](#); [23:4](#); [23:8](#); [31:3](#); [36:21](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:6](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:12](#); [28:23](#); [29:31](#); [30:22](#); [31:14](#); [33:16](#); [33:17](#); [33:22](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:9](#); [25:24](#); [28:15](#))

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 1:19
- 1 Samuel 9:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 3:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G45450

([Go back to: 2 Chronicles 35:18](#))

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), Holy Spirit, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), tax, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G00400

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:8](#); [26:18](#); [29:21](#); [30:8](#); [36:17](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 16:7](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:11](#); [26:11](#); [34:13](#); [34:15](#); [34:18](#); [34:20](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 22:10](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:14; 9:23; 11:16; 12:14; 14:4; 14:7; 15:2; 15:4; 15:12; 15:13; 15:15; 16:12; 17:3; 17:4; 18:4; 18:7; 19:3; 20:3; 20:4; 22:9; 24:6; 25:15; 25:20; 26:5; 30:19; 31:21; 32:31; 34:3; 34:21; 34:26](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: bondage, [works](#), obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:3; 2:8; 2:10; 2:15; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:23; 6:27; 6:42; 8:9; 8:18; 9:4; 9:7; 9:10; 9:12; 9:21; 10:7; 12:8; 13:6; 13:7; 13:10; 22:8; 24:6; 24:9; 24:25; 25:3; 28:10; 29:11; 31:16; 32:9; 32:16; 33:24; 34:3; 34:13; 34:16; 34:20; 35:2; 35:3; 35:23; 35:24; 36:20)

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:4](#); [7:7](#); [7:16](#); [15:18](#); [25:10](#); [29:5](#); [29:15](#); [29:17](#); [29:19](#); [29:34](#); [30:15](#); [30:17](#); [30:24](#); [35:6](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), humble, [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 30:15](#))

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:16](#); [23:9](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:15](#); [1:17](#); [5:1](#); [9:14](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:24](#); [9:27](#); [15:18](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [17:11](#); [24:5](#); [24:11](#); [24:14](#); [25:6](#); [25:24](#); [27:5](#); [34:9](#); [34:14](#); [34:17](#); [36:3](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:22](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:36](#); [6:37](#); [6:39](#); [Notes](#); [28:13](#); [29:24](#); [33:19](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:22](#); [29:24](#); [30:15](#); [35:1](#); [35:6](#); [35:11](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:11; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:11; 2:17; 3:1; 3:3; 4:11; 4:16; 4:18; 4:19; 5:1; 5:2; 5:6; 6:1; 6:13; 7:1; 7:5; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:6; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:9; 9:10; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 9:20; 9:22; 9:23; 9:25; 9:28; 9:29; 9:30; 9:31; 10:2; 10:6; 11:3; 11:17; 12:9; 13:6; 13:7; 30:26; 33:7; 35:3; 35:4](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:1; 1:5; 2:12; 2:14; 5:2; 5:10; 5:12; 6:9; 6:11; 6:16; 6:30; 7:3; 8:2; 8:8; 8:9; 9:29; 9:31; 10:2; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 11:3; 11:14; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 12:13; 12:16; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:12; 13:16; 13:18; 13:21; 14:1; 15:1; 17:1; 17:16; 18:7; 18:8; 18:10; 18:23; 18:25; 19:2; 19:11; 20:1; 20:10; 20:13; 20:14; 20:19; 20:22; 20:23; 20:31; 20:34; 20:37; 21:1; 21:2; 21:5; 21:7; 21:17; 21:20; 22:1; 22:2; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 23:1; 23:3; 23:11; 24:1; 24:3; 24:7; 24:15; 24:20; 24:22; 24:25; 24:26; 24:27; 25:1; 25:4; 25:7; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:17; 25:18; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 26:1; 26:3; 26:17; 26:18; 26:21; 26:22; 26:23; 27:1; 27:5; 27:8; 27:9; 28:1; 28:3; 28:6; 28:7; 28:8; 28:10; 28:12; 28:27; 29:1; 29:9; 29:11; 29:12; 29:13; 29:14; 29:21; 30:6; 30:9; 30:21; 30:26; 31:1; 31:5; 31:6; 31:14; 31:16; 31:17; 31:18; 31:19; 32:20; 32:32; 32:33; 33:1; 33:2; 33:6; 33:7; 33:9; 33:20; 33:21; 33:25; 34:1; 34:8; 34:12; 34:20; 34:22; 34:33; 35:3; 35:4; 35:5; 35:7; 35:12; 35:13; 35:14; 35:15; 35:17; 36:1; 36:2; 36:5; 36:8; 36:9; 36:11; 36:20)

spear, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Psalm 35:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G30570

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 25:5](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:4](#); [15:1](#); [18:22](#); [18:23](#); [20:14](#); [21:16](#); [24:20](#); [36:22](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 7:17](#); [34:31](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 12:9](#); [25:24](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:6](#); [4:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:20](#); [14:11](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [19:11](#); [20:6](#); [20:12](#); [22:9](#); [23:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:11](#); [26:8](#);
[26:13](#); [26:15](#); [28:20](#); [31:4](#); [32:7](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 20:9](#); [21:4](#); [23:14](#); [23:21](#); [29:9](#); [32:21](#); [36:17](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1:5](#); [29:6](#))

Tarshish

Facts:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, [wise men](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

(**Go back to:** [2 Chronicles 9:21](#); [20:36](#); [20:37](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 26:5](#); [35:3](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [3:10](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [4:11](#); [4:22](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [6:22](#); [6:24](#); [Notes](#); [7:11](#); [8:11](#); [9:16](#); [10:19](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [22:12](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [Notes](#); [24:14](#); [25:19](#); [25:24](#); [Notes](#); [26:16](#); [26:19](#); [27:2](#); [Notes](#); [31:11](#); [33:4](#); [33:7](#); [33:24](#); [34:10](#); [34:15](#); [34:17](#); [35:3](#); [36:17](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 24:19](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 3:7](#); [23:4](#); [34:9](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:10](#); [6:16](#); [7:18](#); [9:8](#); [9:17](#); [18:9](#); [18:18](#); [23:20](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 9:7](#); [10:8](#); [17:19](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [trespass](#), iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 28:19](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 29:19](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:5](#); [11:16](#); [12:13](#); [33:7](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:6](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:12](#); [5:13](#); [13:14](#); [23:13](#); [29:26](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, [faithful](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

([Go back to: 2 Chronicles 2:3; 2:11](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:12](#); [30:22](#); [34:12](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 15:14](#); [20:19](#); [30:27](#); [32:18](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:16](#); [6:27](#); [7:17](#); [8:17](#); [9:21](#); [11:17](#); [16:3](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:12](#); [18:12](#); [21:12](#); [22:3](#); [22:5](#); [34:21](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [7:17](#); [13:11](#); [19:7](#); [23:6](#); [33:8](#); [34:9](#); [34:21](#); [34:22](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:10](#); [2:15](#); [27:5](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:10](#); [11:11](#); [31:5](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, divination, magic, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), ruler, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 12:7](#); [28:9](#); [34:21](#); [34:25](#); [36:16](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 6:37](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 2 Chronicles 1:1; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:9; 2:1; 2:4; 2:11; 2:12; 3:1; 4:16; 5:1; 5:2; 5:7; 5:10; 5:13; 5:14; 6:1; 6:4; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:19; 6:41; 6:42; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:6; 7:7; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:21; 7:22; 8:1; 8:11; 8:12; 8:16; 9:4; 9:8; 9:11; 10:15; 11:2; 11:4; 11:14; 11:16; 12:1; 12:2; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:9; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 13:5; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 13:18; 13:20; 14:2; 14:4; 14:6; 14:7; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 15:2; 15:4; 15:8; 15:9; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 16:2; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:12; 17:3; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:10; 17:16; 18:4; 18:6; 18:7; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13; 18:15; 18:16; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:23; 18:27; 18:31; 19:2; 19:4; 19:6; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 20:3; 20:4; 20:5; 20:6; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:17; 20:18; 20:19; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 20:29; 20:32; 20:37; 21:6; 21:7; 21:10; 21:12; 21:14; 21:16; 21:18; 22:4; 22:7; 22:9; 23:3; 23:5; 23:6; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 24:2; 24:4; 24:6; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:12; 24:14; 24:18; 24:19; 24:20; 24:21; 24:22; 24:24; 25:2; 25:4; 25:7; 25:9; 25:15; 25:27; 26:4; 26:5; 26:16; 26:17; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:21; 27:2; 27:3; 27:6; 28:1; 28:3; 28:5; 28:6; 28:9; 28:10; 28:11; 28:13; 28:19; 28:21; 28:22; 28:24; 28:25; 29:2; 29:3; 29:5; 29:6; 29:8; 29:10; 29:11; 29:15; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:19; 29:20; 29:21; 29:25; 29:27; 29:30; 29:31; 29:32; 29:35; 30:1; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:12; 30:15; 30:17; 30:18; 30:19; 30:20; 30:21; 30:22; 31:2; 31:3; 31:4; 31:6; 31:8; 31:10; 31:11; 31:14; 31:16; 31:20; 32:8; 32:11; 32:16; 32:17; 32:21; 32:22; 32:23; 32:24; 32:26; 33:2; 33:4; 33:5; 33:6; 33:9; 33:10; 33:11; 33:12; 33:13; 33:15; 33:16; 33:17; 33:18; 33:22; 33:23; 34:2; 34:8; 34:10; 34:14; 34:15; 34:17; 34:21; 34:23; 34:24; 34:26; 34:27; 34:30; 34:31; 34:33; 35:1; 35:2; 35:3; 35:6; 35:12; 35:16; 35:26; 36:5; 36:7; 36:9; 36:10; 36:12; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:16; 36:18; 36:21; 36:22; 36:23)

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), Nehemiah, [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 27:1](#); [31:10](#))

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the tent of meeting during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Darius, Ezra, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- Ezra 5:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 17:7](#); [20:14](#); [21:2](#); [24:20](#); [26:5](#); [29:1](#); [29:13](#); [34:12](#); [35:8](#))

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), Ezekiel, kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 18:10](#); [18:23](#); [36:10](#); [36:11](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [2 Chronicles 5:2](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
 John Huffman
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
 Jack Messarra
 Gene Mullen
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
 Kristy Nickell
 Tom Nickell
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
 Dean Ropp
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
 Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
 Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
 Leonard Smith
 Suzanna Smith
 Tim Span
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
 Maria Tijerina
 David Trombold, M. Div.
 Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
 James Vigen
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
 Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
 Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
 Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
 Matt Carlton
 George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
 Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
 Michael Francis
 Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
 Kailey Gregory
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
 John Huffman
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
 Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)